

BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 9999 09857 979 8

No 4004.130



GIVEN BY

Boston Chess Club

CAUTION

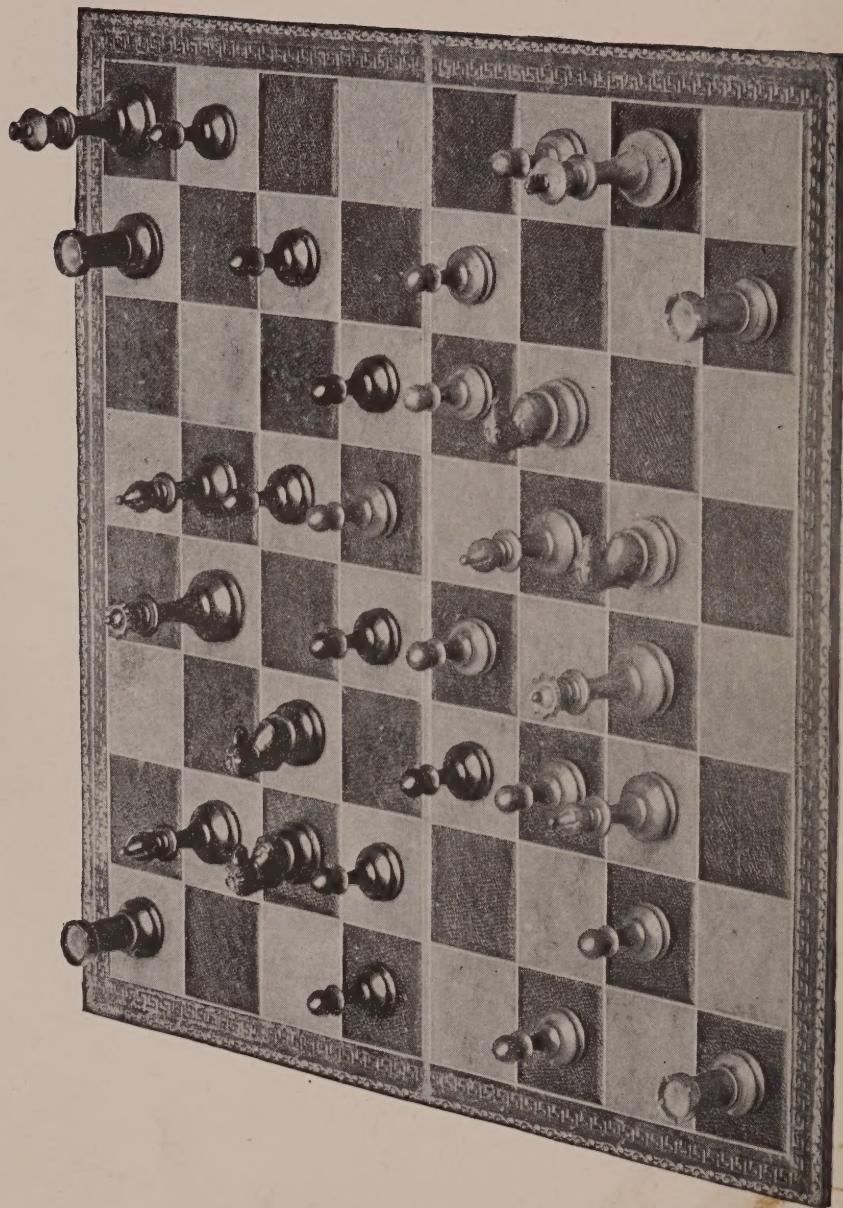
Do not write in this book or mark it with pen or pencil. Penalties are imposed by the Revised Laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, Chapter 208, Section 83.

MAR 15 1932
JAN 27 JUN -3
JUL 8 DUE MAY -6 1951
112457
AUG 12
112457
DEC 22
AUG 2
AUG 28 ■
FEB 18

Presented to John T. Davies by
Messrs. Roberts Bros.
March 1898.
and loaned to the Club

THE GRAND TACTICS OF CHESS.

A STRATEGIC FRONT OF OPERATIONS.



THE
GRAND TACTICS OF CHESS

AN EXPOSITION OF

THE LAWS AND PRINCIPLES OF CHESS
STRATEGETICS

THE PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF THESE LAWS AND PRINCIPLES TO THE MOVEMENT OF FORCES: MOBILIZATION
DEVELOPMENT, MANOEUVRE, AND OPERATION

BY

FRANKLIN K. YOUNG

AUTHOR OF "THE MINOR TACTICS OF CHESS"



BOSTON
ROBERTS BROTHERS

1898

269
7

4004.130

Copyright, 1897,
BY FRANKLIN K. YOUNG.

All rights reserved.

B. Antches Club
January 3, 1930



University Press:
JOHN WILSON AND SON, CAMBRIDGE, U.S.A.

P R E F A C E.

IN this volume is presented a complete system of chess-play.

This system is deduced from the play of the greater Masters ; and those processes by which they gained their renown are herein formulated and put into language for the first time.

The principles which govern these processes are simple and clearly stated. These comprehend every situation possible on the chess-board, and, *given the points occupied by the opposing kings*, then the proper positions for the remaining pieces are readily depicted by the student who has mastered this theory.

The chess-player will find this volume a compass, which at every move points the true course. The theorist will find it a touchstone whereby the most subtle sophistry may be detected, and the “analyst” may come to understand from its pages why the house of cards he so laboriously constructs is invariably and with ease demolished by the “player across the board.”

BOSTON, 1897.

C O N T E N T S.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY	xiii
CHESS STRATEGETICS	3
Basic Law	3
Strategy, Definition of	3
Tactics, " "	4
Minor Tactics, Definition of	4
Major Tactics, " "	4
Grand Tactics, " "	4
Logistics, Definition of	4
Lesser Logistics, Definition of	5
Greater Logistics, " "	5
FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES	7
Grand Law of Strategy	7
" " Tactics	7
" " Minor Tactics	7
" " Major Tactics	7
" " Grand Tactics	8
" " Logistics	8
" " Lesser Logistics	8
" " Greater Logistics	8
THE STRATEGETIC PLANE	9
The Topographical Zone	9
The Kindred Hypothetical Zone	11
The Adverse " "	13
The Strategetic Centre	13
" " Rear	15
" " Right Flank	17

	PAGE
THE STRATEGETIC PLANE (<i>Continued</i>).	
The Strategetic Left Flank	18
The Logistic Horizon	19
The Strategetic Objective (Single Front)	19
" " " (Double Front)	21
The Prime Strategetic Point	23
The Objective Plane	25
STRATEGETIC ENTIRETIES	27
The Kindred Determinate Force	27
The Adverse " "	29
The Kindred Hypothetical Force	31
The Adverse " "	32
STRATEGETIC WEAKNESSES	33
Class I. (<i>Schiffers vs. Tschigorin</i>)	33
" II. (<i>Bird vs. Gunsberg</i>)	35
" III. (<i>Pillsbury vs. Steinitz</i>)	36
" IV. (<i>Gunsberg vs. Blackburne</i>)	37
" V. (<i>Zukertort vs. Steinitz</i>)	38
" VI. (<i>Zukertort vs. Steinitz</i>)	39
" VII. (<i>Weiss vs. Baird</i>)	40
STRATEGETIC LINES OF MOVEMENT	42
Lines of Mobilization	42
" " Development	48
" " Manceuvre	53
" " Operation	57
ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES	61
I. <i>De la Bourdonnais vs. M'Donnell</i>	61
II. <i>Anderssen vs. Dufresne</i>	64
III. <i>M'Donnell vs. Amateur</i>	66
IV. <i>Anderssen vs. Kieseritzki</i>	68
V. <i>Morphy vs. Bird</i>	70
VI. <i>Morphy vs. Barnes</i>	72
 GRAND TACTICS.	
THE PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT	77
By the Right	78
" " Left	79

	PAGE
THE PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT (<i>Continued</i>).	
By the Right Refused	80
" " Centre	81
OBJECTIVE PLANES	82
Class A	82
" B	84
" C	85
" D	86
" E	87
" F	88
" G	89
" H	90
" I	91
" J	92
STRATEGIC FRONTS OF OPERATION	93
Single Front by the Right	94
" " " Left	95
Double Front by the Right	96
" " " Left	97
Minor Strategic Front	98
Major " "	99
Grand " "	100
SUPPLEMENTARY FORMATIONS	101
Minor Crochet	101
Major " "	102
En Appui	103
Front Aligned	104
Double Alignment	105
Crochet Aligned	107
Enceinte	108
En Potence	109
Echelon	110
" Supported En Appui	111
Fianchetto	112
LINES OF MOBILIZATION	114
By the Right	114
" Left	115
" Right Refused	115
" Left "	115

	PAGE
SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS	116
MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE	117
" CENTRE ENCEINTE	131
" LEFT OBLIQUE	135
" " REFUSED	148
" RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED	156
LINES OF DEVELOPMENT	159
MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE	160
" " ENCEINTE	189
" " OBLIQUE REFUSED	194
" LEFT OBLIQUE	198
" " " REFUSED	225
" " ENCEINTE REFUSED	236
GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE	243
" LEFT OBLIQUE	255
" RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED	267
" LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED	269

LESSER LOGISTICS.

LOGISTICS OF THE Q R P	280
" " Q K T P	283
" " Q B P	286
" " Q P	288
" " K P	290
" " K B P	291
" " K K T P	292
" " K R P	293
" " K K T (White)	294
" " " (Black)	296
" " Q K T (White)	297
" " " (Black)	299
" " K B (White)	300
" " " (Black)	302
" " Q B (White)	303
" " " (Black)	305
" " K R (White)	306
" " " (Black)	307
" " Q R (White)	308
" " " (Black)	309

	PAGE
LOGISTICS OF THE Q (White)	310
" " " (Black)	311
LINES OF MANŒUVRE	312
Simple (Young <i>vs.</i> Ware)	312
Compound (Young <i>vs.</i> Fiske)	314
Complex (Young <i>vs.</i> Fellnar)	316
LINES OF OPERATION	318
Strategic	318
<i>a</i> (Young <i>vs.</i> Kelsey)	319
<i>b</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Panin)	320
<i>c</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Hill)	321
<i>d</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Kaufmann)	322
<i>e</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Harlow)	323
Tactical	324
<i>a</i> (Young <i>vs.</i> Ware)	325
<i>b</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Stone and Saulsen)	326
<i>c</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Ware)	327
<i>d</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Harlow)	328
<i>e</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Sargent)	329
Logistic	330
<i>a</i> (Young <i>vs.</i> Ware)	331
<i>b</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Mackenzie)	332
<i>c</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Orde)	334
<i>d</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Ware)	335
<i>e</i> (" <i>vs.</i> Saulsen)	337

GREATER LOGISTICS.

LOGISTICS OF WHITE'S FIRST MOVE	341
" " BLACK'S FIRST MOVE	347
" " WHITE'S SECOND MOVE	351
" " BLACK'S SECOND MOVE	354
" " WHITE'S THIRD MOVE	357
" " BLACK'S THIRD MOVE	359
" " WHITE'S FOURTH MOVE	361
" " THE PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT	362
" " OBJECTIVE PLANES	364
" " STRATEGIC FRONTS	367
" " THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE	370

	PAGE
LOGISTICS OF SUPPLEMENTARY FORMATIONS	372
" " OPEN FILES, OPEN DIAGONALS, AND POINTS	
OFFENSIVE	374
" " LINES OF MOVEMENT	377
" " THE STRATEGETIC HORIZON	383
THE CHESS PLAYER'S EPITOME	387

APPENDIX.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES	393
1. Young <i>vs.</i> Pillsbury	393
2. " <i>vs.</i> Ware and Stone	396
3. " <i>vs.</i> Lowe	398
4. " <i>vs.</i> Snow	400
5. " and Burille <i>vs.</i> Ware and Snow	402
6. " <i>vs.</i> Sanford	404
7. " <i>vs.</i> Snow	406
8. " <i>vs.</i> Richardson	408
9. " <i>vs.</i> Snow	410
10. " <i>vs.</i> Doré	412
11. " <i>vs.</i> Snow	414
12. " <i>vs.</i> Cummings	416
13. " <i>vs.</i> Burille	418
14. " <i>vs.</i> Michaelis	420
15. " <i>vs.</i> Sawyer	422
16. " <i>vs.</i> Ware	424
17. " <i>vs.</i> Burille	427
18. " <i>vs.</i> Richardson	430
19. " <i>vs.</i> Ware	432
20. " and Ware <i>vs.</i> Burille	434
21. " and Stone <i>vs.</i> Burille	436
22. " <i>vs.</i> Mackenzie	438
23. " and Ware <i>vs.</i> Zukertort	440
24. " <i>vs.</i> Steinitz	443
25. " <i>vs.</i> Ware	445
26. " <i>vs.</i> Pillsbury	447

THE MODEL GAME.

THE MODEL GAME (C. P. Morphy <i>vs.</i> Judge A. B. Meek) .	451
--	------------

INTRODUCTORY.

LONG ago, when you were a little fellow not yet in your teens, and fonder by far of the fields and the daisies than of school-books and the school-room, little did you think, in your rambles by hill and by dale, to search for the spring from whence flows all human knowledge.

Still less did it occur to you, during your infrequent and oft-times involuntary attendance at the local emporium of learning, to make such inquiry of the village pedagogue.

Had you done so, it is probable that he would have answered your query in some such way as this:

“My boy, all human knowledge is derived from experience — either from your own or from that of others.” Then, with a severe glance and a reproving inflection in his voice, he might have continued: “Personal experience is a hard school, but fools will learn in no other.”

This, of course, is impolite on his part, and, as he is a grown man and you are but a small boy, the ensuing situation is, for you, one of embarrassment.

It would have been kinder had he made a specific illustration without, by implication, including your minute personality in the demonstration.

For instance, he might have told you that from the experiences of past generations are derived those facts

upon which is founded all human knowledge, and that each complete series of such facts, properly classified and arranged, constitute what is termed a science.

To make this clear to you, he might have further explained that Strategetics is the name given to the science of war, to distinguish it from all other sciences; that the science of Strategetics is made up of the classification and systematic arrangement of facts derived from the experiences of the greater military commanders — Cyrus, Epaminondas, Alexander, Hannibal, Cæsar, Julian, Belisarius, Timour, Gustavus Adolphus, Turenne, Condé, Eugène, Frederick, Washington, Napoleon and Von Moltke; and that the knowledge thus acquired teaches how, in any situation, one or more bodies of men may accomplish the overthrow of one or more opposing bodies of men by means of the occupation of specific *points*, by specific *forces*, in specific *times*.

Now, it is not unreasonable to assume that the venerable pedagogue played chess, or even that he was a player of skill, and possibly of renown. In such a case he well might continue a little further, and tell you,—

When the forementioned bodies of men are represented by bits of bone or by wooden automata known as chessmen, when the surface of the chess-board takes the place of a map, or of an expanse of actual country, when the calculation contemplates the occupation of specific *points* on the chess-board by specific *chess forces* in specific *times*, and when the term *chess-play* is substituted for the term *warfare*, then, that chess knowledge derived from the experiences of the greater chess masters — and which, so far as it is teachable, is contained in a systematic classification of facts logically deduced from

the chess games of Philidor, Deschapelles, De la Bourdonnais, M'Donnell, Cochrane, Staunton, Szen, Andersen, Petroff, Boden, Löwenthal, Harwitz, Jaenisch, Kling, Stamma, Greco, Mayet, Gullim Kassim, Heydebrant, Von Bilguer, Paulsen, Kolisch, Zukertort and Morphy, and upon which is based that consideration of numbers, localities and distances whereby, in a given situation, one or more bodies of chessmen may accomplish the overthrow of one or more opposing bodies of chessmen — is termed in this theory, and it is believed with entire propriety, the *Science of Chess Strategetics*.

THE GRAND TACTICS OF CHESS.

THE
GRAND TACTICS OF CHESS.

CHESS STRATEGETICS.

CHESS Strategetics is that science which teaches how, in any situation, a given body of chessmen may exert its maximum power for offence and for defence.

The science of Chess Strategetics is founded upon a self-evident truth, the operation of which at all times is uniform and irresistible.

Basic Law of the Science of Chess Strategetics.— Given a force which at a given point and at a given time is the greater force, then the given force at the given point and at the given time will overcome the opposing force.

The science of Chess Strategetics comprehends the harmonious union of three great primary elements:—

- I. STRATEGY.
- II. TACTICS.
- III. LOGISTICS.

Strategy is that branch of the science of Chess Strategetics which treats of the relative values of localities.

It specifies those points which in any given situation should and should not be occupied; depicts the objec-

tive of, and designates the proper direction to be given to lines of Mobilization, Development, Manœuvre, and Operation.

Tactics is that branch of the science of Chess Strategetics which treats of the relative values of forces.

It defines those processes whereby a given integer of force may properly co-operate with or be opposed to any other integer of force. Tactics is divided into three primary classes:—

- I. MINOR TACTICS.
- II. MAJOR TACTICS.
- III. GRAND TACTICS.

Minor Tactics treats of the proper construction of Primary Bases.

Major Tactics treats of the evolutions appertaining to any given integer of chess force when acting either alone or in co-operation with a kindred integer against any given adverse integer of chess force, the latter acting alone, or in combination with any other of its kindred integers.

Grand Tactics treats of the values of objective planes; of the construction of strategic fronts, of the locating of the Prime Strategetic Point, and of the exploitation of lines of Mobilization, Development, Manœuvre, and Operation.

Logistics is that branch of the science of Chess Strategetics which treats of the movement of forces from a given point to any other point. Logistics is divided into two primary classes:—

- I. LESSER LOGISTICS.
- II. GREATER LOGISTICS.

Lesser Logistics treats of those movements of forces which are contained in lines of Mobilization and in lines of Development.

Greater Logistics treats of those movements of forces which are contained in lines of Manœuvre and in lines of Operation.

FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF THE SCIENCE OF CHESS STRATEGETICS.

Grand Law of Strategy. — Always oppose a force united, and thus capable of putting forth its maximum power for offence and for defence, to an adverse force disunited, and thus incapable of putting forth its maximum power for offence and for defence.

Grand Law of Tactics. — The force exerted by a given piece against a given point is equal to the force exerted by any other piece against the same point; but the force exerted by two or more pieces is greatest at that point where their radii offensive intersect.

Grand Law of Minor Tactics. — Whenever, in the deployment of opposing forces, a formation is adopted by one player which properly belongs to the other player, the incident is favorable to Black.

Grand Law of Major Tactics. — The offensive force of a given piece is valid at any point against which it is directed; but the defensive force of a given piece is valid for the support of only one point, except when the points required to be defended are all contained in the perimeter of that geometric figure which appertains to the supporting piece.

Grand Law of Grand Tactics. — Always act on a line of Operations when it exists. Otherwise, always act on a line of Manœuvre.

Grand Law of Logistics. — All the pieces move in straight lines from one point to another point within the Strategic Plane, and their lines of movement take the form of verticals, horizontals, diagonals and obliques.

Grand Law of Lesser Logistics. — When exploiting a line of Mobilization or a line of Development, so deploy or develop that each pawn and piece may reach its proper post in the minimum number of moves, and without obstructing the movement of any other kindred pawn or piece.

Grand Law of Greater Logistics. — When acting on a line of Operations no movement should be considered whose outcome cannot be mathematically demonstrated ; and when acting on a line of Manœuvre, that movement always is to be selected which combines with the manœuvre either a deployment or a development.

THE STRATEGETIC PLANE.

The Strategetic Plane is that surface within whose limits are contained all the forces, and upon which are executed all the movements, that are comprehended in a game of chess.

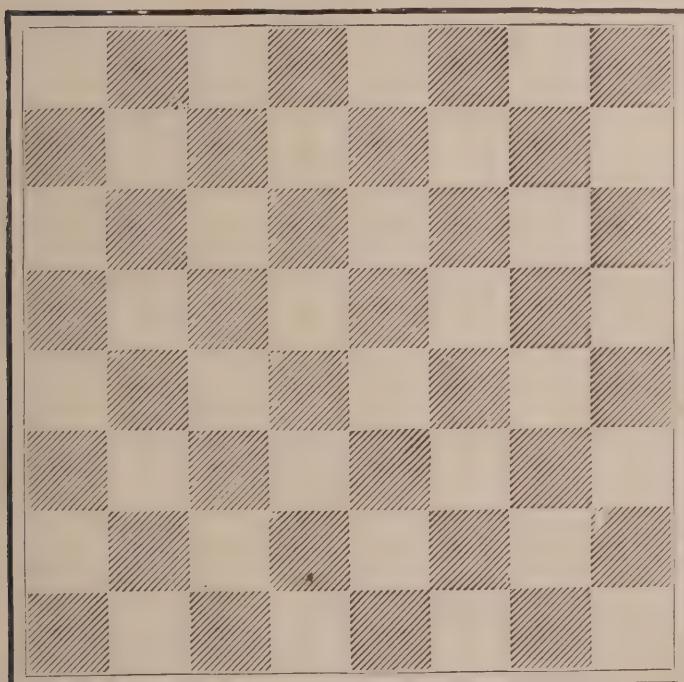
Its salient characteristics are the following:—

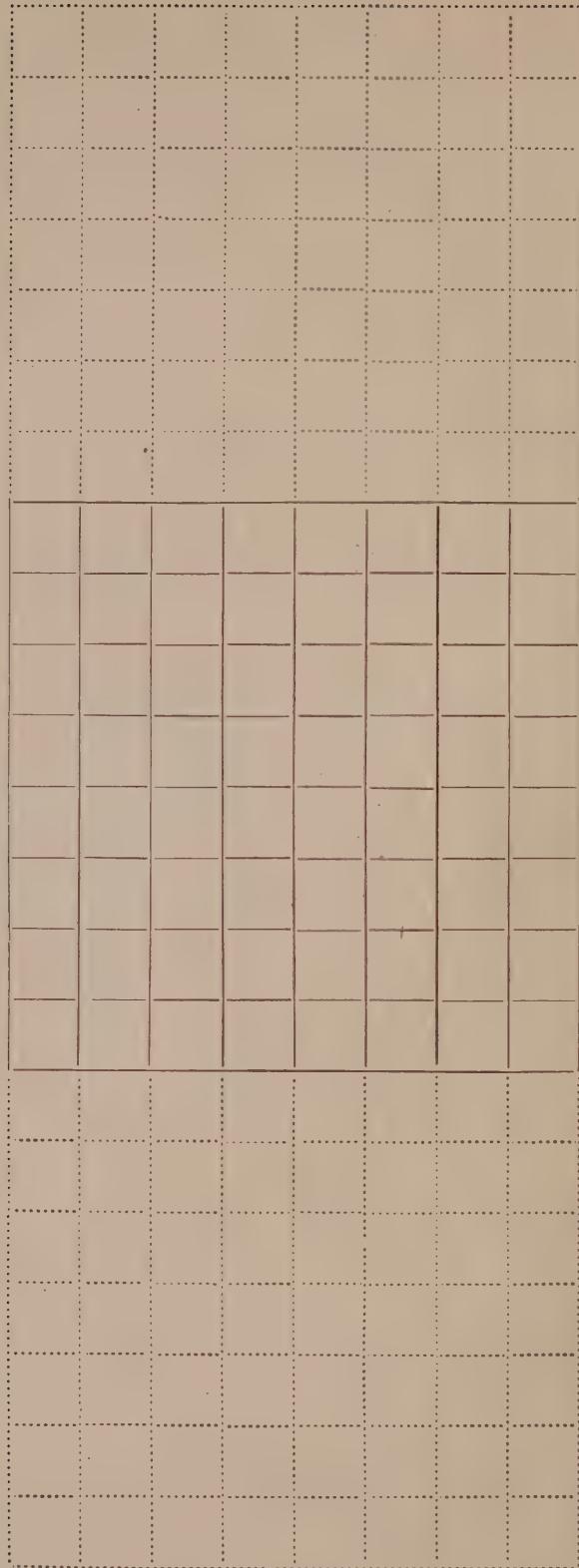
The Topographical Zone is that part of the theatre of conflict which is in view of the contestants, and is known as the material or visible chess board.

THE TOPOGRAPHICAL ZONE.

FIG. 1.

(*Black.*)





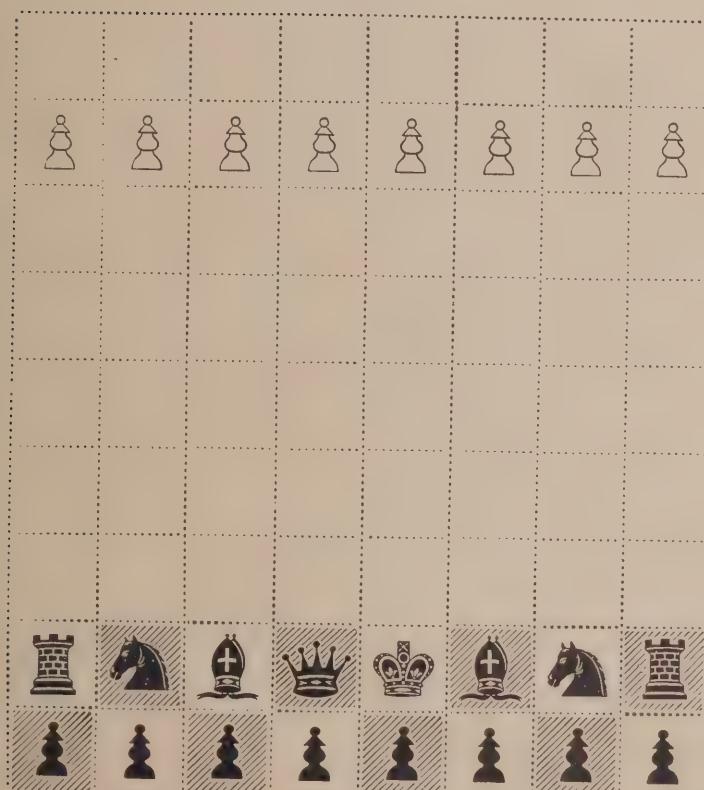
THE STRATEGIC PLANE. FIG. 2.

The Kindred Hypothetical Zone is that invisible part of the theatre of conflict which appertains to a given player, and within which is contained all the forces and executed all the movements incident to the materialization of the Kindred Hypothetical Force.

KINDRED HYPOTHETICAL ZONE

White.

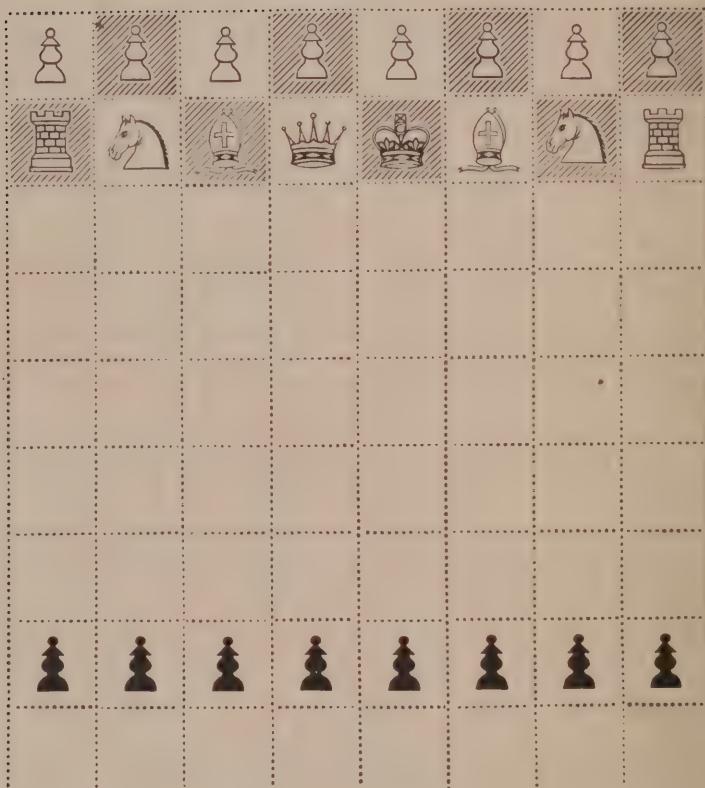
FIG. 3.



KINDRED HYPOTHETICAL ZONE.

Black.

FIG. 4.



The Adverse Hypothetical Zone is that invisible part of the theatre of conflict which appertains to the opponent, and within which is contained all the forces and executed all the movements incident to the materialization of the Adverse Hypothetical Force.

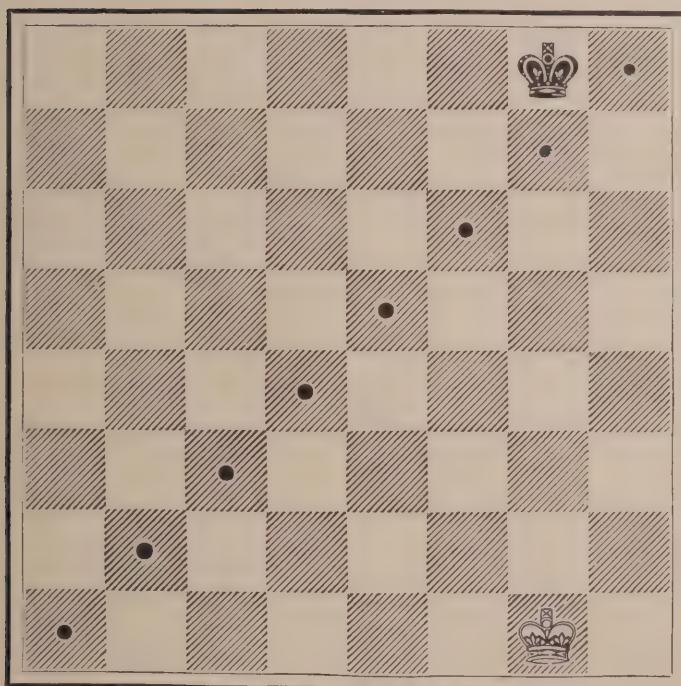
The Strategetic Centre of a given position is that central diagonal which extends in the direction of the objective plane, and divides the topographical zone into two equal parts.

THE STRATEGETIC CENTRE.

By the Right.

FIG. 5.

(Black.)



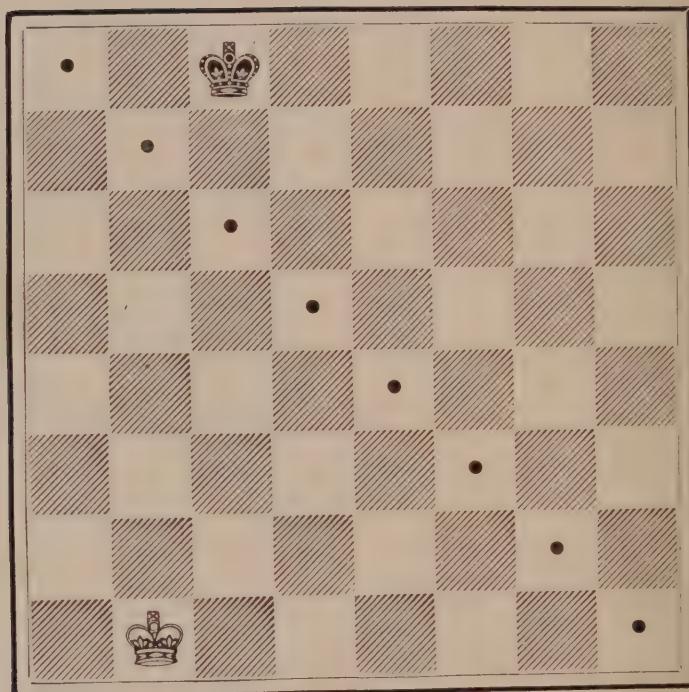
(White.)

THE STRATEGETIC CENTRE.

By the Left.

FIG. 6.

(Black.)



(White.)

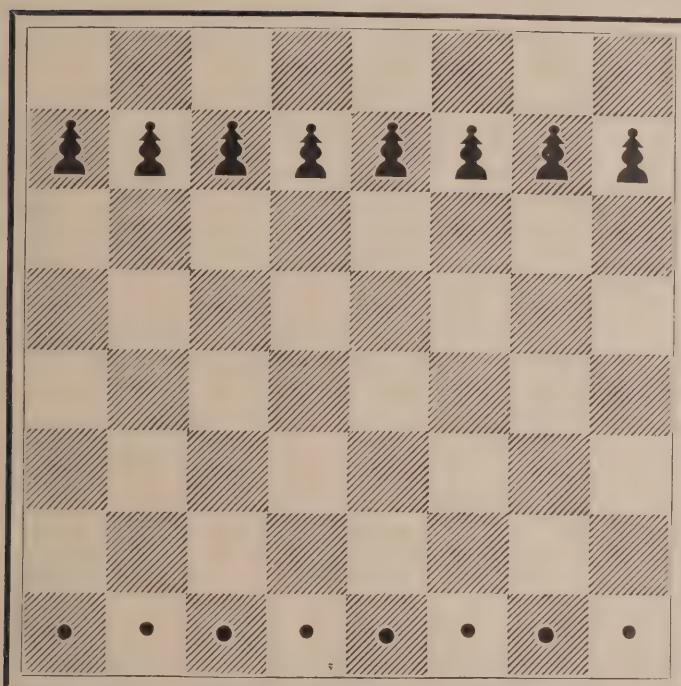
The Strategetic Rear of White is the first horizontal.

THE STRATEGETIC REAR.

White.

FIG. 7.

(Black.)



(White.)

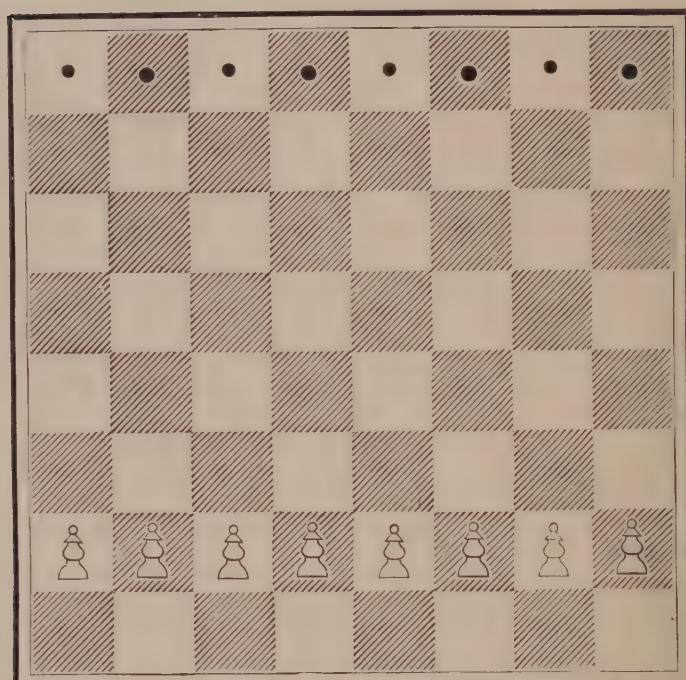
The Strategetic Rear of Black is the eighth horizontal.

THE STRATEGETIC REAR.

Black.

FIG. 8.

(*Black.*)



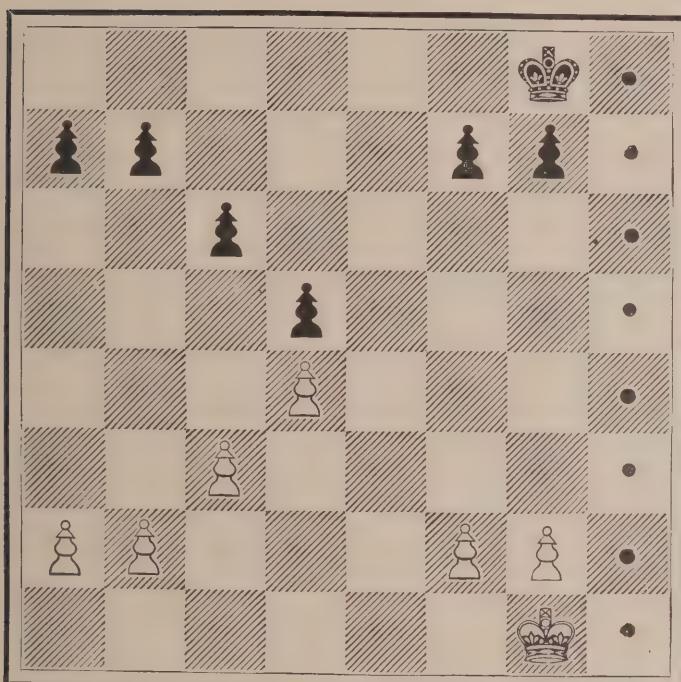
(*White.*)

The Strategetic Right Flank is the lateral extremity of the King's side.

THE STRATEGETIC RIGHT FLANK.

FIG. 9.

(Black.)



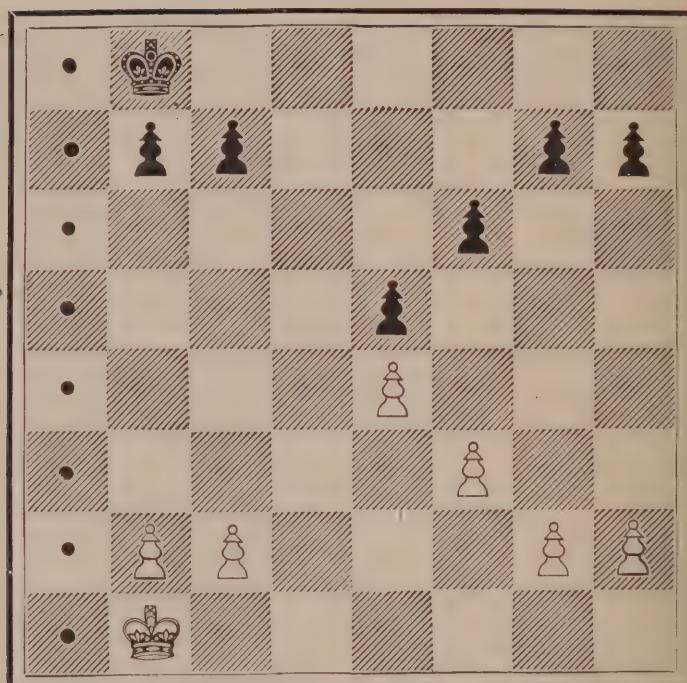
(White.)

The Strategetic Left Flank is the lateral extremity of the Queen's side.

THE STRATEGETIC LEFT FLANK.

FIG. 10.

(Black.)



(White.)

The Logistic Horizon of a given force always is the strategic rear of the opponent.

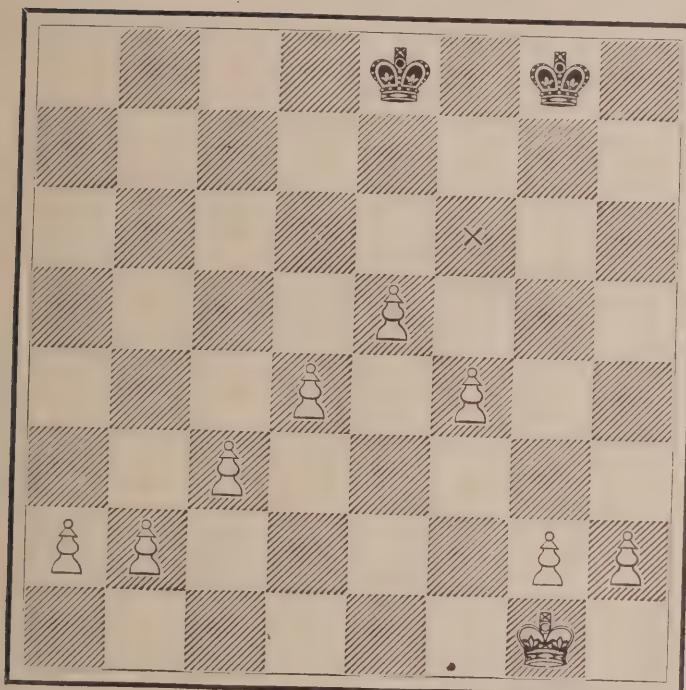
The Strategetic Objective in a single front of operations is that point the occupation of which by a pawn or by a piece establishes the kindred force on a Grand Strategic Front of Operations.

THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE.

Single Front by the Right.

FIG. 11.

(*Black.*)



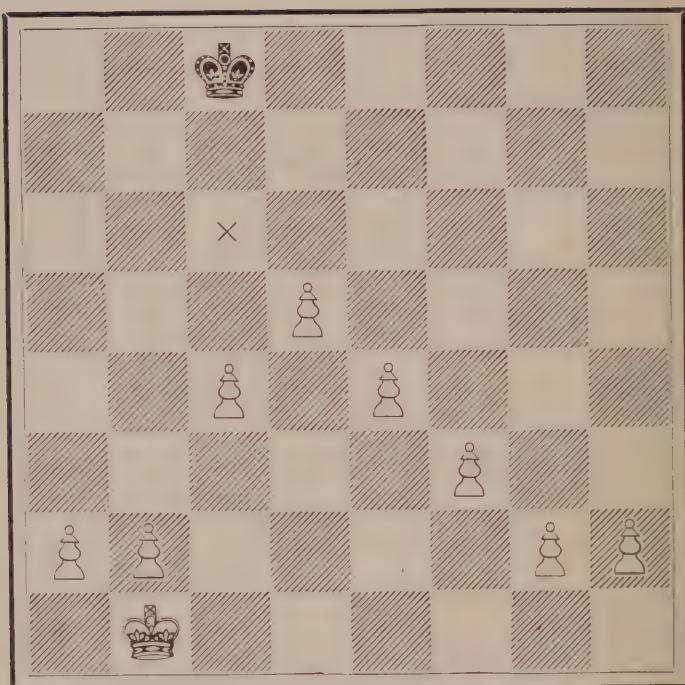
(*White.*)

THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE.

Single Front by the Left.

FIG. 12.

(Black.)



(White.)

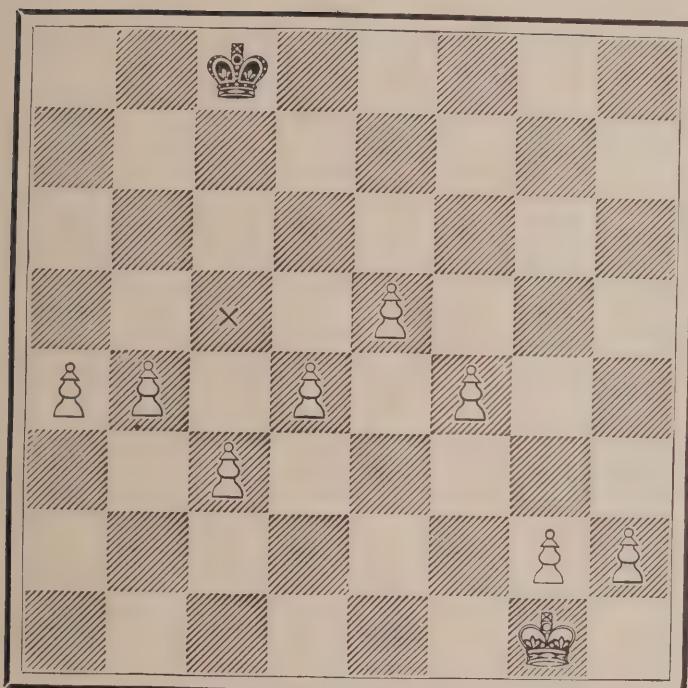
The Strategetic Objective in a double front of operations is that point which is situated at the angle formed by the union of the major crochet with the right or left oblique.

THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE.

Double Front by the Right.

FIG. 13.

(Black.)



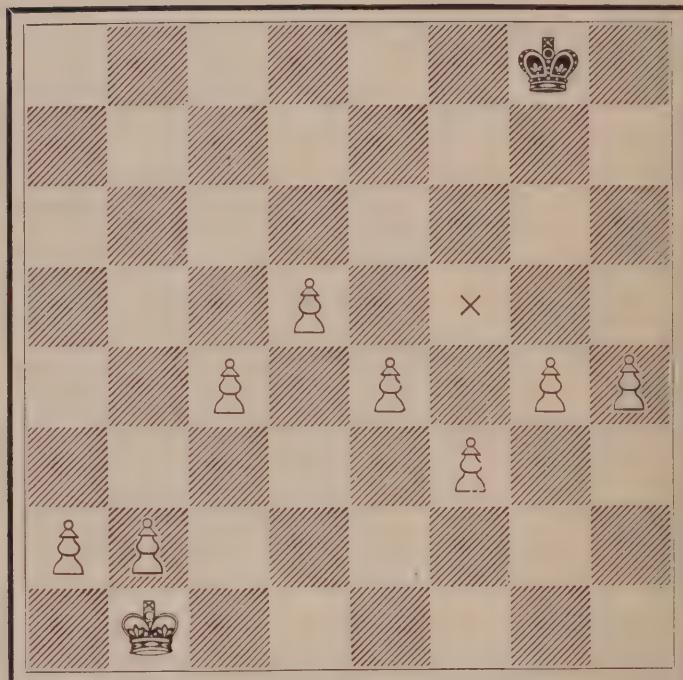
(White.)

THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE.

Double Front by the Left.

FIG. 14.

(Black.)



(White.)

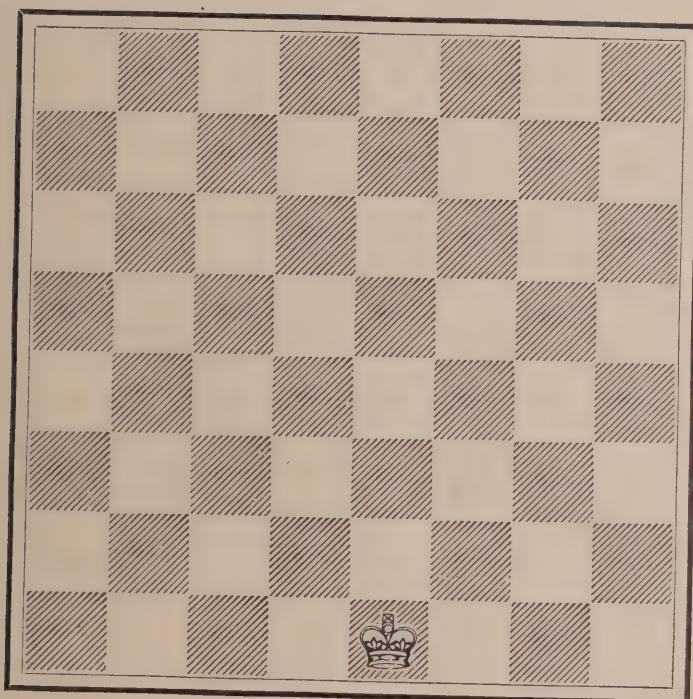
The Prime Strategetic Point is that point in the topographical zone which at a given time is occupied by the kindred king.

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

Normal position — White.

FIG. 15.

(*Black.*)



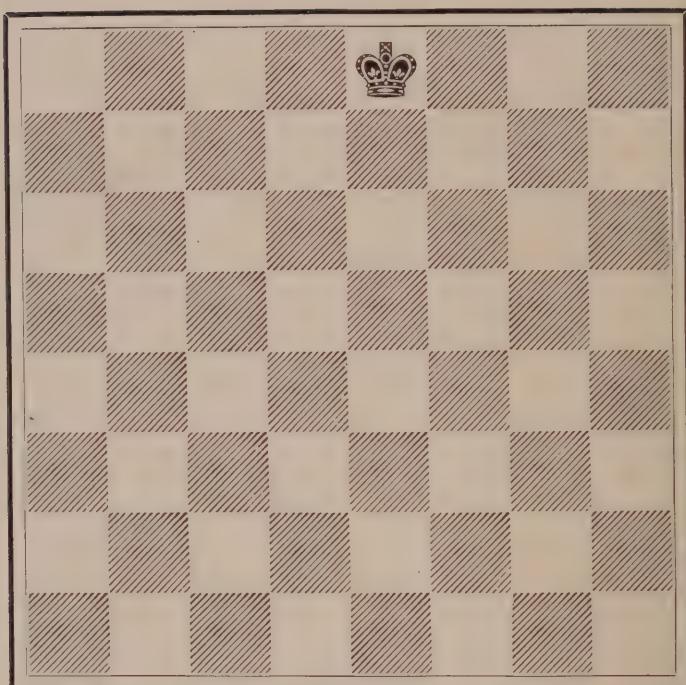
(*White.*)

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

Normal position — Black.

FIG. 16.

(Black.)



(White.)

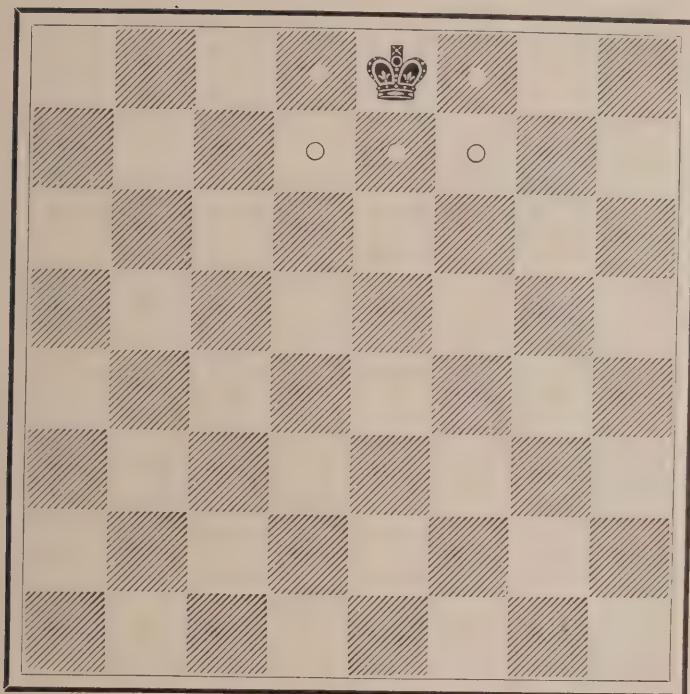
The Objective Plane is composed of the point occupied by the adverse king, together with the immediately adjacent points. (Cf. Minor Tactics, p. 44.)

THE OBJECTIVE PLANE.

Normal position — White.

FIG. 17.

(Black.)



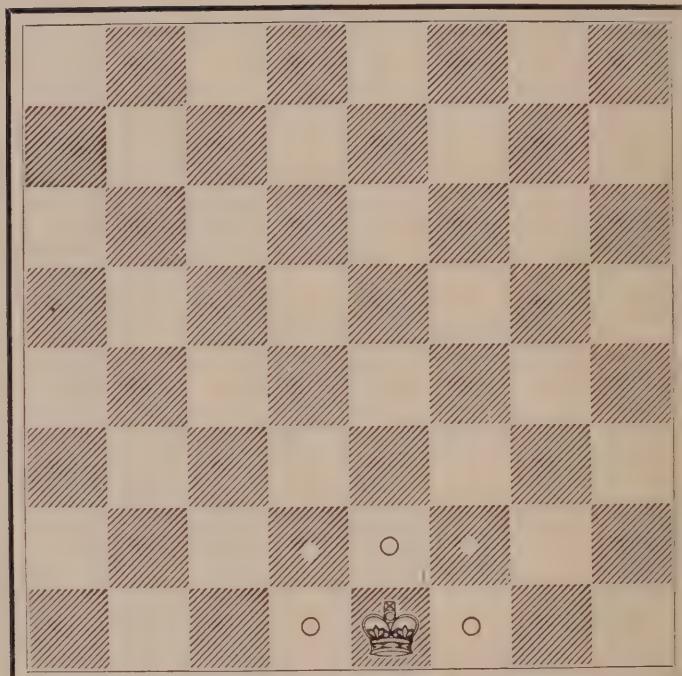
(White.)

THE OBJECTIVE PLANE.

Normal position—Black.

FIG. 18.

(Black.)



(White.)

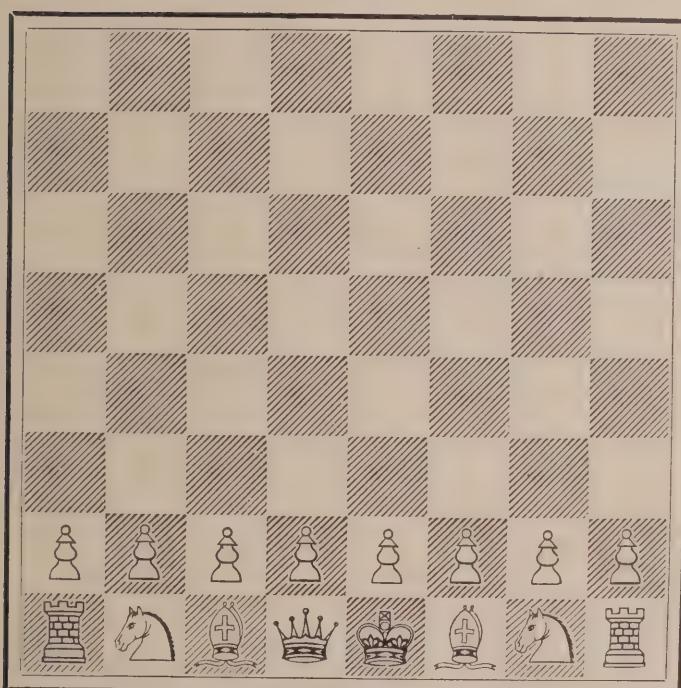
Strategic Entireties. — *The Kindred Determinate Force* is composed of those pieces belonging to a given player which at the given time are contained within the topographical zone.

KINDRED DETERMINATE FORCE.

Normal position — White.

FIG. 19.

(Black.)



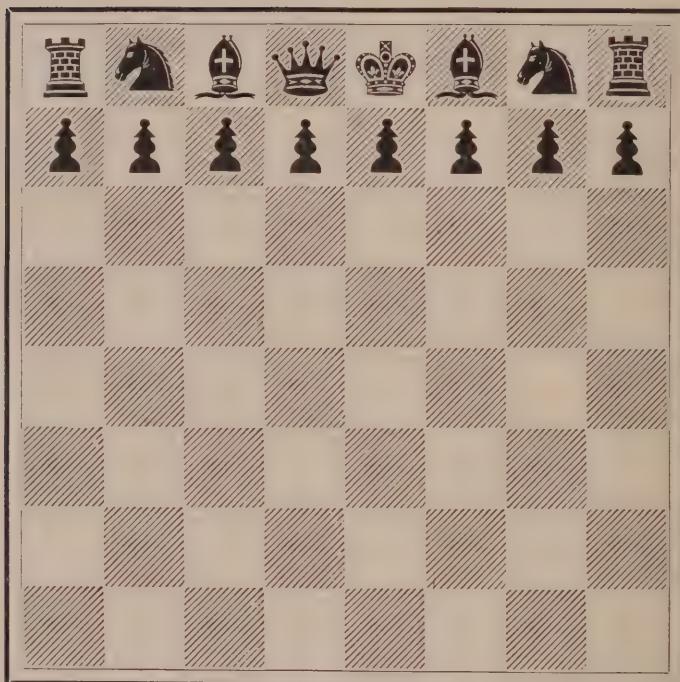
(White.)

KINDRED DETERMINATE FORCE.

Normal position—Black.

FIG. 20.

(Black.)



(White.)

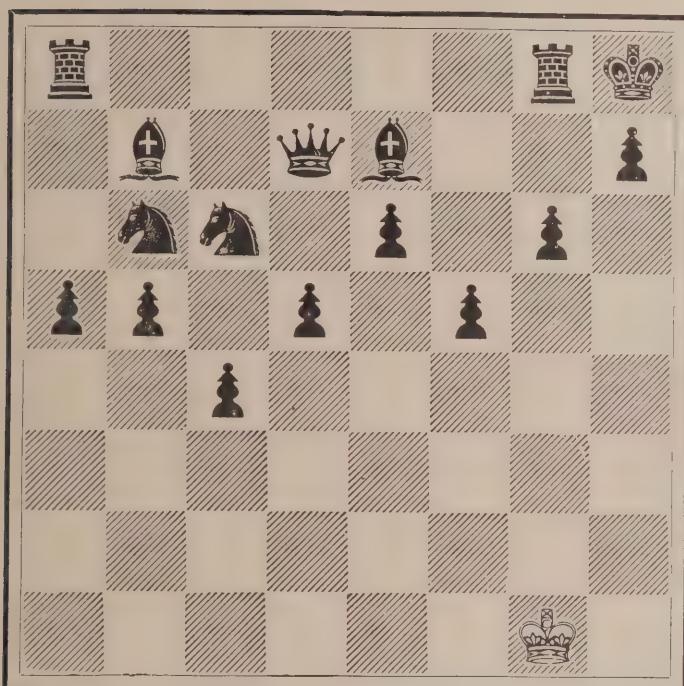
The Adverse Determinate Force is composed of those pieces belonging to the opponent which at the given time are contained within the topographical zone.

ADVERSE DETERMINATE FORCE.

White.

FIG. 21.

(Black.)



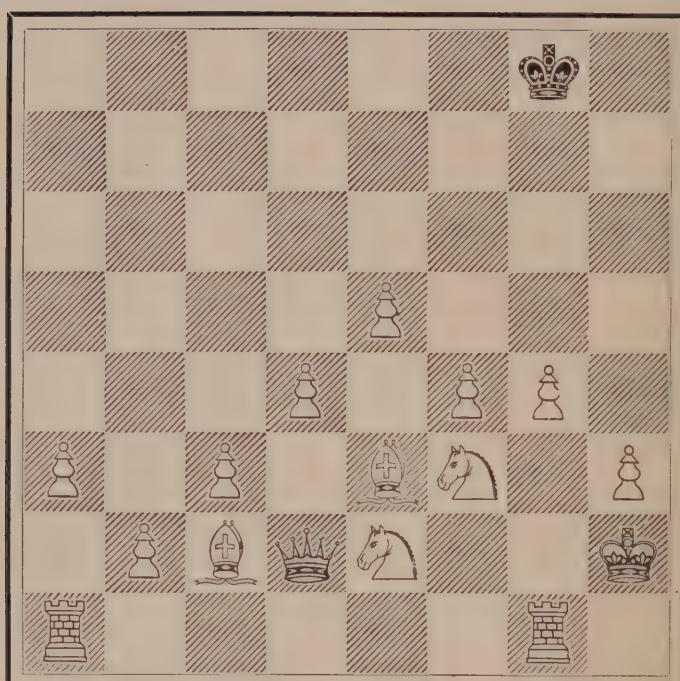
(White.)

ADVERSE DETERMINATE FORCE.

Black.

FIG. 22.

(Black.)



(White.)

The Kindred Hypothetical Force is that accession of force possible to a given player through the promotion of one or more pawns, which at the given time are contained within the topographical zone.

KINDRED HYPOTHETICAL FORCE.

White.

FIG. 23.



KINDRED HYPOTHETICAL FORCE.

Black.

FIG. 24.

(Black.)



(White.)

The Adverse Hypothetical Force is that accession of force possible to the opponent through the promotion of one or more pawns which at the given time are contained within the topographical zone.

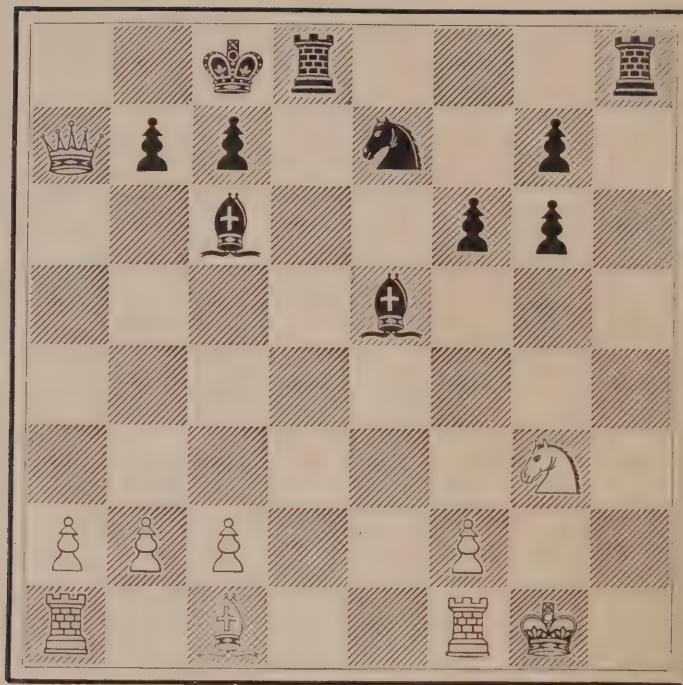
STRATEGIC WEAKNESSES.

A Strategic Weakness exists in a given position, when by violation of the principles of Major Tactics two or more portions of the given force are exposed to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended; or when by violation of the principles of Grand Tactics an improper strategic front is selected, or the proper strategic front is improperly constructed, or when the Prime Strategic Point is improperly located; or when the King, together with one or more portions of the given force, or one or more points in the Logistic Horizon, are exposed to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

Strategic weaknesses are divided into seven classes:

CLASS I. contains those strategic weaknesses produced by the Prime Strategic Point being open and exposed to the attack of hostile pieces.

TSCHIGORIN.



SCHIFFERS.

Black to play and win.

This position occurred in a match game played in 1896.

Tschigorin, having to move, played P - Q Kt 3, and ultimately the game was drawn.

The correct play is as follows:—

WHITE.

2. Kt × R.
3. K × B.
4. K - Kt 3.
5. K moves.

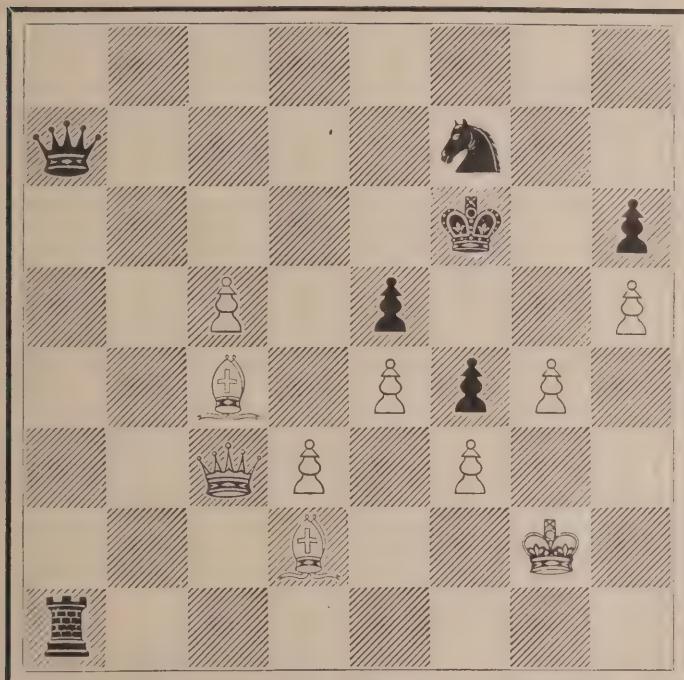
BLACK.

1. R - R 8 (ck).
2. B - R 7 (ck).
3. R - K R 1 (ck).
4. Kt - B 4 (ck).
5. R - R 5 (ck).

Checkmate.

CLASS II. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the Prime Strategetic Point being improperly posted, covered, supported, or sustained.

GUNSBERG.



BIRD.

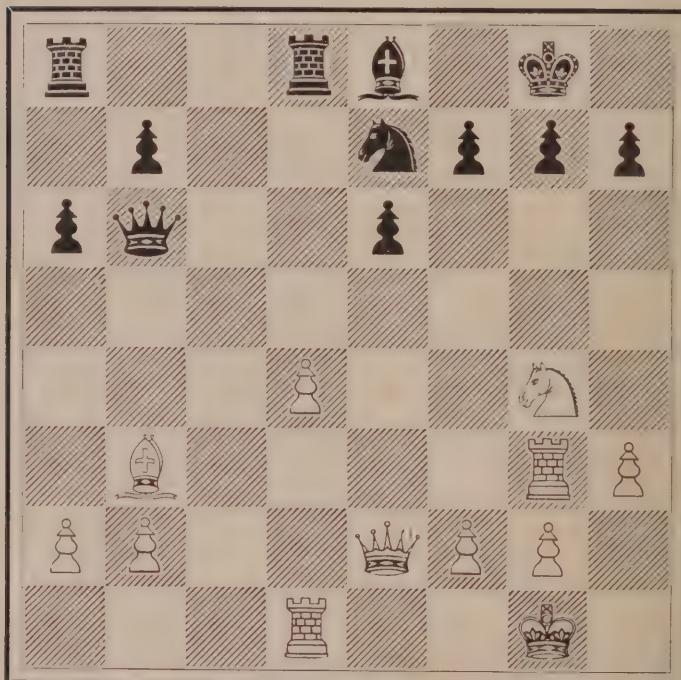
Black to move.

This position occurred at the Third Annual Congress of the British Chess Association, 1887.

Gunsberg, having the move, played Kt — Q 3, overlooking the resulting situation of his King. Bird, instead of mating in two moves by 1 Q × P (ck) and 2 B — Q B 3 (ck) and mate, played B × P. Gunsberg then won by Kt × B.

CLASS III. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the exposure of the Prime Strategetic Point and one or more parts of the kindred force, to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

STEINITZ.



PILLSBURY.

White to play and win.

This position occurred in the St. Petersburg Master's Tournament, 1895.

White, having to move, played P — Q 5, and ultimately the game was drawn.

The correct play is as follows: —

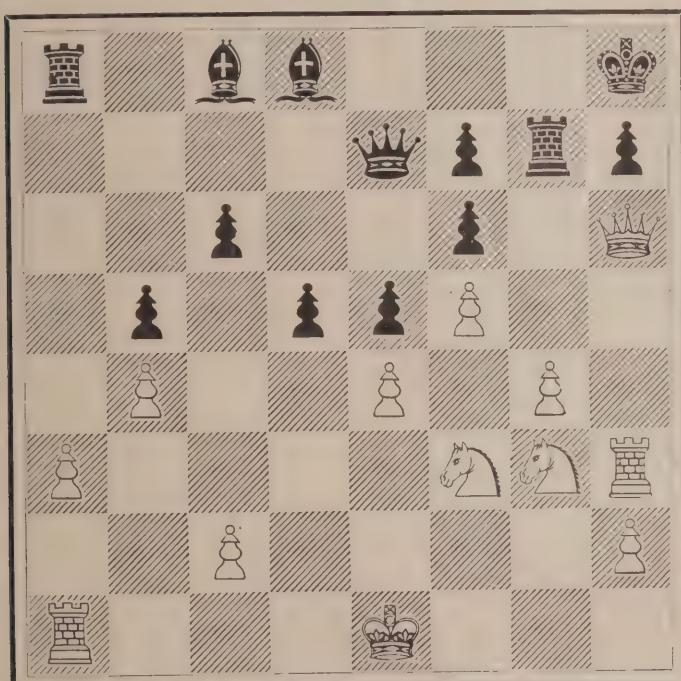
WHITE.

1. Kt — KB 6 (ck).
 2. Kt × RP (ck) and wins.
- If Black plays,
2. Q — KR 5.
 3. Kt × B.
 4. Q × BP and wins.

If 2. P × Kt, White wins by 3. Q — R 6, Kt — Kt 3 ; 4. R × Kt and mates next move.

CLASS IV. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the exposure of the Prime Strategetic Point and one or more points on the Logistic Horizon, to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

BLACKBURNE.



GUNNSBERG.

Black to play.

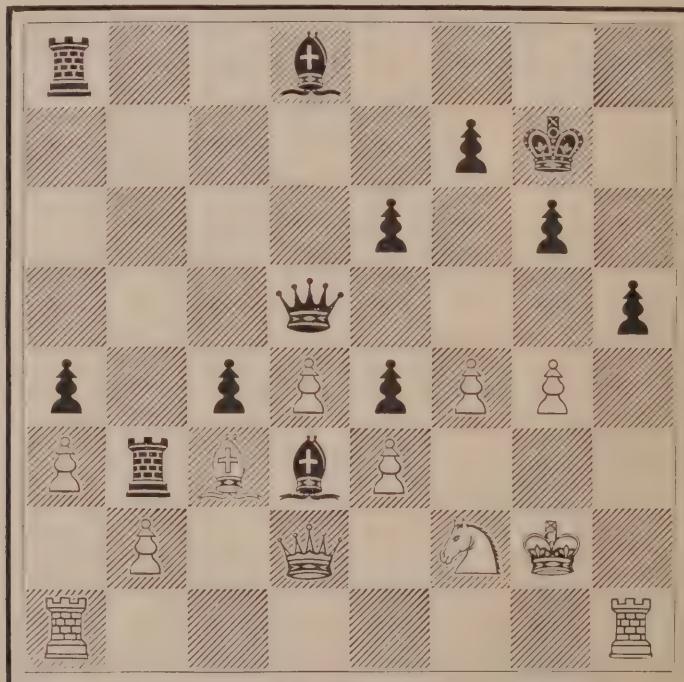
This position occurred in a match game in 1887.

Black, having to play, manœuvred to combine a pawn advantage on the Queen's side with an exposed objective plane, and moved $R \times Q\ R\ P$. White replied $R \times R$, and Black played $Q \times Kt\ P\ (ck)$. Gunsberg now, instead of winning by $Kt - Q\ 2$, moved $K - K\ 2$, and ultimately the game was drawn.

After $Kt - Q\ 2$, if $Q \times R$, then $Q \times R\ (ck)$, $K \times Q$; $Kt - R\ 5\ (ck)$, and White is a R ahead.

CLASS V. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the exposure of the Logistic Hörizon and one or more portions of the kindred force to simultaneous attack at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

STEINITZ.



ZUKERTORT.

Black to move.

This position occurred in the match of 1886.

Black, having the move, played $P \times P$, and ultimately White won the game.

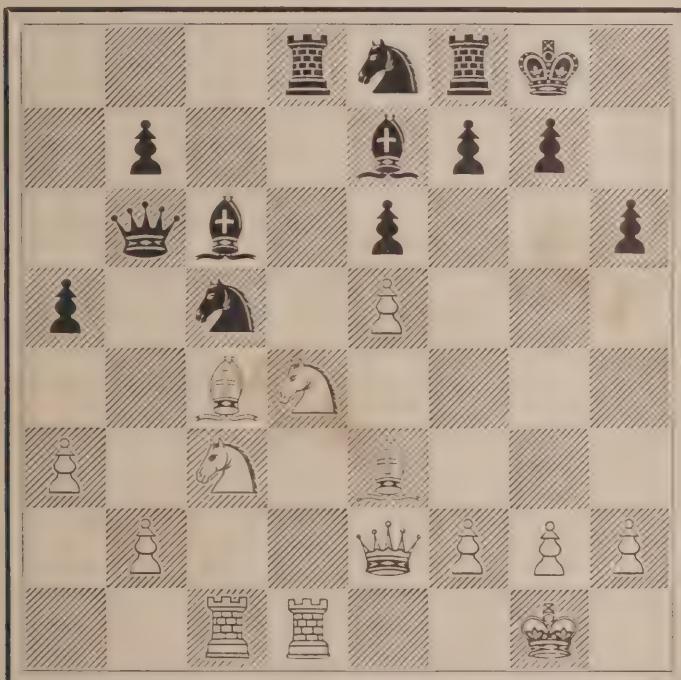
The correct play is as follows : —

- | WHITE. | BLACK. |
|-------------|----------------------|
| | 1. B — Q R 4. |
| 2. P × P. | 2. B × B. |
| 3. P × B. | 3. R (R 1) — Q Kt 1. |
| 4. P × P. | 4. P × P. |
| 5. Q — Q 1. | 5. Q — K B 4. |

And Black wins by 6 R \times P, or 6 R — Kt 7.

CLASS VI. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the exposure of two or more portions of the kindred force, to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

STEINITZ.



ZUKERTORT.

White to play and win.

This position occurred in a match game played in 1886.

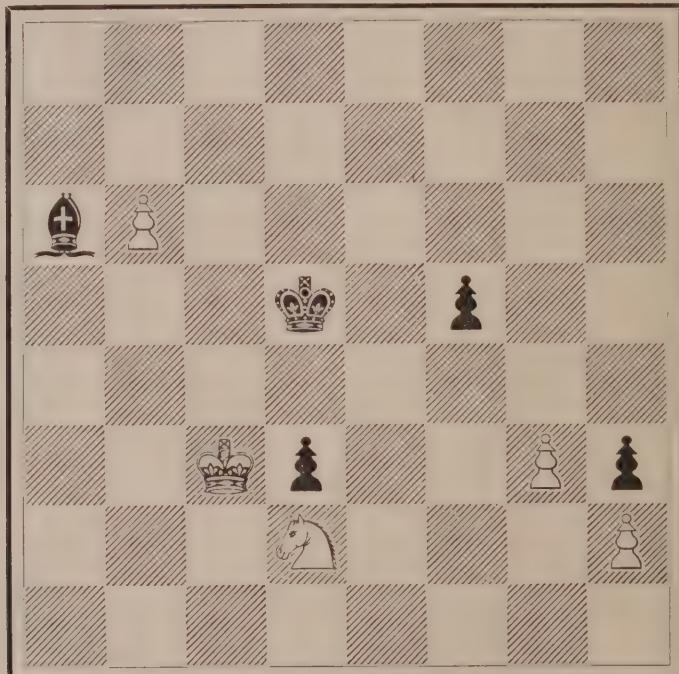
Zukertort, having to move, played Kt (Q 4) — Kt 5, and ultimately the game was drawn.

The correct play is as follows : —

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. Kt × B.	1. R × R (ek).
2. Q × R.	2. Q × Kt.
3. B — Q Kt 5.	3. Q — Kt 3.
4. B × Kt.	4. R × B.
5. Kt — Q R 4 and the Black Kt at Q B 4 is lost.	

CLASS VII. contains those strategetic weaknesses produced by the exposure of two or more points on the Logistic Horizon, to be simultaneously attacked at a time when they cannot be simultaneously defended.

BAIRD.



WEISS.

White to move.

This position occurred at the Sixth American Chess Congress, 1889.

White, having to move, played P — Q Kt 7, and ultimately the game was drawn.

The correct play is as follows:—

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. Kt — Q B 4.	1. K — K 5 (best).
2. Kt — Q 6 (ck).	2. K — B 6.
3. Kt × P.	3. K — Kt 7.
4. P — Kt 4.	4. K × P.
5. P — Kt 5.	5. K — Kt 8.
6. P — Kt 6.	6. P — R 7.
7. P — Kt 7.	7. P — R 8 (Q).
8. P — Kt 8 (Q ck).	8. K — B 7.
9. Q — Kt 3 (ck).	9. K — B 8.
10. K — Q 2.	

And White wins.

STRATEGETIC LINES OF MOVEMENT.

A Strategetic Line of Movement is composed of those processes whereby a given determinate force is properly mobilized, developed, manœuvred, or operated.

Strategetic Lines of Movement are divided into four classes : —

- I. LINES OF MOBILIZATION.
- II. LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.
- III. LINES OF MANOEUVRE.
- IV. LINES OF OPERATION.

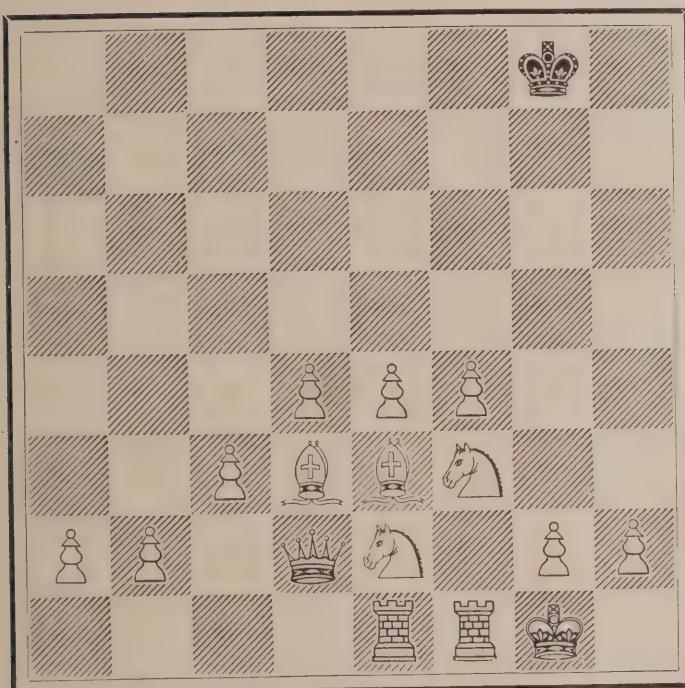
A Line of Mobilization is composed of those movements whereby all the pawns and pieces are deployed into a given primary base, the latter being situated on the proper minor strategic front.

LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Minor Front by the Right.

FIG. 25.

(Black.)



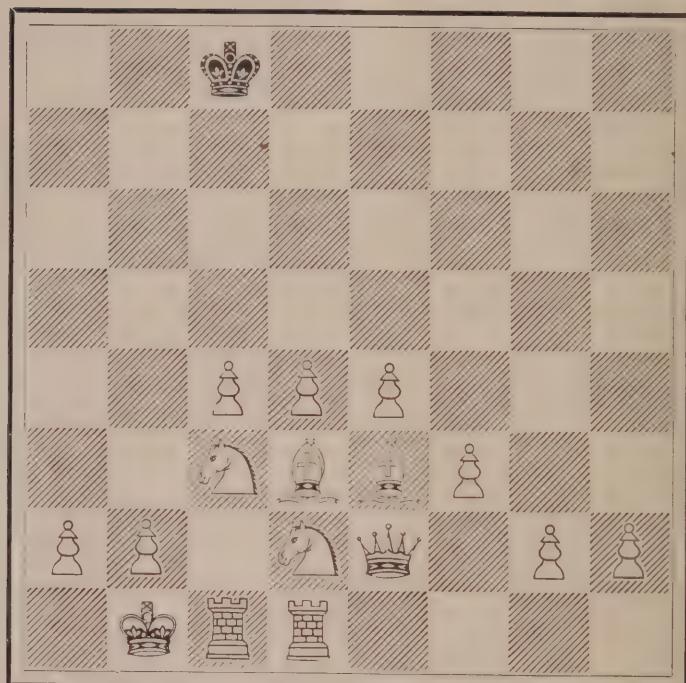
(White.)

LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Minor Front by the Left.

FIG. 26.

(Black.)



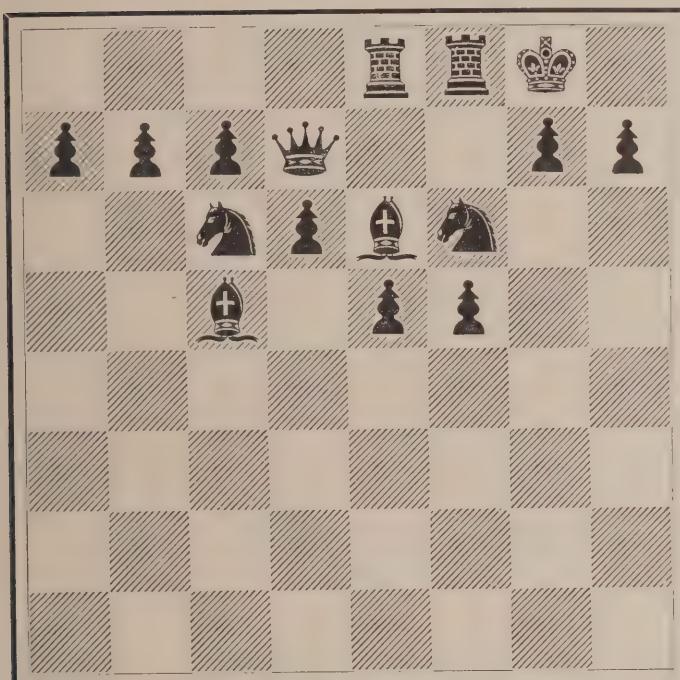
(White.)

LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Minor Front by the Right Refused.

FIG. 27.

(Black.)



(White.)

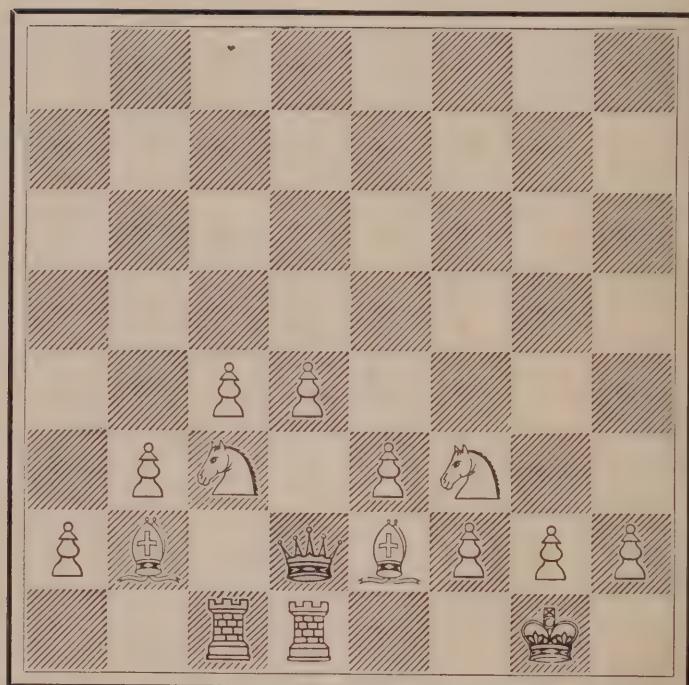
LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Minor Front by the Left Refused.

(Attack.)

FIG. 28.

(Black.)



(White.)

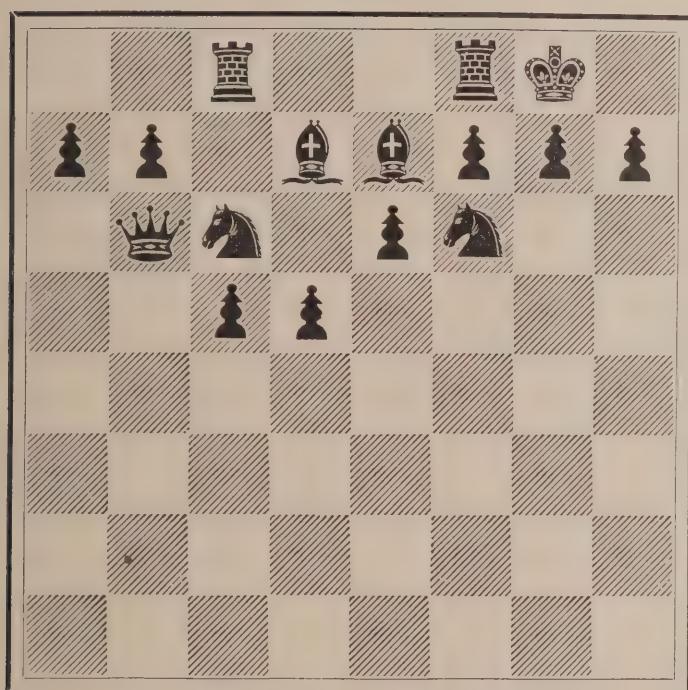
LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Minor Front by the Left Refused.

(Counter Attack.)

FIG. 29.

(Black.)



(White.)

A Line of Development is composed of those movements whereby the primary base is developed along the proper major or grand strategic front.

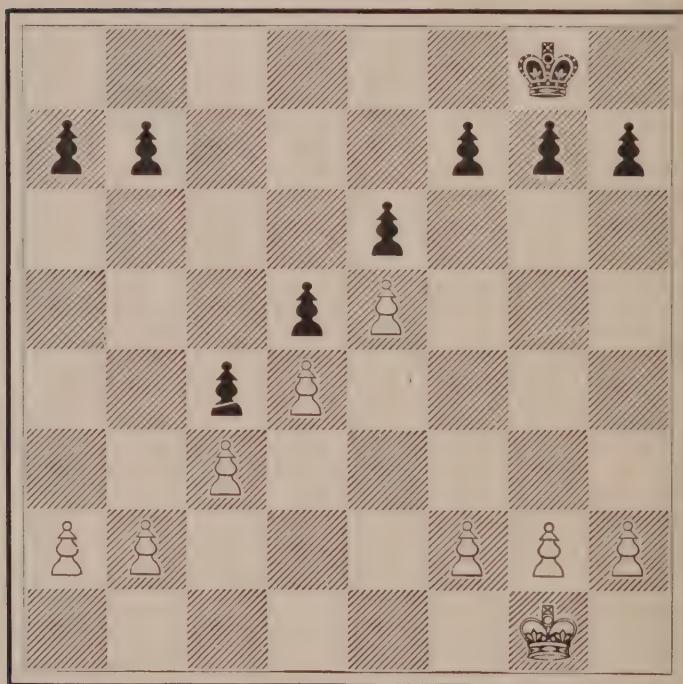
LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

White.—Major Front by the Right.

Black.—Major Front by the Left Refused.

FIG. 30.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

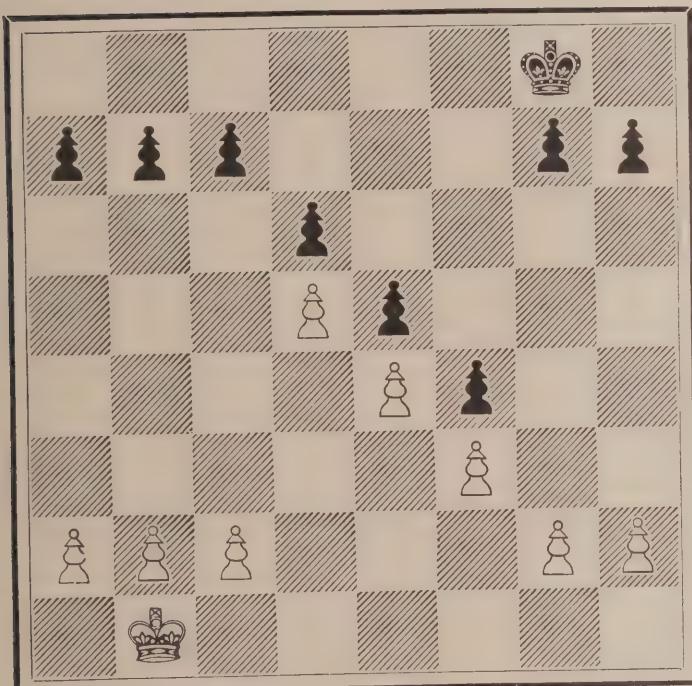
LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

White.—Major Front by the Left.

Black.—Major Front by the Right Refused.

FIG. 31.

(*Black.*)



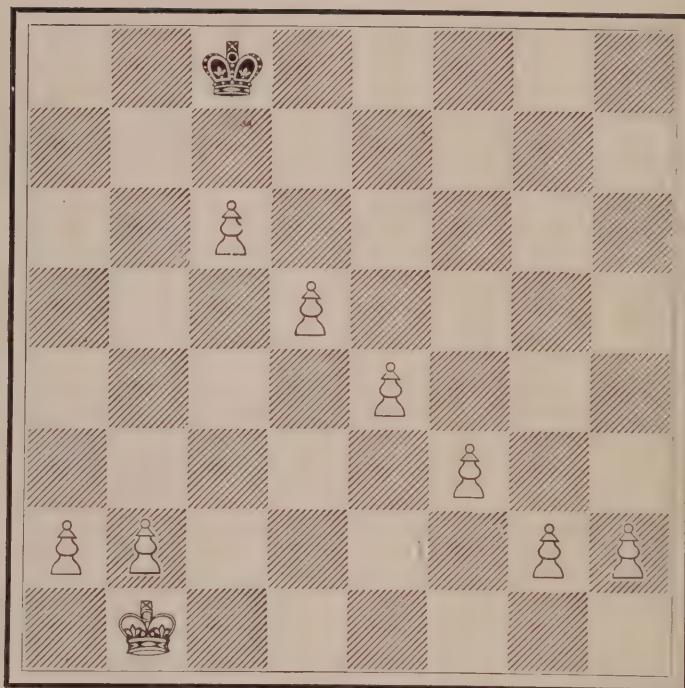
(*White.*)

LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

Grand Front by the Left.

FIG. 32.

(Black.)



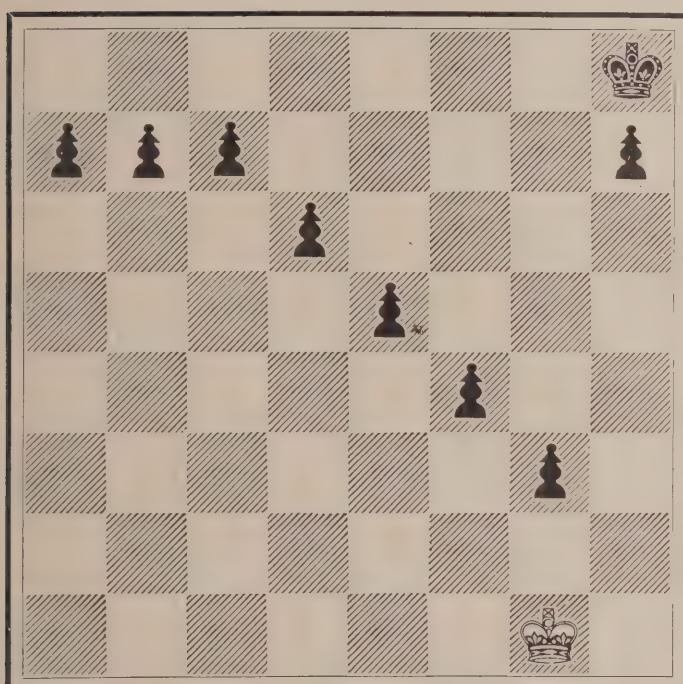
(White.)

LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

Grand Front by the Right Refused.

FIG. 33.

(Black.)



(White.)

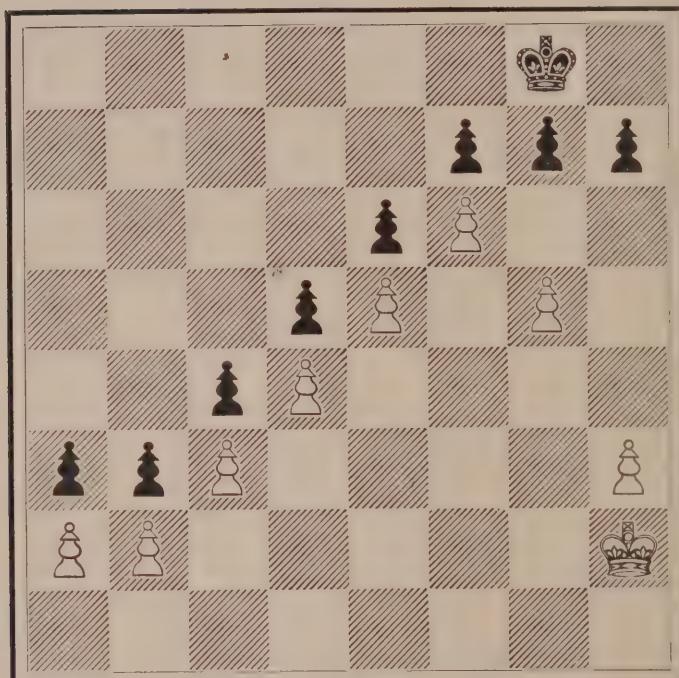
LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

White. — Grand Front by the Right.

Black. — Grand Front by the Left Refused.

FIG. 34.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

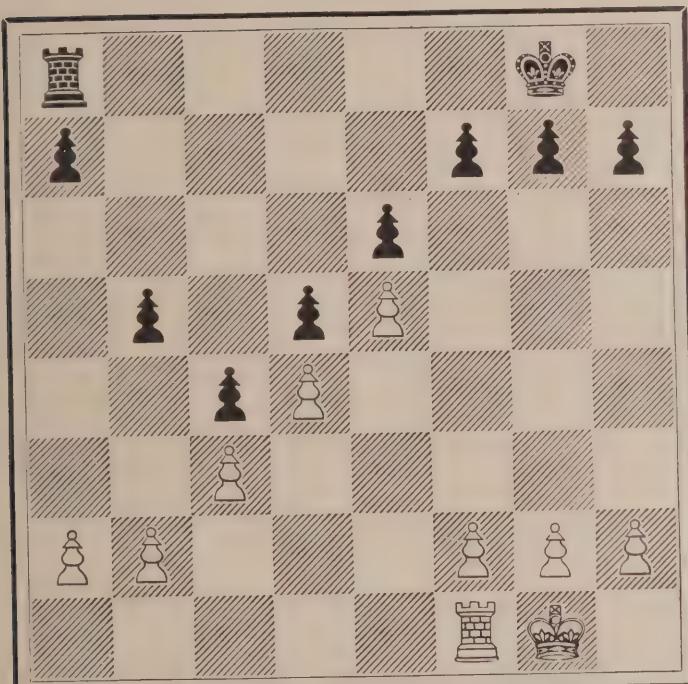
A Line of Manœuvre is composed of those movements whereby a given force, unless prevented, will establish itself at a given point and at a given time as the greater force.

LINES OF MANŒUVRE.

(Combining the Deployment of a Pawn.)

FIG. 35.

(Black.)



(White.)

NOTE.—In this situation White, having the move, deploys P—K B 4. This pawn now occupies its proper post on the line of mobilization, and throws Black on the defensive by the threat to advance to K B 5, which, all else being equal, would give White a winning posi-

tion. Consequently the point K B 4 is the common objective both of the line of mobilization and of the line of manœuvre.

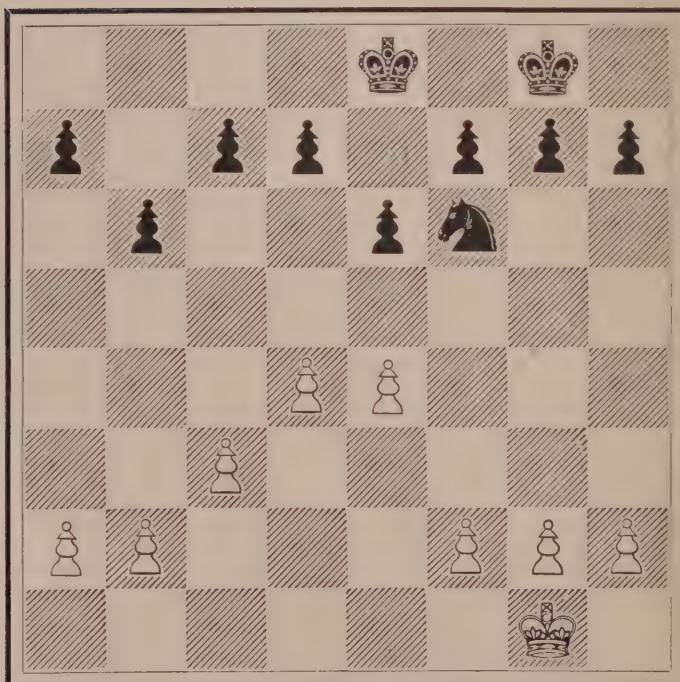
If Black has the move, he deploys P — Q R 4. This pawn now occupies its proper post on the line of mobilization, and throws White on the defensive by the threat to support the advance of the black Q Kt P to Q Kt 5, which, all else being equal, would give Black a decided advantage in position. Consequently the point Q R 4 is the common objective both of the line of mobilization and of the line of manœuvre.

LINES OF MANŒUVRE.

(Combining the Development of a Pawn.)

FIG. 36.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

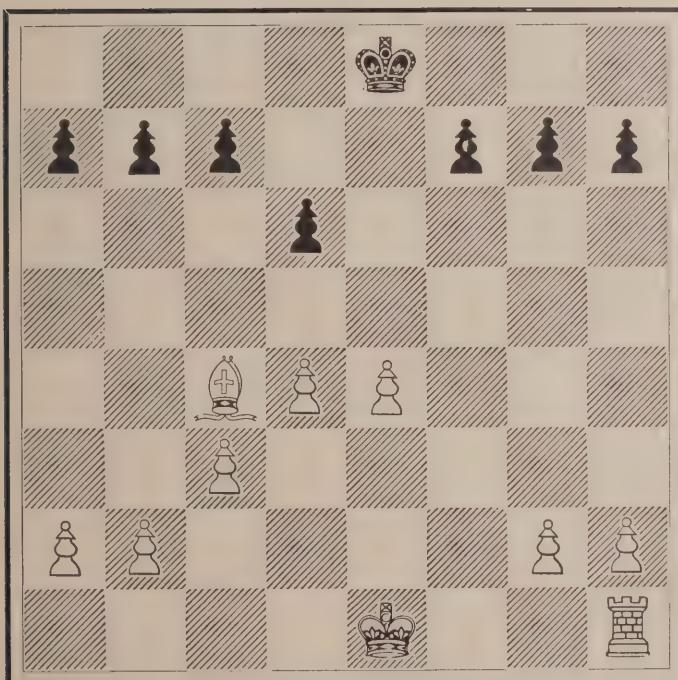
NOTE.—White, having to move, may dislodge by P—K 5 the black Kt from KB3 and establish the major front by the right. Thus, the point K 5 is the common objective both of the line of development and of the line of manœuvre, and, all else being equal, its occupation by the white K P will increase the advantage in position which White already possesses by establishing the major front by the right and throwing Black on the strategetic defensive.

LINES OF MANŒUVRE.

(Combining the Deployment of a Piece.)

FIG. 37.

(Black.)



(White.)

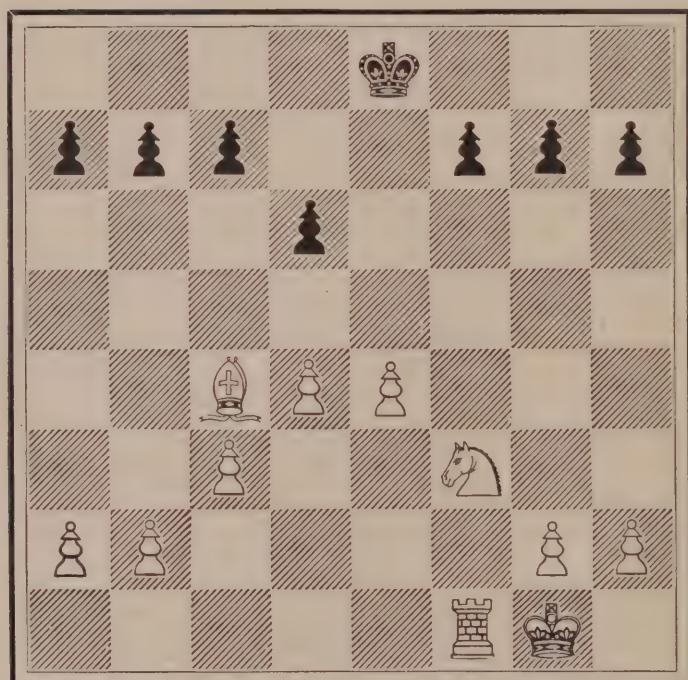
NOTE.—White, having to move, castles K R, throwing Black on the tactical defensive by the threat to continue with either K B or K R takes Black's K B P (ck), which, all else being equal, would win the game. The point K B 1 thus is the common objective both of the line of mobilization and of the line of manœuvre.

LINES OF MANŒUVRE.

(Combining the Development of a Piece.)

FIG. 38.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

NOTE.—White, having the move, plays Kt—K Kt 5, which throws Black on the defensive by the threat to continue either with Kt, B, or R takes Black's K B P,

which, all else being equal, would win the game. Consequently the point K Kt 5 is the common objective both of the line of development and of the line of manœuvre.

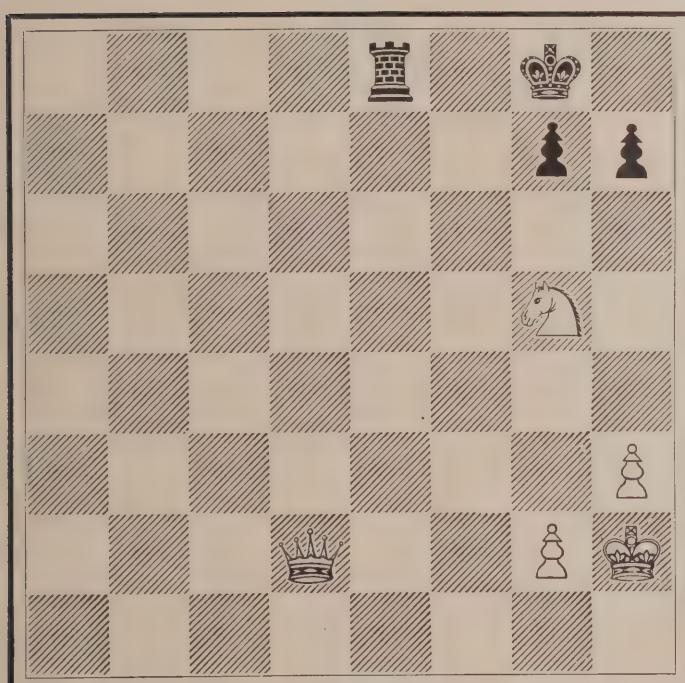
A Line of Operations is composed of those movements whereby a greater force overcomes a lesser force.

LINES OF OPERATIONS.

(Strategic.)

FIG. 39.

(Black.)



(White.)

White to move and win.

NOTE.—White, having the move, plays 1 Q—Q 5 (ck); the black K cannot enter the objective plane K B 1 on account of White mating with Q—K B 7 (ck), and is

compelled to retire to K R 1. The white Kt then checks at K B 7, and upon Black playing K — K Kt 1, the Kt again checks at K R 6, also disclosing check from the white Q. The black K again is compelled to retire to K R 1, whereupon the white Q checks at K Kt 8. The black R takes the Q, and then the white Kt mates at K B 7.

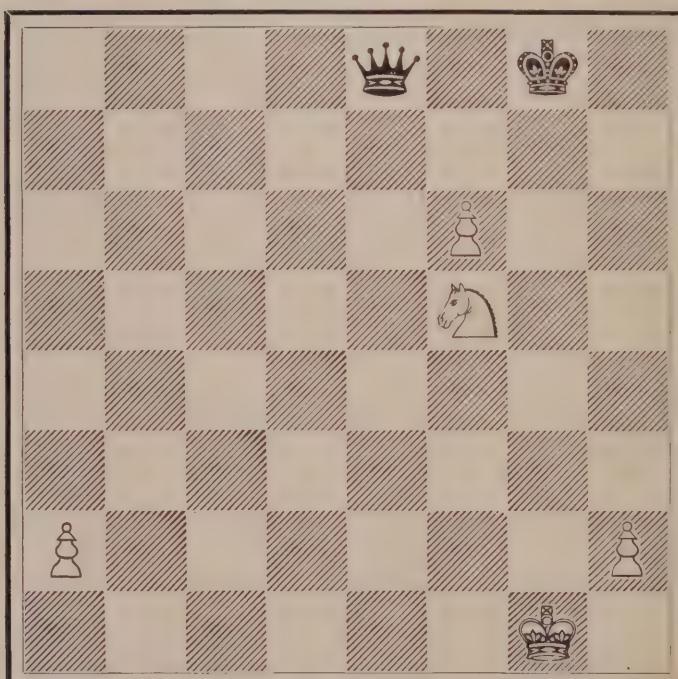
In the language of chess strategics the mobility of the objective plane is 1, and the value of the white radius of offence is 1; and these being equal, the objective plane is commanded.

LINES OF OPERATIONS.

(Tactical.)

FIG. 40.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

White to move and win.

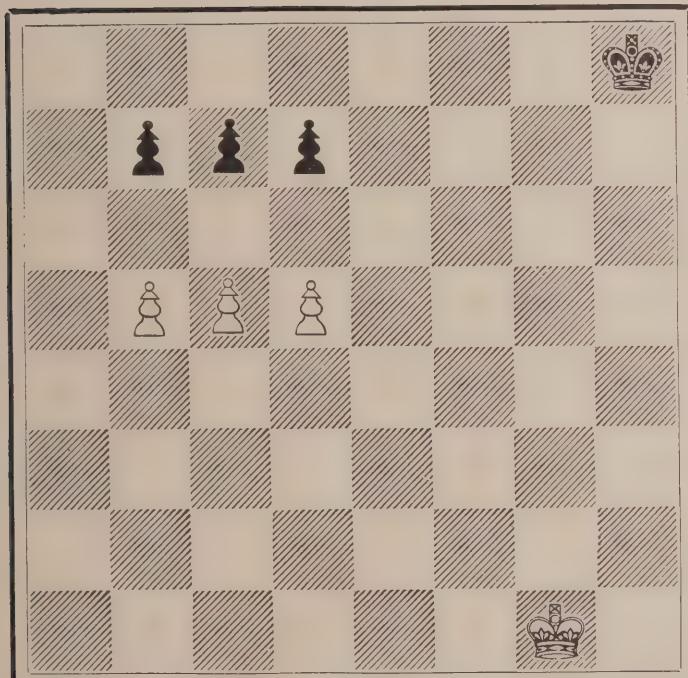
NOTE.—White, having the move, plays $1 P - KB\ 7$ (ck). If Black moves his K, the white P takes the black Q; if the black Q takes the P, the white Kt checks at $K\ R\ 6$; and if the black K takes the P, the white Kt checks at $Q\ 6$; and in either case White wins by gaining the black Q in exchange for his Kt and $KB\ P$.

LINES OF OPERATIONS.

(Logistic.)

FIG. 41.

(Black.)



White to move and win.

NOTE.—White plays $1 P - QB\ 6$. Black must take, and if with $Q\ P$, White continues $P - Q\ Kt\ 6$; and however Black plays, White queens a pawn and wins.

In the language of chess strategics White occupies the logistic horizon, thus opening communication with the kindred hypothetical force, and enabling a portion of the latter to enter the topographical zone and effect a junction with the kindred determinate force, the united forces being the greater force as compared to the adverse determinate force.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

I.

The immortal fiftieth battle. Connoisseurs hold that the annals of chess produce no higher flight of genius than the play of M'Donnell in this game.

This game illustrates the major right oblique refused by Black, combined with a line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre.

QUEEN'S GAMBIT.

DE LA BOURDONNAIS.

1. P — Q 4.
2. P — Q B 4.
3. P — K 4.
4. P — Q 5.
5. Q Kt — B 3.
6. K B × P.
7. Kt — K B 3.
8. B — K Kt 5.
9. K — B sq.
10. Q — K 2.
11. R — Q sq.
12. P — Q 6.
13. Kt — Q 5.
14. B × Q.
15. K — K sq.

M'DONNELL.

1. P — Q 4.
2. P × P.
3. P — K 4.
4. P — K B 4.
5. K Kt — B 3.
6. K B — B 4.
7. Q — K 2.
8. B × B P (ck).
9. B — Kt 3.
10. P — K B 5.
11. B — K Kt 5.
12. P × P.
13. Kt × Kt.
14. Kt — K 6 (ck).
15. K × B.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 16. Q — Q 3. | 16. K R — Q sq. |
| 17. Q R — Q 2. | 17. Q Kt — B 3. |
| 18. P — Q Kt 3. | 18. K B — R 4. |
| 19. P — Q R 3. | 19. Q R — Q B sq. |
| 20. K R — K Kt sq. | 20. P — Q Kt 4. |
| 21. K B × P. | 21. B × Kt. |
| 22. P × B. | 22. Kt — Q 5. |
| 23. B — B 4. | 23. Kt × B P (ck). |
| 24. K — B 2. | 24. Kt × Q R. |
| 25. R × P (ck). | 25. K — B 3. |
| 26. R — K B 7 (ck). | 26. K — Kt 3. |
| 27. R — Q Kt 7. | 27. Kt (Q 7) × B. |
| 28. P × Kt. | 28. R × P. |
| 29. Q — Q Kt sq. | 29. B — Kt 3. |
| 30. K — B 3. | 30. R — Q B 6. |
| 31. Q — Q R 2. | 31. Kt — Q B 5 (dis ck). |
| 32. K — Kt 4. | 32. R — K Kt sq. |
| 33. R × B. | 33. P × R. |
| 34. K — R 4. | 34. K — B 3. |
| 35. Q — K 2. | 35. R — K Kt 3. |
| 36. Q — K R 5. | 36. Kt — K 6. |

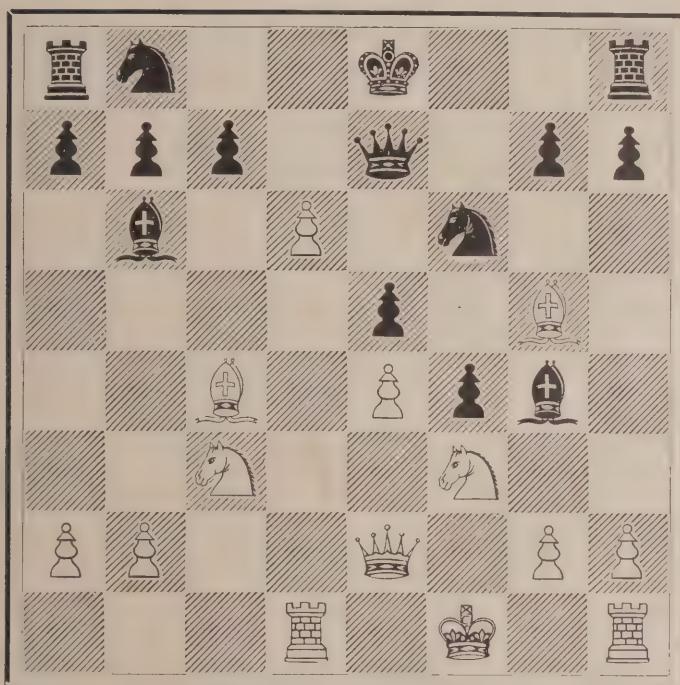
And White resigns.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES

Position after White's 12th Move.

FIG. 42.

M'DONNELL.



DE LA BOURDONNAIS.

Black to move.

II.

Allowed by proficients generally to be the most brilliant Evans' Gambit ever played.

It illustrates a line of mobilization by the right combined with a line of manoeuvre against an objective plane located on the centre.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

ANDERSSEN.	DUFRESNE.
1. P—K 4.	1. P—K 4.
2. Kt—KB 3.	2. Kt—QB 3.
3. B—B 4.	3. B—B 4.
4. P—Q Kt 4.	4. B × Kt P.
5. P—Q B 3.	5. B—R 4.
6. P—Q 4.	6. P × P.
7. Castles.	7. P—Q 6.
8. Q—Kt 3.	8. Q—B 3.
9. P—K 5.	9. Q—Kt 3.
10. R—K 1.	10. K Kt—K 2.
11. B—R 3.	11. P—Kt 4.
12. Q × Kt P.	12. R—Q Kt 1.
13. Q—R 4.	13. B—Kt 3.
14. Q Kt—Q 2.	14. B—Kt 2.
15. Kt—K 4.	15. Q—KB 4.
16. KB × Q P.	16. Q—R 4.
17. Kt—B 6 (ck).	17. P × Kt.
18. P × P.	18. R—Kt 1.
19. Q R—Q 1.	19. Q × Kt.
20. R × Kt (ck).	20. Kt × R.
21. Q × P (ck).	21. K × Q.
22. B—B 5 (dle ck).	22. K—K 1.
23. B—Q 7 (ck).	23. K—Q 1.
24. B × Kt (ck).	

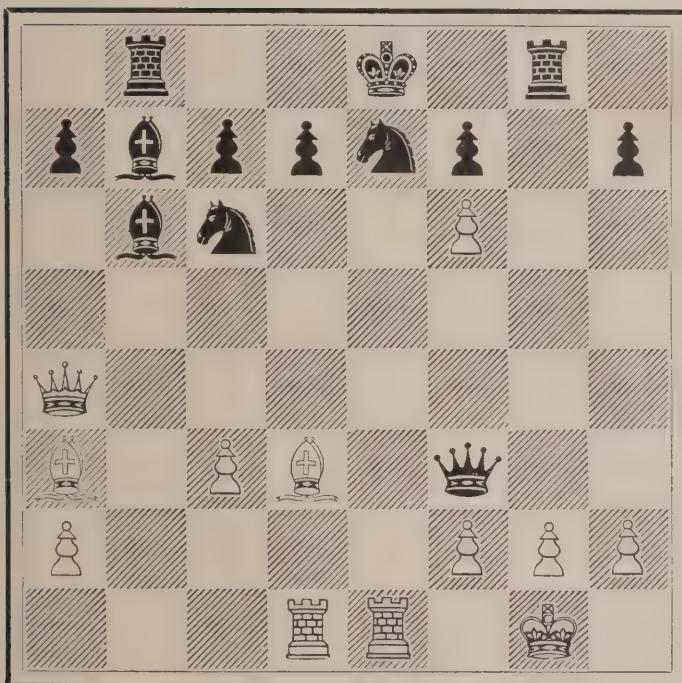
Checkmate.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

Position after Black's 19th Move.

FIG. 43.

DUFRESNE.



ANDERSSEN.

White to move.

III.

Considered by the critics the most brilliant Evans ever played at the odds of the Q Kt.

The play illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a line of manœuvre against the objective plane located on the King's wing, and not covered by a Kt at K B 3.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

Remove White's Queen's Knight.

M'DONNELL.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — K B 3.
3. K B — B 4.
4. P — Q Kt 4.
5. P — Q B 3.
6. Castles.
7. Q — Q B 2.
8. B — Q R 3.
9. P — Q 4.
10. K P × P.
11. P × P.
12. Q R — Q sq.
13. R × Kt.
14. B × K B P (ck).
15. R × B (ck).
16. Kt — Kt 5 (ck).
17. Q × K R P (ck).

AMATEUR.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. K B — B 4.
4. B × Kt P.
5. B — R 4.
6. Kt — K B 3.
7. Castles.
8. R — K sq.
9. P — Q 4.
10. K Kt × P.
11. Kt × Q B P.
12. Kt × R.
13. B — Q 2.
14. K × B.
15. Q × R.
16. K — Kt sq.

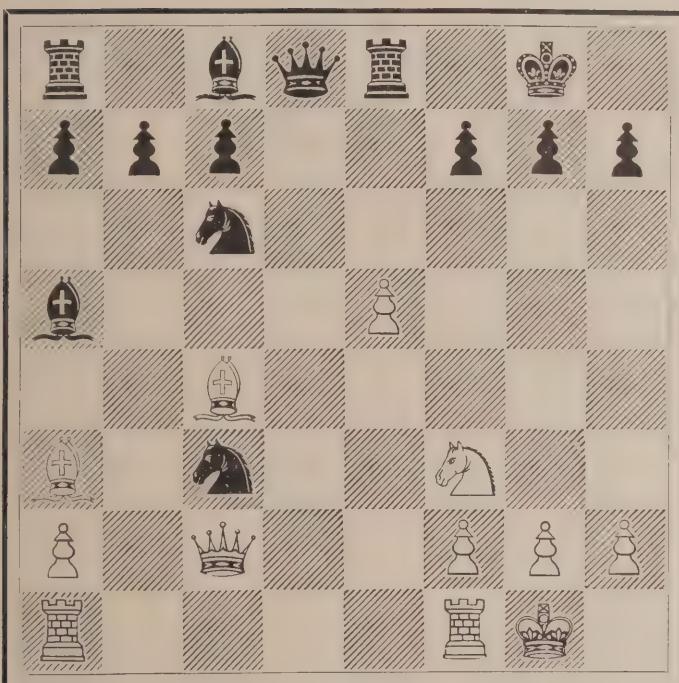
Checkmate.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

Position after Black's 11th Move.

FIG. 44.

AMATEUR.



M'DONNELL.

White to move.

IV.

All authorities agree that this *partie* is the most brilliant game of which there is any record.

It illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre.

KING'S BISHOP'S GAMBIT.

ANDERSEN.

1. P — K 4.
2. P — K B 4.
3. B — Q B 4.
4. B × Kt P.
5. K — B 1.
6. Kt — K B 3.
7. P — Q 3.
8. Kt — R 4.
9. Kt — B 5.
10. P — K Kt 4.
11. R — K Kt 1.
12. P — K R 4.
13. P — R 5.
14. Q — B 3.
15. B × P.
16. Kt — Q B 3.
17. Kt — Q 5.
18. B — Q 6.
19. P — K 5.
20. K — K 2.
21. Kt × Kt P (ck).
22. Q — B 6 (ck).
23. B — K 7 (ck).

KIESERITZKI.

1. P — K 4.
2. P × P.
3. P — Q Kt 4.
4. Q — R 5 (ck).
5. Kt — K B 3.
6. Q — R 3.
7. Kt — R 4.
8. P — Q B 3.
9. Q — Kt 4.
10. Kt — K B 3.
11. P × B.
12. Q — Kt 3.
13. Q — Kt 4.
14. Kt — K Kt 1.
15. Q — B 3.
16. B — B 4.
17. Q × Kt P.
18. B × R.
19. Q × R (ck).
20. Kt — Q R 3.
21. K — Q 1.
22. Kt × Q.

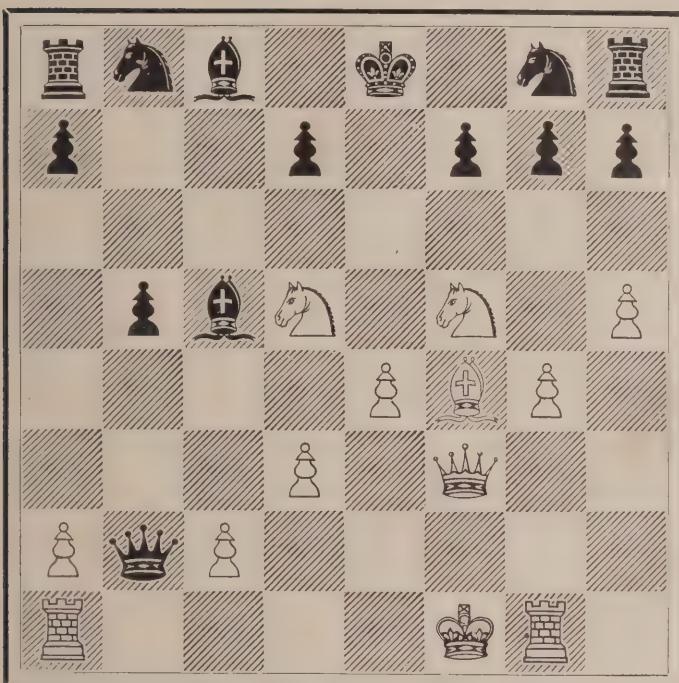
Checkmate.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

Position after Black's 17th move.

FIG. 45.

KIESERITZKI.



ANDERSSEN.

White to move.

V.

The following game is accepted generally, as the most brilliant of Morphy's masterpieces.

It illustrates the formation of the major right oblique by Black.

PHILIDOR'S DEFENCE.

BIRD.	MORPHY.
1. P—K 4.	1. P—K 4.
2. Kt—KB 3.	2. P—Q 3.
3. P—Q 4.	3. P—KB 4.
4. Kt—B 3.	4. P×KP.
5. Q Kt×P.	5. P—Q 4.
6. Kt—Kt 3.	6. P—K 5.
7. Kt—K 5.	7. Kt—KB 3.
8. B—KKt 5.	8. B—Q 3.
9. Kt—R 5.	9. Castles.
10. Q—Q 2.	10. Q—K 1.
11. P—KKt 4.	11. Kt×P.
12. Kt×Kt.	12. Q×Kt.
13. Kt—K 5.	13. Kt—B 3.
14. B—K 2.	14. Q—R 6.
15. Kt×Kt.	15. P×Kt.
16. B—K 3.	16. R—Kt 1.
17. Castles (Q R).	17. R×BP.
18. B×R.	18. Q—QR 6.
19. P—B 3.	19. Q×RP.
20. P—Kt 4.	20. Q—R 8 (ck).
21. K—B 2.	21. Q—R 5 (ck).
22. K—Kt 2.	22. B×KtP.
23. P×B.	23. R×P (ck).
24. Q×R.	24. Q×Q (ck).
25. K—B 2.	25. P—K 6.
26. B×P.	26. B—B 4 (ck).
27. R—Q 3.	27. Q—B 5 (ck).
28. K—Q 2.	28. Q—R 7 (ck).
29. K—Q 1.	29. Q—Kt 8 (ck).

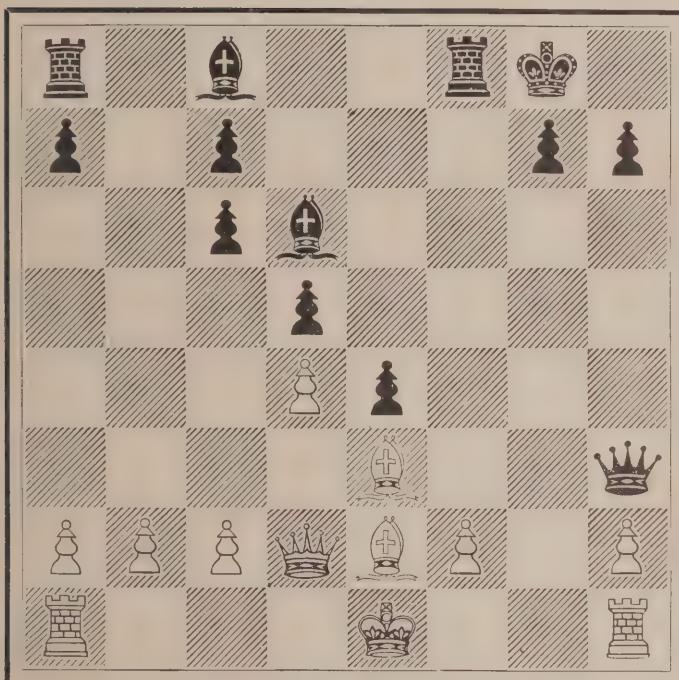
And White resigned.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

Position after White's 16th Move.

FIG. 46.

MORPHY.



BIRD.

Black to move.

VI.

Another of Morphy's masterpieces. This game illustrates the formation of the first supporting parallel by Black and the attack of the objective plane located on the centre. It, of course, ranks as one of the finest games ever played.

PHILIDOR'S DEFENCE.

BARNES.

1. P—K 4.
2. Kt—KB 3.
3. P—Q 4.
4. P × KP.
5. Kt—Kt 5.
6. P—K 6.
7. Kt—B 7.
8. B—K 3.
9. B—K Kt 5
10. Kt × R.
11. B—B 4.
12. Kt—B 7.
13. R—B 1.
14. P—KB 3.
15. Kt—R 3.
16. B × B.
17. Q × Kt.
18. Castles (Q R).
19. B—Kt 3.
20. K—Kt 1.
21. Kt—K 5.
22. Kt—Q 3.
23. Kt × B.

MORPHY.

1. P—K 4.
2. P—Q 3.
3. P—KB 4.
4. BP × P.
5. P—Q 4.
6. B—B 4.
7. Q—B 3.
8. P—Q 5.
9. Q—B 4.
10. Q × B.
11. Kt—QB 3.
12. Q × P.
13. Kt—B 3.
14. Kt—Q Kt 5.
15. B × P.
16. Kt—Q 6 (ck).
17. P × Q.
18. B × Kt.
19. P—Q 7 (ck).
20. B—B 4.
21. K—B 1.
22. R—K 1.
23. Q × R.

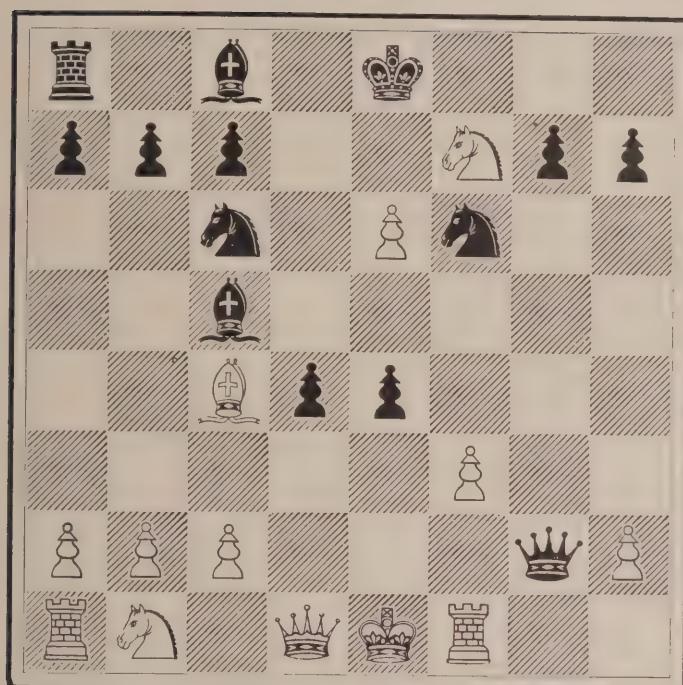
And White resigns.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

Position after White's 14th Move.

FIG. 47.

MORPHY.



BARNES.

Black to move.

GRAND TACTICS.

THE PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

The Prime Strategetic Point always is that point which is occupied by the kindred King.

PRINCIPLE.

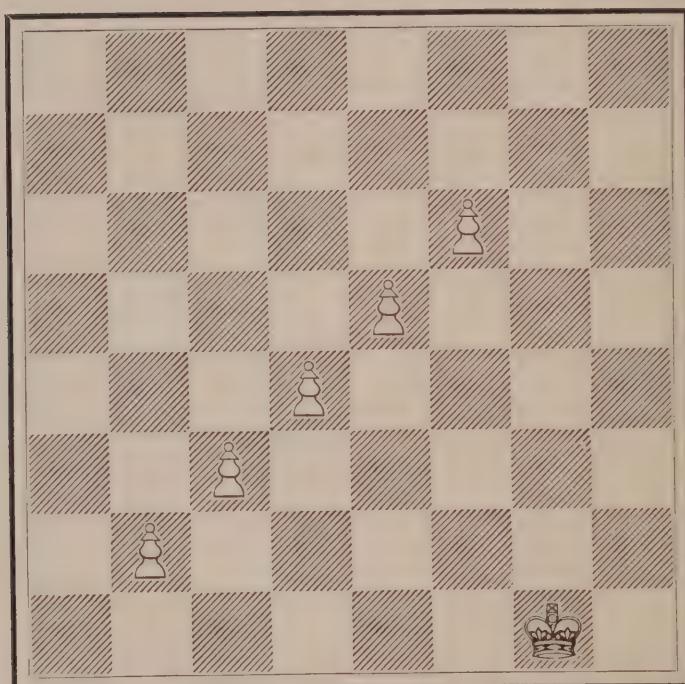
The proper post for the Prime Strategetic Point is at the extremity of a straight line drawn from the centre of, and at right angles to, the grand strategic front. It never should be posted at the extremity of an adverse major or grand strategic front; nor on the same side of the board with the crochet aligned in a double strategic front; nor on the wing refused of a kindred minor or major strategic front.

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 48.

(Black.)



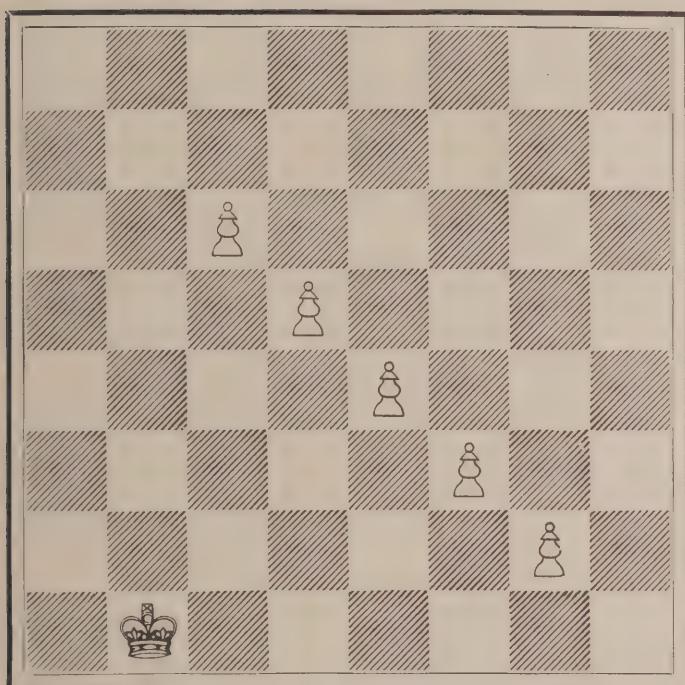
(White.)

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

(By the Left.)

FIG. 49.

(Black.)



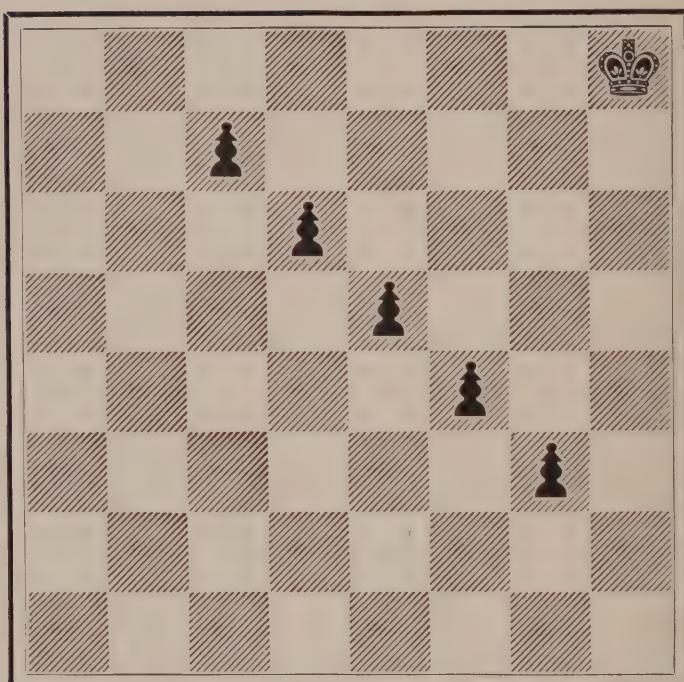
(White.)

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

(By the Right Refused.)

FIG. 50.

(Black.)



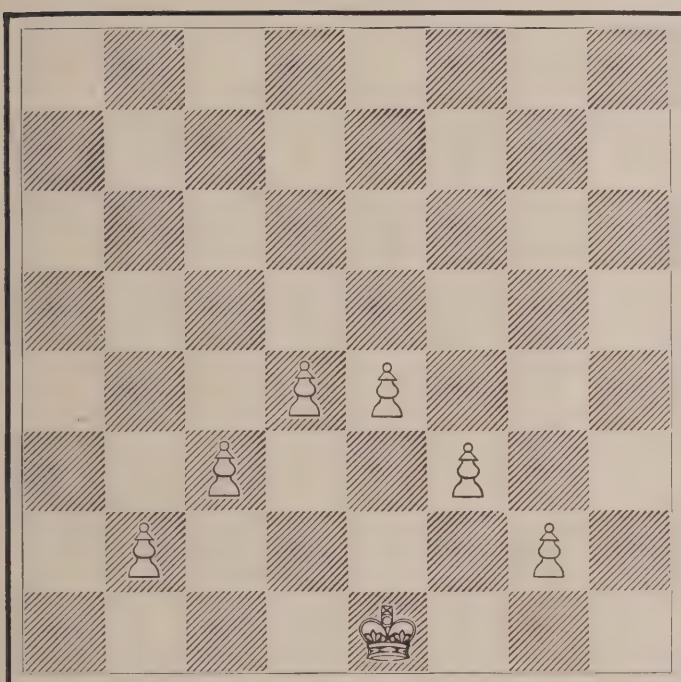
(White.)

PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

(By the Centre.)

FIG. 51.

(Black.)



(White.)

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

PRINCIPLE.

The mobility of a given Objective Plane decreases as the number of points open to the movement of the adverse King decreases.

The vulnerability of a given Objective Plane increases as the number of radii of offence possible to be operated against it by hostile integers of force increases.

The potential value of a given Objective Plane is as the sum of its mobility and its vulnerability is to the sum of the radii of offence operated by a hostile determinate force.

There are sixty-four Objective Planes. These are divided into ten classes:—

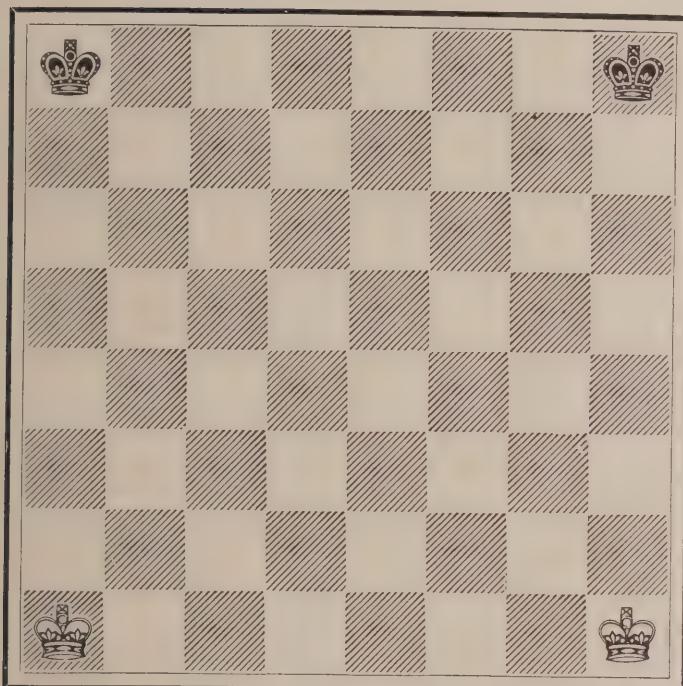
CLASS A comprises the four objective planes in which the adverse King is situated at R 1. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 21; its normal mobility is 4.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class A.

FIG. 52.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 21 Mobility . . . 4

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	4
Sum of Diagonals	5
Sum of Obliques	12
Total	21
Sum of Points of Movement	4

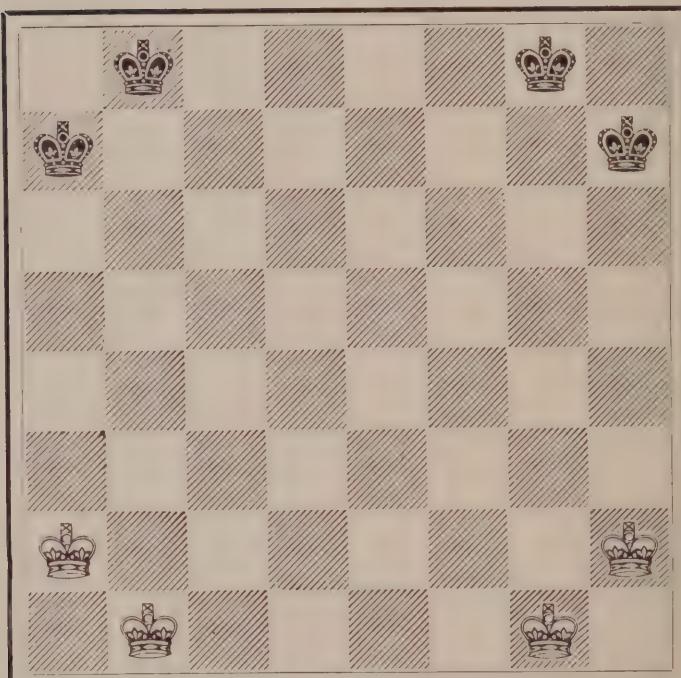
CLASS B comprises the eight planes in which the adverse King is situated at Kt 1 or at R 2. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 30; its normal mobility is 6.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class B.

FIG. 53.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 30 Mobility . . . 6

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Obliques	5
Sum of Diagonals	7
Sum of Obliques	18
Total	30
Sum of Points of Movement	6

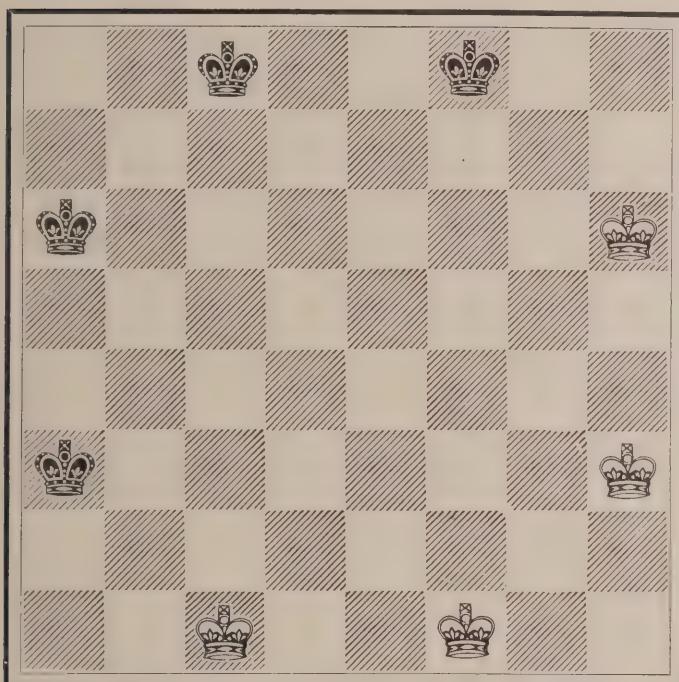
CLASS C comprises those eight objective planes in which the adverse King is located at K B 1, Q B 1, R 3, R 6. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 39; its normal mobility is 6.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class C.

FIG. 54.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 39 Mobility . . . 6

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	7
Sum of Diagonals	9
Sum of Obliques	23
Total	<u>39</u>
Sum of Points of Movement	6

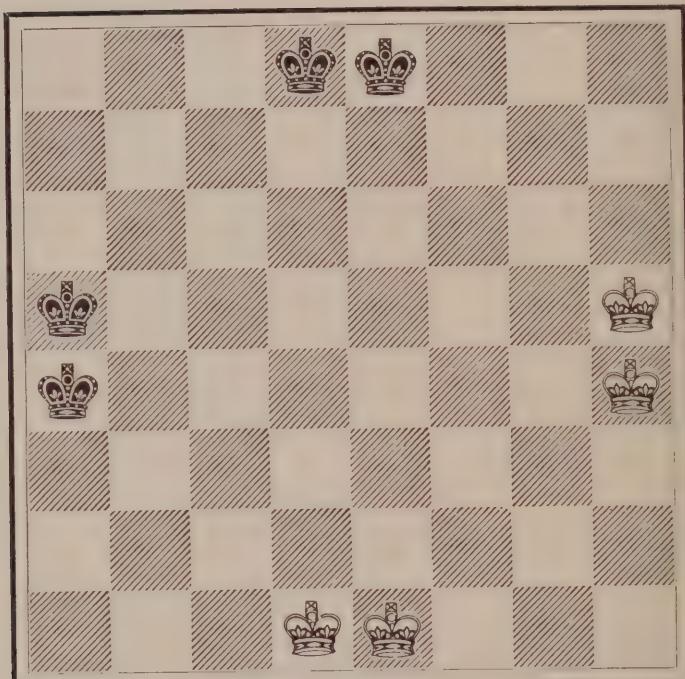
CLASS D comprises the eight objective planes in which the adverse King is situated at K 1, Q 1, R 4, R 5. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 42; its normal mobility is 6.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class D.

FIG. 55.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 42 Mobility . . . 6

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	7
Sum of Diagonals	9
Sum of Obliques	26
Total	42
Sum of Points of Movement	6

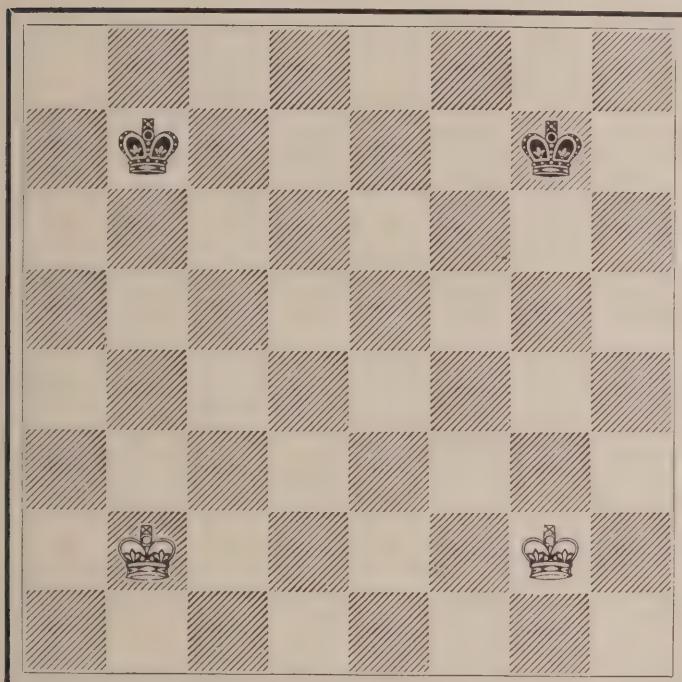
CLASS E comprises the four objective planes in which the adverse King is situated at Kt 2. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 42; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class E.

FIG. 56.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 42 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	9
Sum of Diagonals	9
Sum of Obliques	24
Total	42
Sum of Points of Movement	9

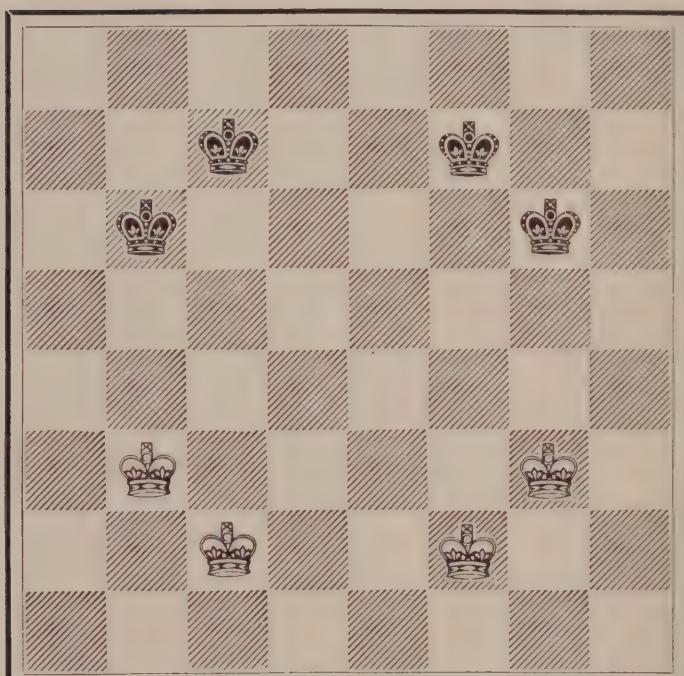
CLASS F comprises the eight objective planes in which the adverse King is situated at K B 2, Q B 2, or Kt 3. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 54; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class F.

FIG. 57.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 54 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	9
Sum of Diagonals	12
Sum of Obliques	33
Total	54
Sum of Points of Movement	9

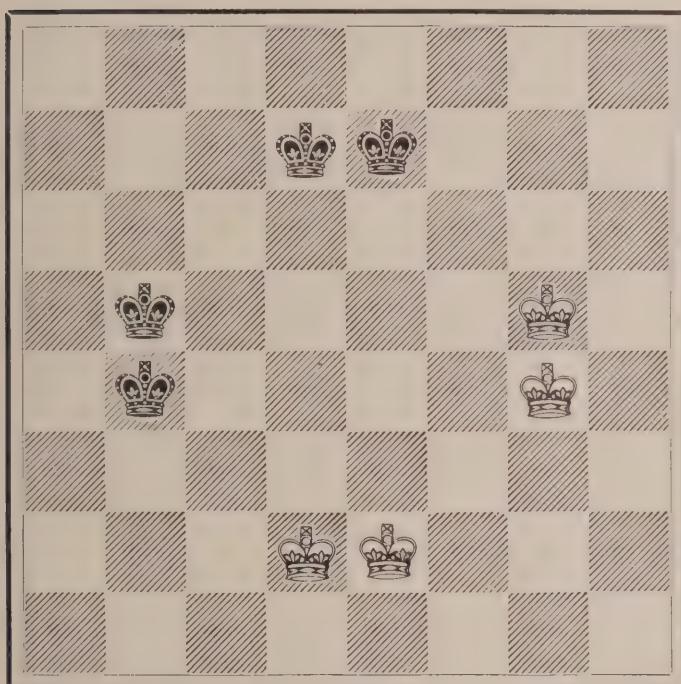
CLASS G comprises the eight objective planes in which the adverse King is located at K 2, Q 2, Kt 4, or Kt 5. The vulnerability of a plane of this class is 58; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class G.

FIG. 58.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 58 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	9
Sum of Diagonals	11
Sum of Obliques	38
Total	58
Sum of Points of Movement	9

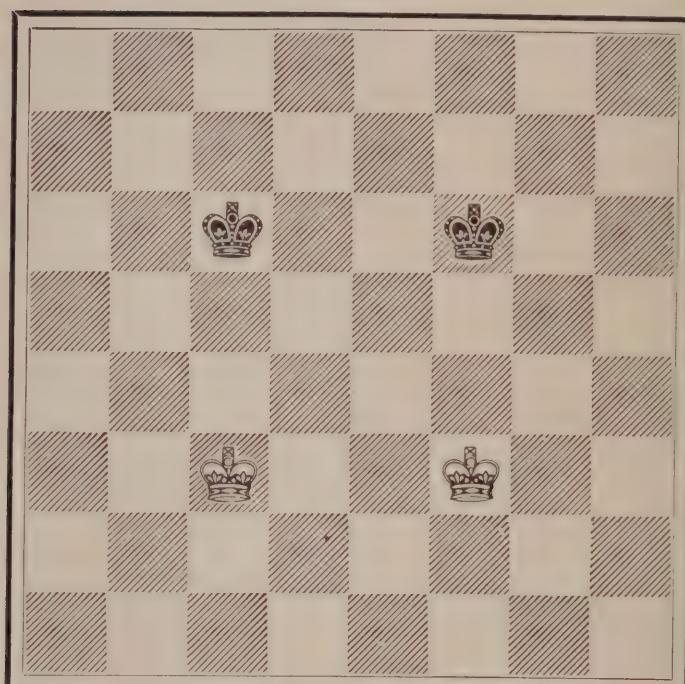
CLASS H comprises those four objective planes in which the adverse King is located at B 3. The normal vulnerability of a plane of this class is 71; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class H.

FIG. 59.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 71 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	12
Sum of Diagonals	16
Sum of Obliques	43
Total	71
Sum of Points of Movement	9

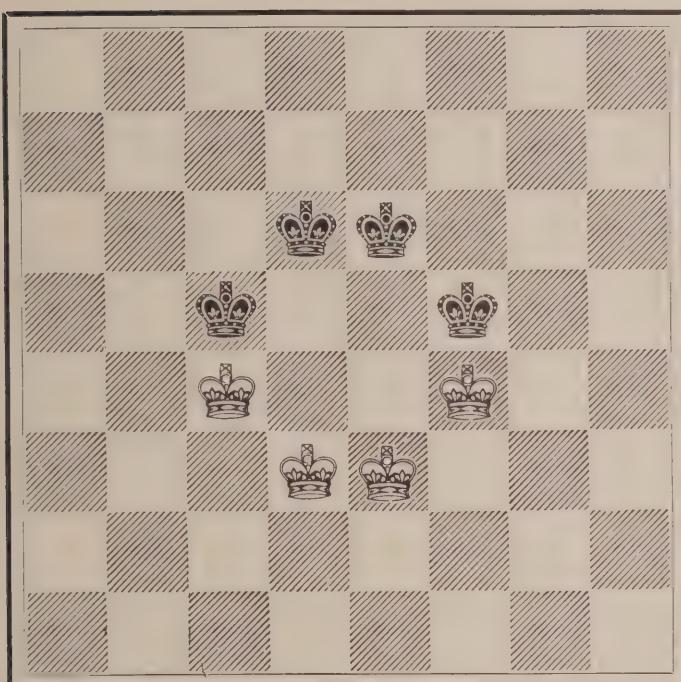
CLASS I comprises those eight objective planes in which the adverse King is located at K 3, Q 3, K B 4, Q B 4, K B 5, Q B 5, K 6, or Q 6. The vulnerability of a plane of this class is 78; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class I.

FIG. 60.

(Black.)



(White.)

Vulnerability . . . 78 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	12
Sum of Diagonals	16
Sum of Obliques	50
Total	78
Sum of Points of Movement	4

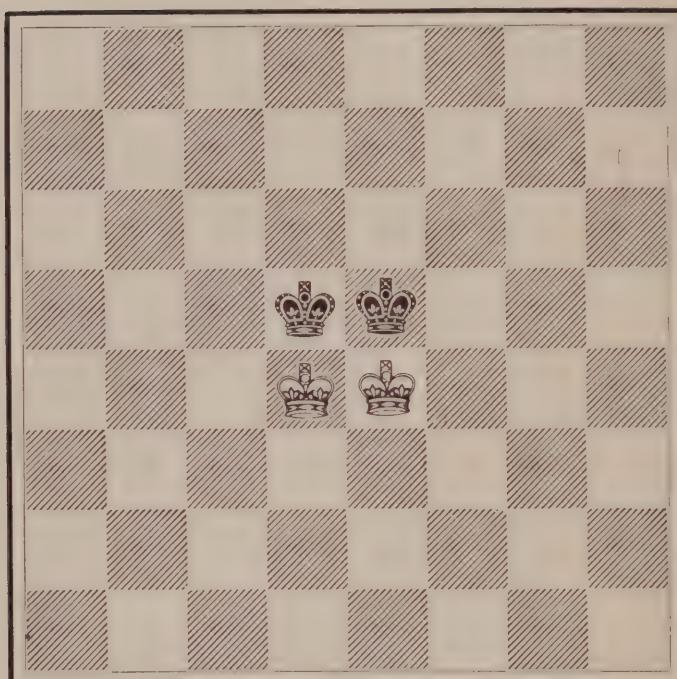
CLASS J comprises those four objective planes in which the adverse King is located at K 4, Q 4, K 5, or Q 5. The vulnerability of a plane of this class is 92; its normal mobility is 9.

OBJECTIVE PLANES.

Class J.

FIG. 61.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

Vulnerability . . . 92 Mobility . . . 9

SUMMARY.

Sum of Verticals and Horizontals	12
Sum of Diagonals	16
Sum of Obliques	64
Total	92
Sum of Points of Movement	9

STRATEGIC FRONTS OF OPERATIONS.

Those dispositions of the pawns, which, properly supplemented by the pieces, establish a given determinate force in such a formation that it properly may cover the prime strategetic point and the strategetic rear, maintain the integrity of the strategetic front and flanks, and operate in the minimum of time with the maximum of force against the objective plane, are termed in this theory, Strategic Fronts of Operations.

PRINCIPLE.

Always establish the strategic front of operations upon the strategetic centre, and extend it in the direction of the objective plane.

Strategic Fronts of Operations are of two kinds, viz.:—

- I. SINGLE FRONTS.
- II. DOUBLE FRONTS.

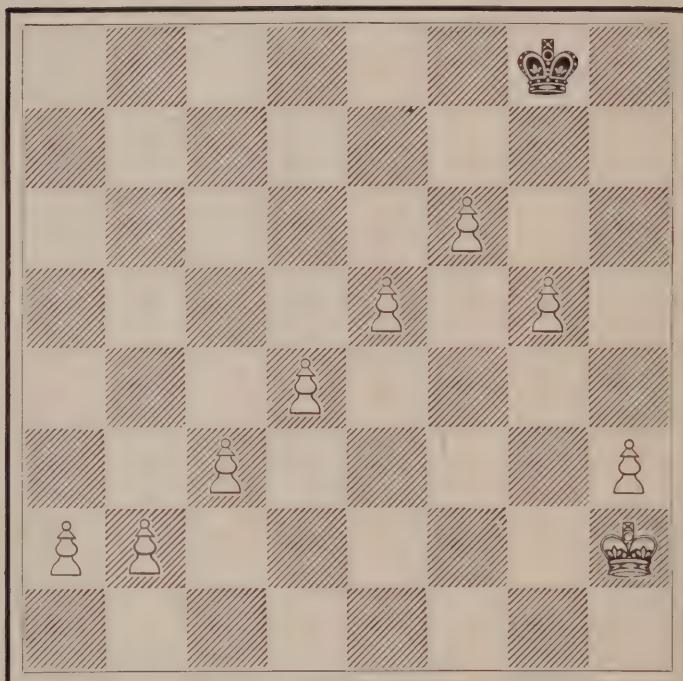
A single front of operations always is adopted when the objective plane is located on the centre or at the extremity of the strategic front.

SINGLE FRONT OF OPERATIONS.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 62.

(Black.)



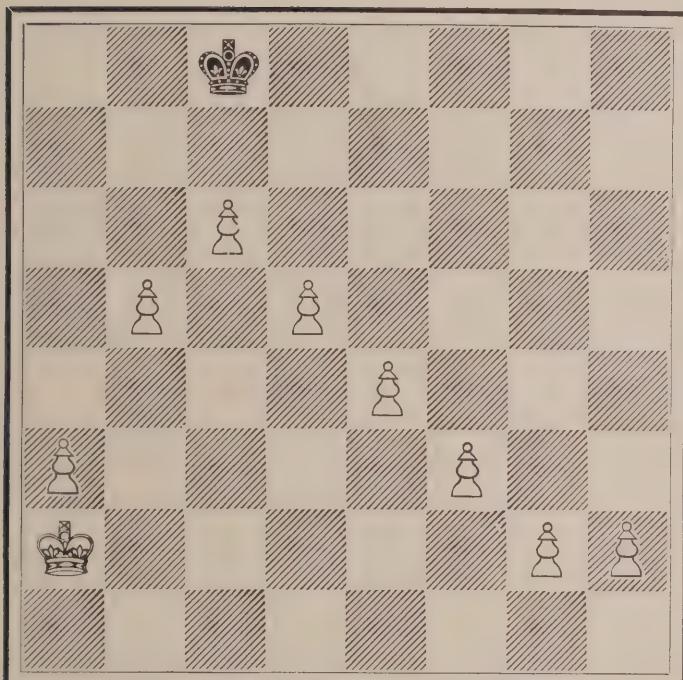
(White.)

SINGLE FRONT OF OPERATIONS.

(By the Left.)

FIG. 63.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

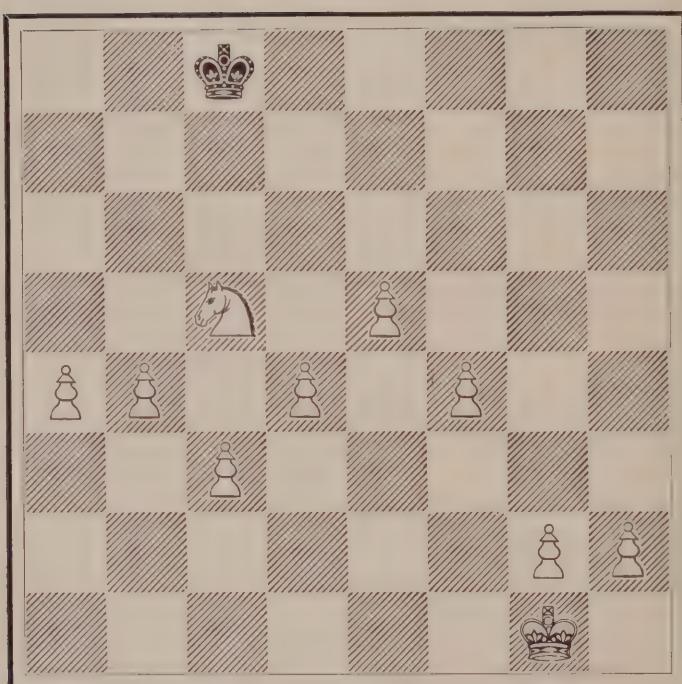
A double front of operations always is to be adopted whenever the objective plane is located otherwise than on the centre or at the extremity of the strategic front.

DOUBLE FRONT OF OPERATIONS.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 64.

(Black.)



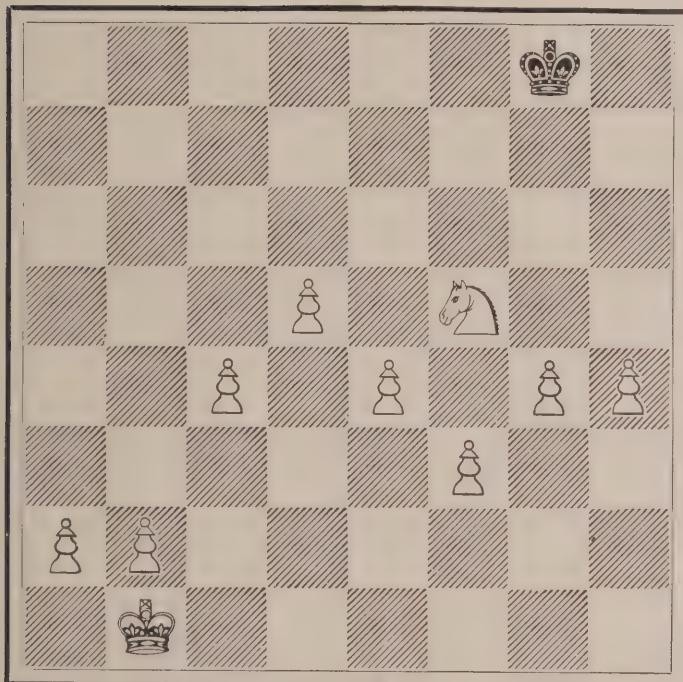
(White.)

DOUBLE FRONT OF OPERATIONS.

(By the Left.)

FIG. 65.

(Black.)



(White.)

Strategic fronts of operations are divided into three classes: —

- I. MINOR STRATEGIC FRONTS.
- II. MAJOR STRATEGIC FRONTS.
- III. GRAND STRATEGIC FRONTS.

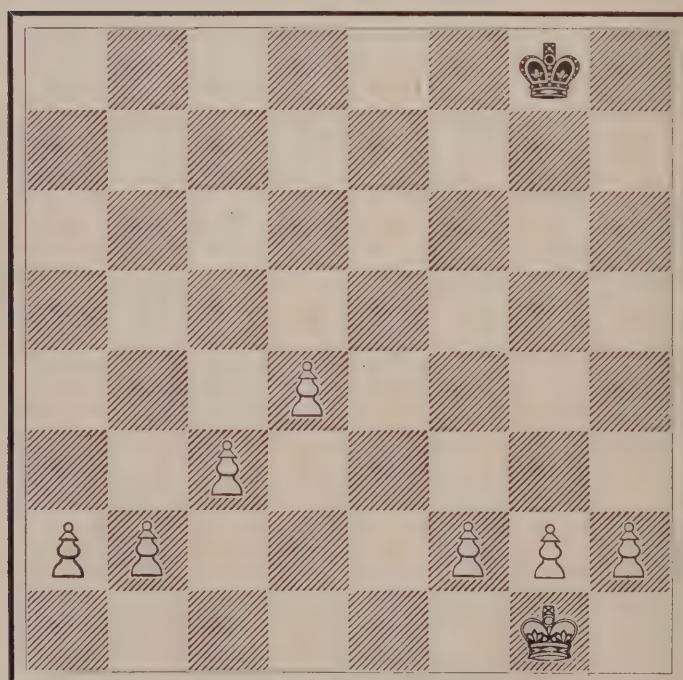
A Minor Strategic Front is formed by a salient; or by the union of a salient and a supporting parallel; or by the union of two salients; or by the union of two salients and a supporting parallel. It may properly be aligned, doubly aligned, and reinforced by the minor crochet and by the crochet aligned.

MINOR STRATEGIC FRONT.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 66.

(Black.)



(White.)

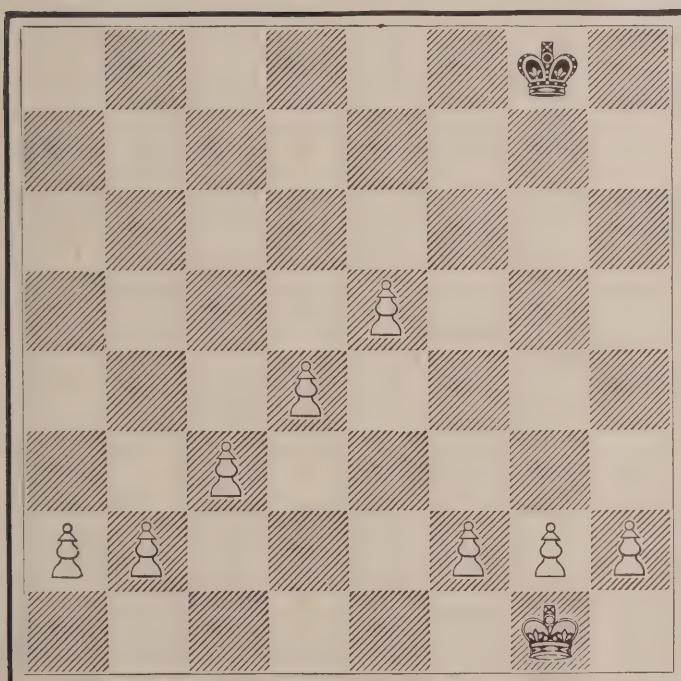
A Major Strategic Front is formed by the extension of the salient one point along that diagonal upon which the minor strategic front already is established. It may properly be aligned, doubly aligned, and reinforced by the minor crochet, the major crochet, the crochet aligned, or supplemented by the formations echelon, enceinte, and en potence.

MAJOR STRATEGIC FRONT.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 67.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

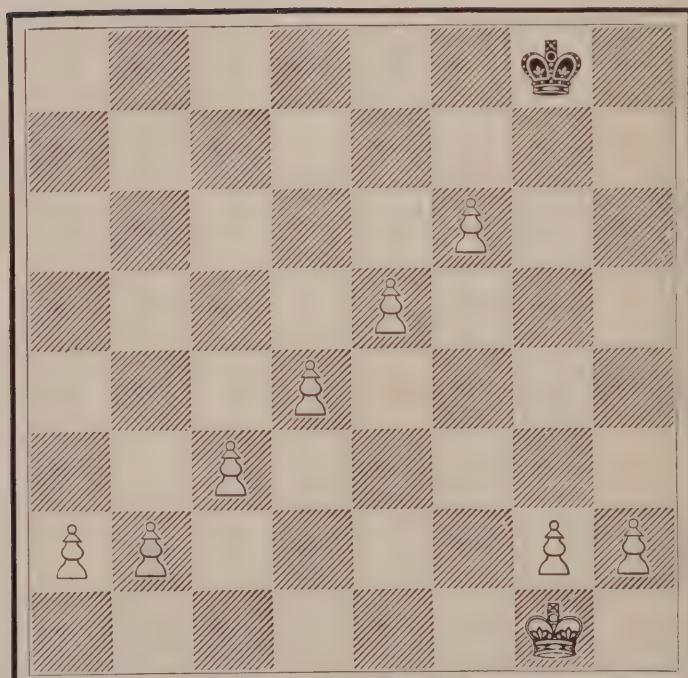
A Grand Strategic Front is formed by the extension of a salient two points along that diagonal upon which the minor strategic front already is established. It may properly be aligned and reinforced by the minor crochet, the major crochet, the crochet aligned, or supplemented by the formations echelon, enceinte, and en potence.

GRAND STRATEGIC FRONT.

(By the Right.)

FIG. 68.

(Black.)



(White.)

SUPPLEMENTARY FORMATIONS.

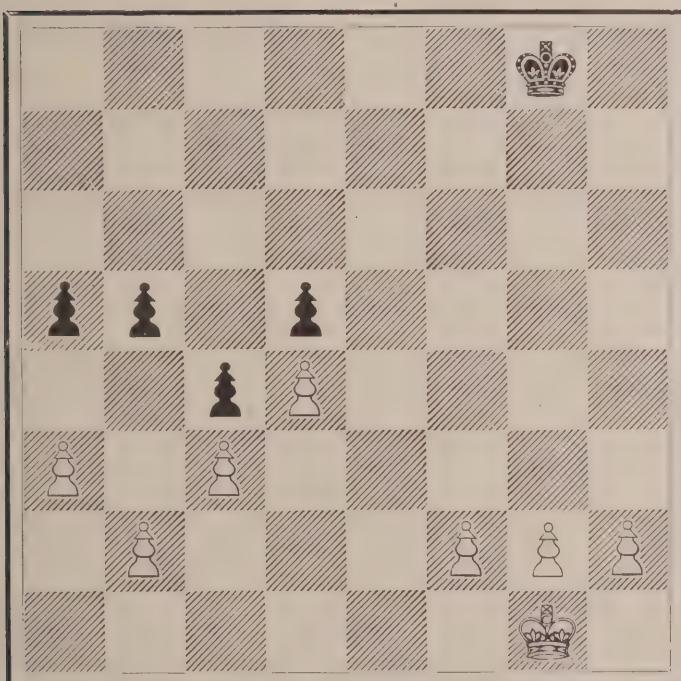
Minor Crochet.—The *Minor Crochet* is formed by deploying the K R P or the Q R P at R 3.

Its use is to sustain the strategic front against an adverse major oblique refused en echelon.

MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 69.

(*Black.*)



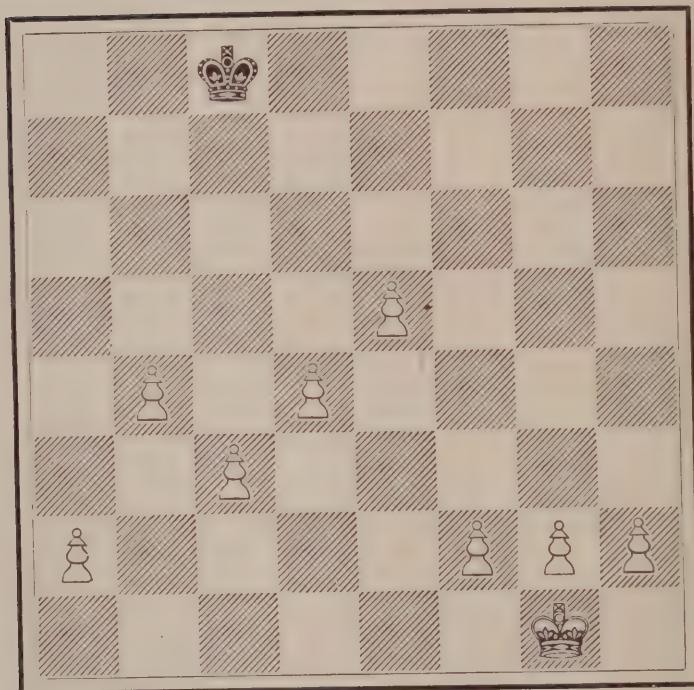
(*White.*)

Major Crochet. — The *Major Crochet* is formed by posting the K Kt P or the Q Kt P at Kt 4, to sustain the double front of operations ; or to cover a major or grand strategic front, by preventing the alignment of an adverse minor strategic front refused.

MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 70.

(Black.)



(White.)

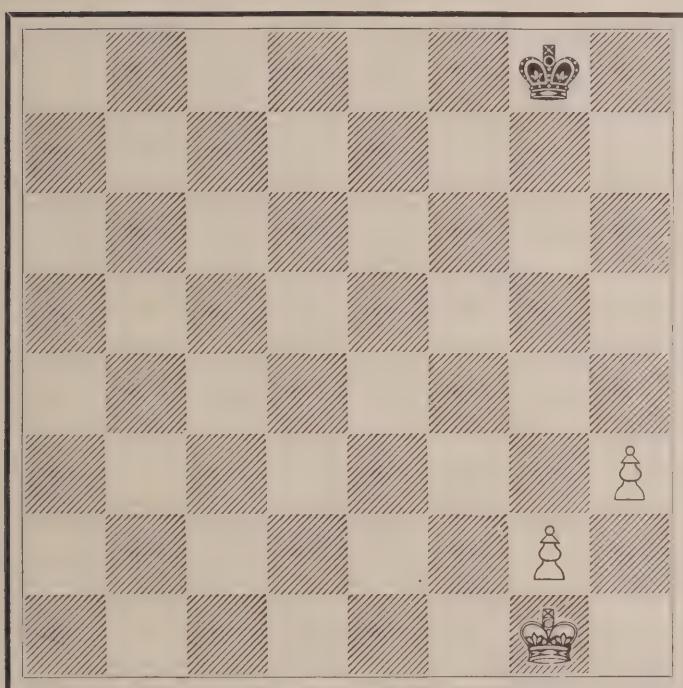
En Appui. — The *En Appui* is formed by posting at R 3 that Rook's pawn which when thus posted does not constitute the minor crochet.

The utility of this formation consists in the support it affords for establishing the echelon by P — Kt 4, and in permitting the K to occupy R 2 in the fronts directed by the right.

EN APPUI.

FIG. 71.

(Black.)



(White.)

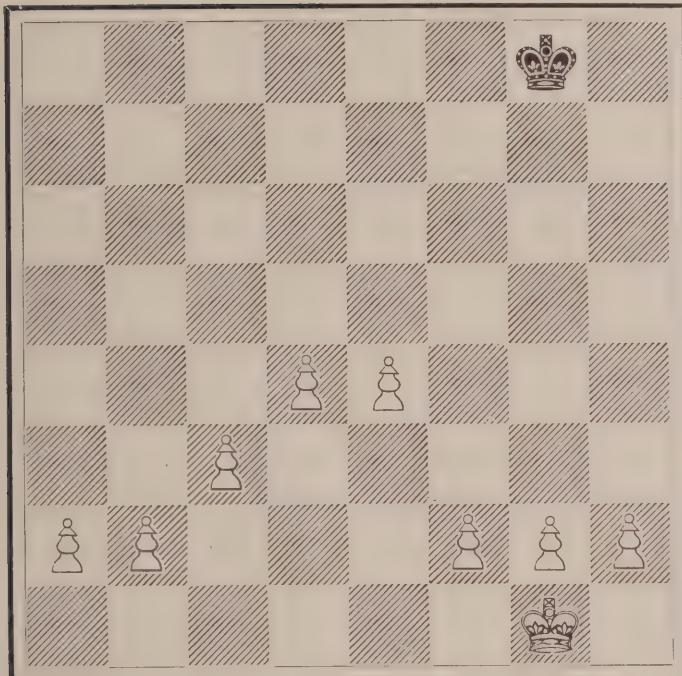
Aligned.—The *Front Aligned*, or the single Alignment, is a supplementary formation in which the K P is posted at King's fourth in the minor right oblique, and the Q P at Queen's fourth in the minor left oblique; the K B P at King's Bishop's fourth in the minor right oblique refused, and the Q B P at Queen's Bishop's fourth in the minor left oblique refused; the K B P at King's Bishop's fifth in the major right oblique, and the Q B P at Queen's Bishop's fifth in the major left oblique; the K Kt P at King's Knight's fifth in the major right oblique refused, and the Q Kt P at Queen's Knight's fifth in the major left oblique refused; the K Kt P at King's Knight's sixth in the grand right oblique, and the Q Kt P at Queen's Knight's sixth in the grand left oblique.

The utility of this formation lies in the facilities it affords for assuming the offensive either by attack or by counter-attack, and for establishing the major front.

ALIGNED.

FIG. 72.

(Black.)



(White.)

Double Alignment. — The *Front Doubly Aligned* is a supplementary formation in which the K P and K B P are posted at their fourths in the minor right oblique; the Q P and Q B P at their fourths in the minor left oblique; the K B P and K Kt P at their fourths in the minor right oblique refused, and the Q B and Q Kt P at their fourths in the minor left oblique refused; the K B P and K Kt P at their fifths in the major right

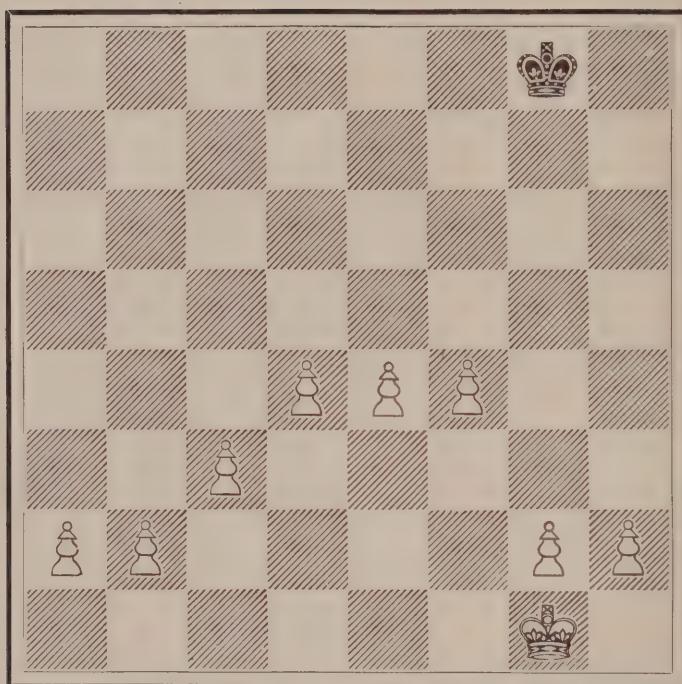
oblique, and the Q B P and K Kt P at their fifths in the major left oblique.

The utility of this formation lies in the facilities it affords for the deployment of the forces and for establishing the major front.

DOUBLY ALIGNED.

FIG. 73.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

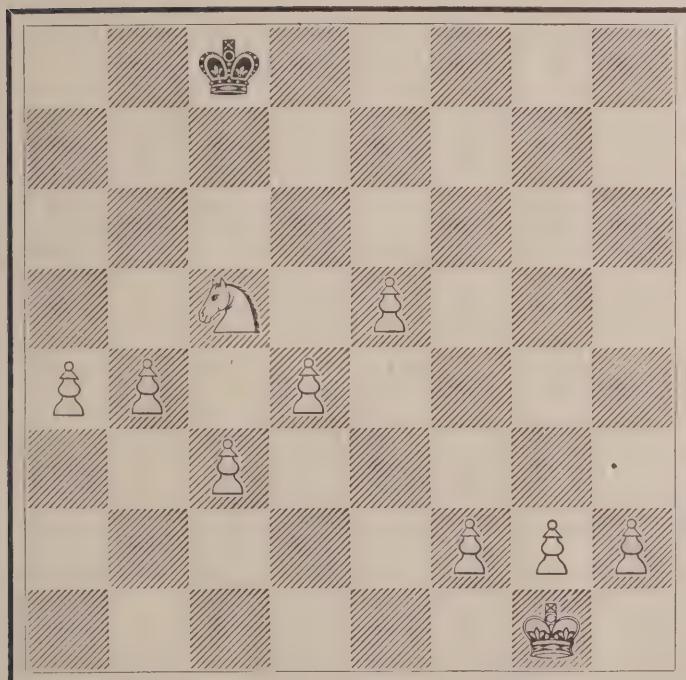
Crochet Aligned. — The *Crochet Aligned* is formed by the deployment of the K R P and the K Kt P, or of the Q R P and the Q Kt P, at their fourth squares. This formation belongs exclusively to the double fronts of operations, and is never properly combined with a single front.

Its use is to bring into action the refused wing, when a change in the direction of the strategic front is not feasible, and after the objective plane is permanently located at a point which neither is on the centre nor at the extremity of the already established strategic front.

CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 74.

(Black.)



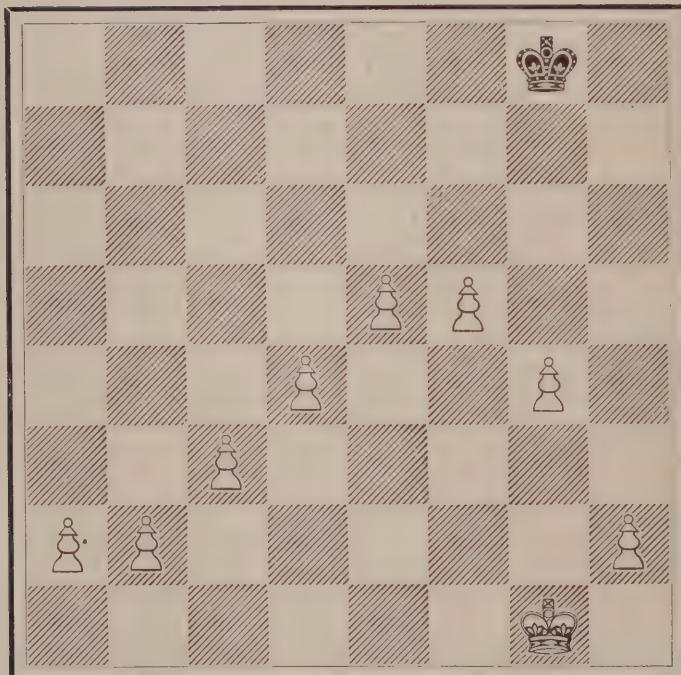
(White.)

Enceinte. — The *Enceinte* is a supplementary formation in which the K B P is posted at King's Bishop's fifth and the K Kt P at King's Knight's fourth, or the Q B P at Queen's Bishop's fifth and the Q Kt P at Queen's Knight's fourth, to sustain the major right oblique or the major left oblique, respectively; or the Q Kt P is posted at Queen's Knight's fifth and the Q R P at Queen's Rook's fourth, to sustain the major left oblique refused.

ENCEINTE.

FIG. 75.

(Black.)



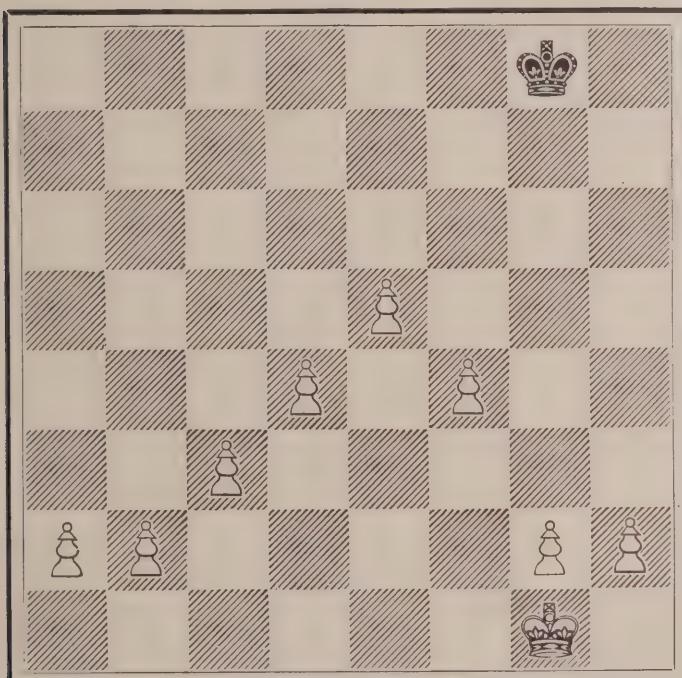
(White.)

En Potence. — The formation *En Potence* is a supplementary disposition of either the K B P or the Q B P, in which one or the other of them is posted at Bishop's fourth for the purpose of supporting the vertex point of the major right oblique or of the major left oblique, respectively; or of the K Kt P or the Q Kt P, in which case one or the other of these is posted at Knight's fifth for the purpose of supporting the vertex point of the grand right oblique or of the grand left oblique, respectively; or of the K Kt P or the Q Kt P, in which case one or the other of them is posted at Knight's fourth for the purpose of supporting the vertex point of the major right oblique refused or of the major left oblique refused, respectively.

EN POTENCE.

FIG. 76.

(Black.)



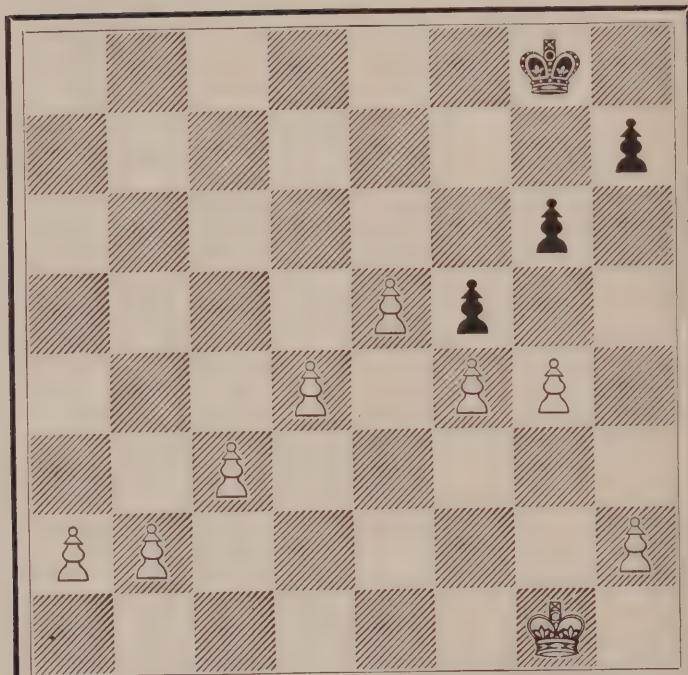
(White.)

Echelon. — The *Echelon* is a supplementary formation in which either the K B P and the K Kt P, or the Q B P and the Q Kt P, are posted at their fourth squares, for the purpose of supporting and sustaining the major right oblique or the major left oblique, respectively.

ECHELON.

FIG. 77.

(Black.)

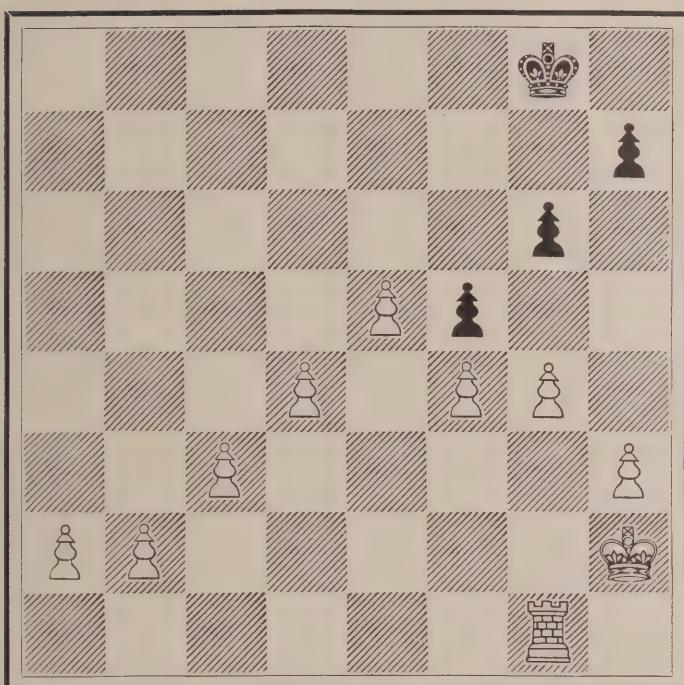


(White.)

ECHELON SUPPORTED EN APPUI.

FIG. 78.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

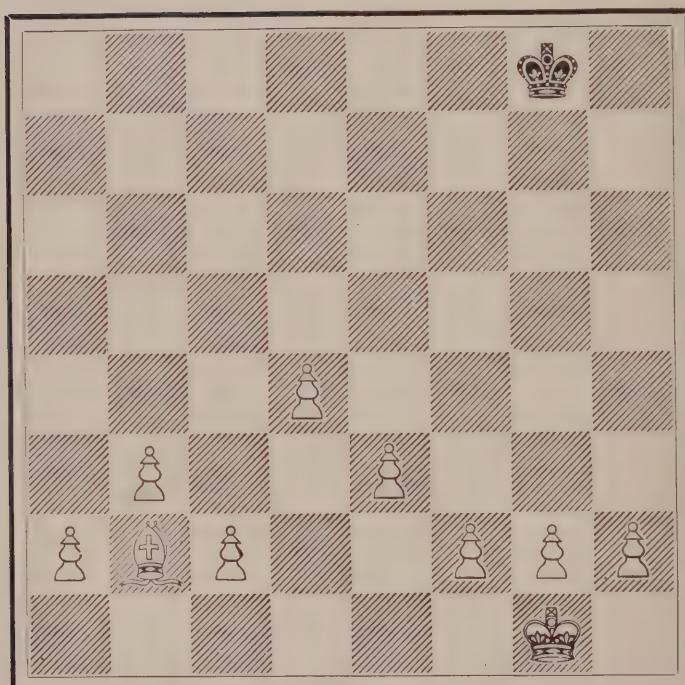
Fianchetto.—The *Fianchetto* is a supplementary formation wherein the Q Kt P is posted at its third square, to permit of the deployment of the Q B at Q Kt 2. This formation is properly established only in the left oblique refused.

THE FIANCHETTO.

White.

FIG. 79.

(Black.)



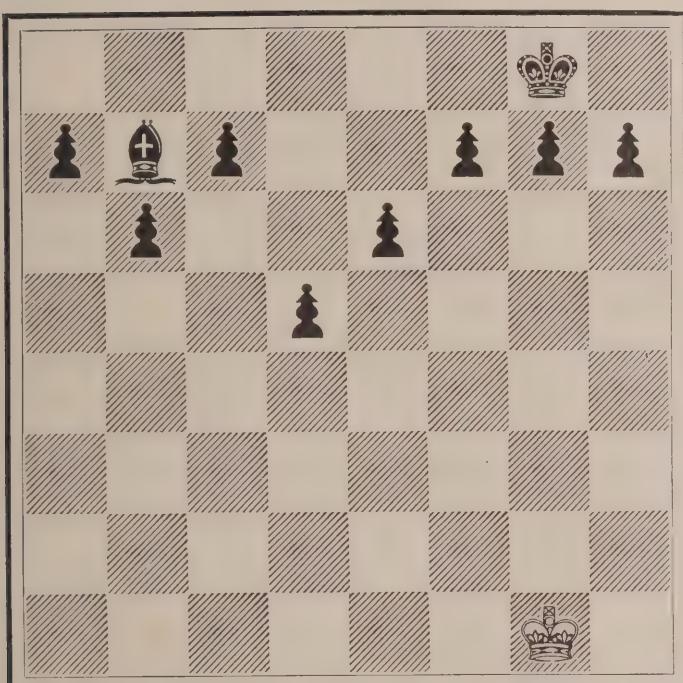
(White.)

THE FIANCHETTO.

Black.

FIG. 80.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

LINES OF MOBILIZATION.

Lines of Mobilization are divided into four classes according to their direction:—

- I. BY THE RIGHT.
- II. BY THE LEFT.
- III. BY THE RIGHT REFUSED.
- IV. BY THE LEFT REFUSED.

The object of a line of mobilization always is to establish the strategic front coincidently with the strategic centre.

PRINCIPLE.

No line of mobilization ever should be adopted until the direction of the line of development has been determined, for the line of mobilization always should take the direction of, and always be coincident with, the line of development.

A line of mobilization directed by the Right comprehends those primary bases described in “The Minor Tactics of Chess” as the—

- O P B 1 A.
- O P B 1 B.
- O P B 1 C.
- O P B 2 A.
- O P B 2 B.
- O P B 2 C.
- O P B 3.

It also opposes to the adverse force that strategic front of operations described in “Grand Tactics” as the Minor Right Oblique.

A line of mobilization directed by the Left comprehends all those primary bases reversed which are described in "Minor Tactics" as the —

O P B 1 A (Reversed).
O P B 1 B "
O P B 1 C "
O P B 2 A "
O P B 2 B "
O P B 2 C "
O P B 3 "

It also opposes to the adverse force that strategic front of operations described in "Grand Tactics" as the Minor Left Oblique.

A line of mobilization directed by the Right Refused comprehends all those primary bases which are described in "Minor Tactics" as the —

O P B 4 A.
O P B 4 B.
O P B 5 A.
O P B 5 B.

It also opposes to the adverse force that strategic front of operations described in "Grand Tactics" as the Minor Right Oblique Refused.

A line of mobilization directed by the Left Refused comprehends all those primary bases which are described in "Minor Tactics" as the —

C P B 1.
C P B 2.
C P B 3 A
C P B 3 B.

It also opposes to the adverse force that strategic front of operations described in "Grand Tactics" as the Minor Left Oblique Refused.

SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS.

- + = Plus.
 - = Minus.
 — (underscored line) = With.
 × (prefix) = Eliminate.
 × (suffix) = Being eliminated.
 ∴ = Occupy.
 < = Play as follows.
 O = Oblique.
 O R = Oblique Refused.
 R O = Right Oblique.
 L O = Left Oblique.
 C E = Centre Enceinte.
 R E = Right Enceinte.
 L E = Left Enceinte.
 A = Aligned.
 D A = Doubly Aligned.
 J = Major Crochet.
 K = Minor Crochet.
 C A = Crochet Aligned.
 F = Fianchetto.
 P = En Potence.
 H = En Echelon.
 W = En Appui.
 U = Unit.
 O P B = Open Primary Base.
 C P B = Close Primary Base.
 O P C = Objective Plane Centre.
 O P R = Objective Plane Right.
 O P L = Objective Plane Left.
 \underline{M} = Minor.
 $\underline{+ M}$ = Major.
 $\underline{\underline{G}}$ = Grand.
 $\underline{\underline{M}}$ = Mobilize.
 $\underline{\underline{V}}$ = Manœuvre.
 $\underline{\underline{D}}$ = Develop.

THE MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE.

This front properly is adopted only when the objective plane is located on the centre or on the King's wing.

Explanation.—Formula No. 1. Given the minor right oblique with the objective plane located on the centre; then play as follows: First mobilize your pieces into the primary base O P B 2 B (*vide* “Minor Tactics,” p. 148), but without the Rook Unit, and instead of the latter play K R — K 1.

Secondly, manœuvre to eliminate the black Q P at Q 3 and the black Kt at K B 3.

Thirdly, if the black P at Q 3 is eliminated, occupy K 5 with your Kt; and if the black Kt at B 3 is eliminated, occupy Q R 5 with your Queen.

FORMULA No. 1.

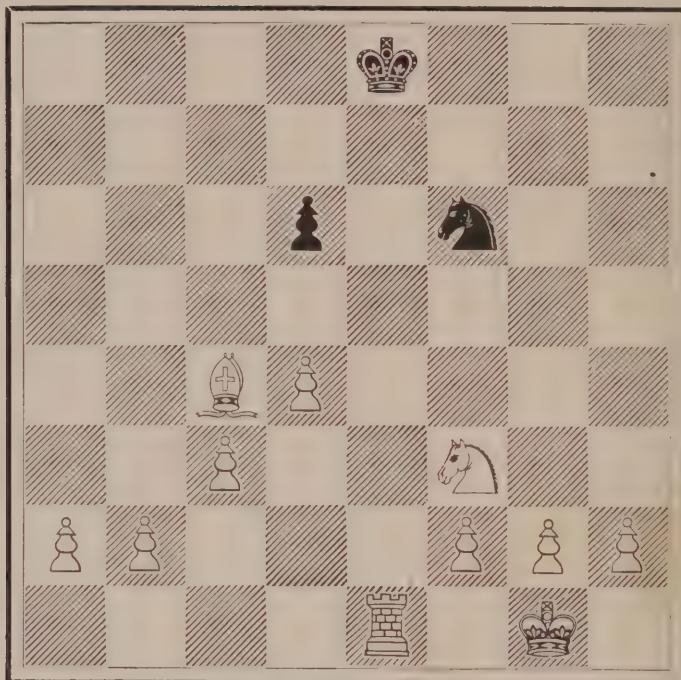
$$\begin{array}{c} \overline{\text{M R O}} \\ \text{O P C} < \\ \text{M} \\ \hline (\text{O P B } 2 \text{ B} - \text{R U}) + \text{K R K } 1. \\ \sqrt{\times \text{B. P Q } 3 + \text{B. Kt K B } 3.} \\ \text{D} \\ \hline \text{B. P Q } 3 \times \therefore \text{K } 5 \text{ Kt} \\ \text{B. Kt K B } 3 \times \therefore \underline{\text{K R } 5 \text{ Q.}} \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 81.

(Black.)

(O. P. C.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation White often can advantageously sacrifice the K B for the black K B P, checking, and thus permanently locate the objective plane on the centre. Also, the development of the white Q B at K Kt 5, followed by B — R 4 or B × Kt, is frequently valid, as likewise is Kt — K Kt 5.

In case the white K B is dislodged from the post Q B 4, it should retire to Q Kt 3, after which White should establish the major front by Kt — K 5. In all cases wherein the black Kt at K B 3 is eliminated, the white Q should develop at White's K R 5.

NOTE. — The symbol B. signifies "Black," and the symbol W. signifies "White."

FORMULA No. 2.

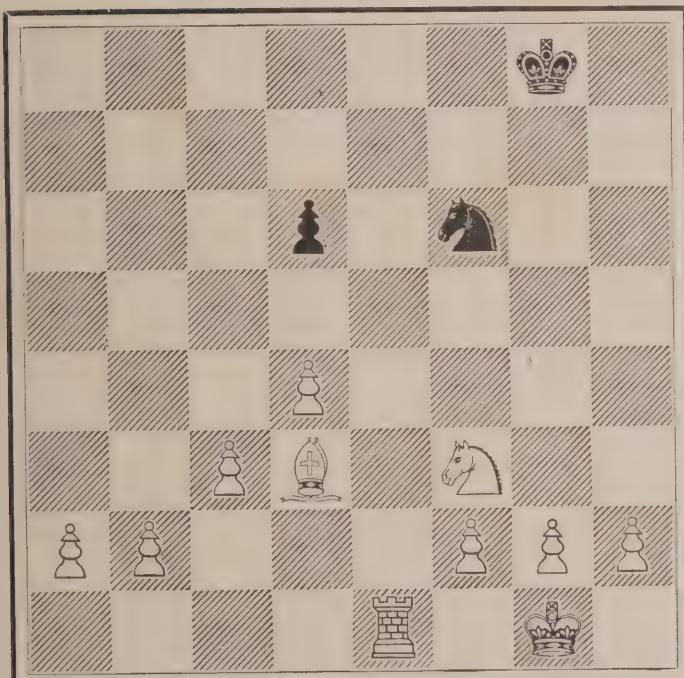
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O} \\
 \text{O P R} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A} - \text{R U}) + \text{K R K 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. P Q 3} + \text{B. Kt K B 3.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \text{B. P Q 3} \times \therefore \text{K 5 Kt} \\
 \text{B. Kt K B 3} \times \therefore \text{K R 5 Q.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 82.

(Black.)

(O. P. R.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White must not permit the black Kt to become established at Black's K 5 after the advance of the black Q P to Q 4, nor the black K R to exchange for the white K R, unless the latter can be at once replaced by the white Q R, as the control of the open K file is all important whenever this front is adopted. The white K B, dislodged from Q B 4, should retire to Q 3, and not to Kt 3.

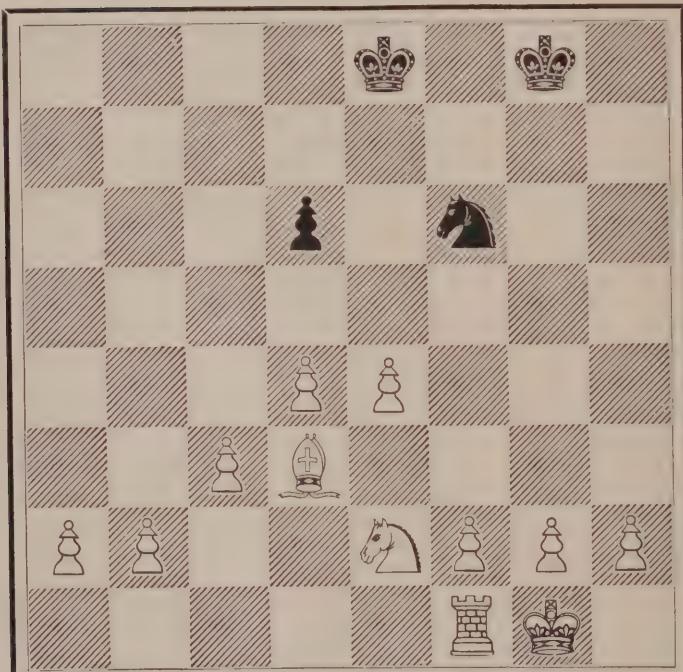
FORMULA No. 3.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\text{M R O A}} \\
 \text{O P C} + \text{O P R} < \\
 \overline{\text{M}} \\
 \text{O P B 1 A.} \\
 \sqrt{\text{D A.}} \\
 \overline{\text{D}} \\
 \therefore \text{K B 4 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED.

FIG. 83.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In this situation the only correct course is to doubly align the minor front. To establish the major front by the right would be a strategic error, as after $P - K 5$ Black plays $P \times P$, and on the white Q P retaking, an interval is created on White's centre.

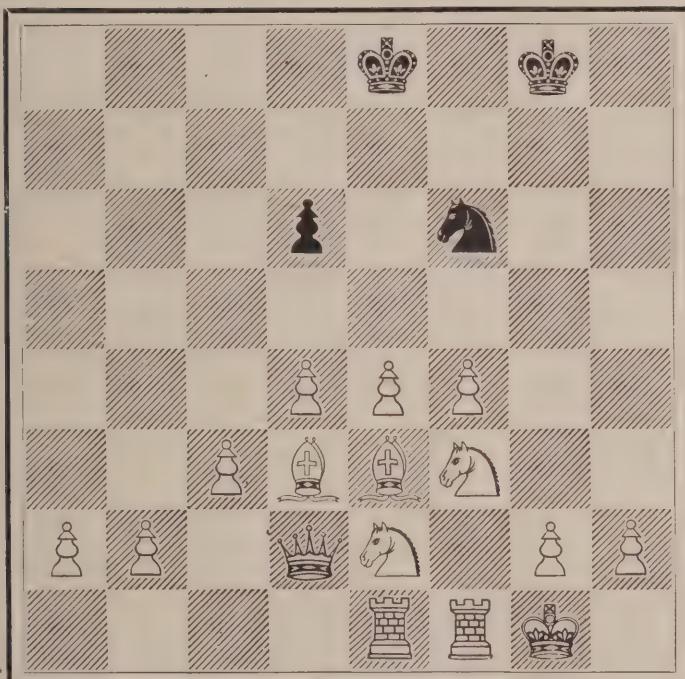
FORMULA No. 4.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O D A} \\
 \text{O P C + O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \text{O P B 1 A.} \\
 \sqrt{+ \frac{\text{M R O P}}{\text{O P R.}}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \underline{\text{K 5 P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED.

FIG. 84.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—All else being equal, this formation once established ensures such an advantage in mobility, *i. e.* it gives such facilities for developing and manœuvring, that with the best play on both sides the opponent must lose.

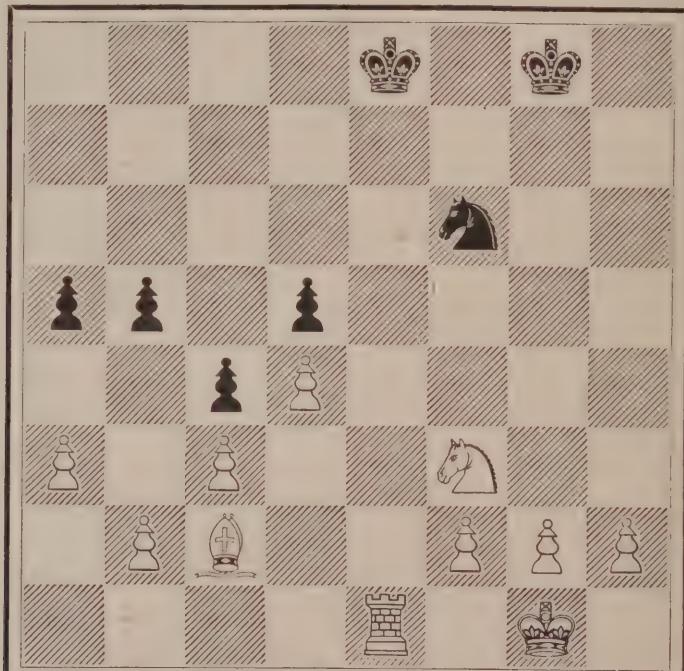
FORMULA No. 5.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M R O K}}{\text{O P C} + \text{O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 2 \text{ A} - \text{R U}) + \text{K R K } 1. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Kt K B } 3.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K } 5 \text{ Kt} + \text{K Kt } 5 \text{ B} \\
 \text{B. Kt K B } 3 \times \therefore \text{K R } 5 \text{ Q.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 85.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — All else being equal, the minor crochet will defend the refused wing against an adverse echeloned major front. The R P should always be exchanged for the adverse Q Kt P when the latter is advanced to Q Kt 5. The *motif* of the minor crochet is to destroy a portion of the adverse force which is thus advancing to the attack of the strategetic rear, with the object of occupying one or more points on its logistic horizon, and thus uniting itself with its kindred hypothetical force.

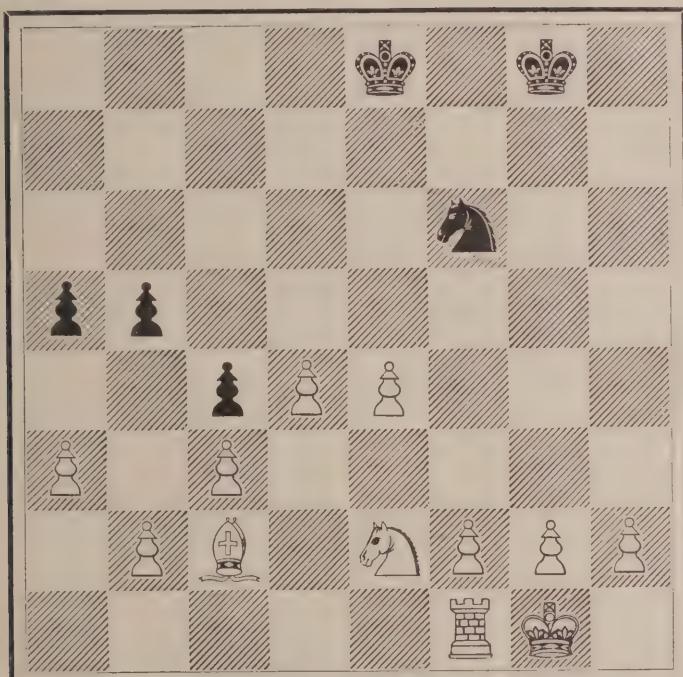
FORMULA No. 6.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O A K} \\
 \text{O P C + O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \text{O P B 2 A.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Kt K B 3.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{K Kt 5 B + K B 4 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt K B 3} \times \therefore \text{K R 5 Q.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 86.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must not permit the black Kt to establish itself at Q 4, as it would do if White now proceeded to form the major front by P — K 5.

All else being equal, the development in the text will give White the superior game.

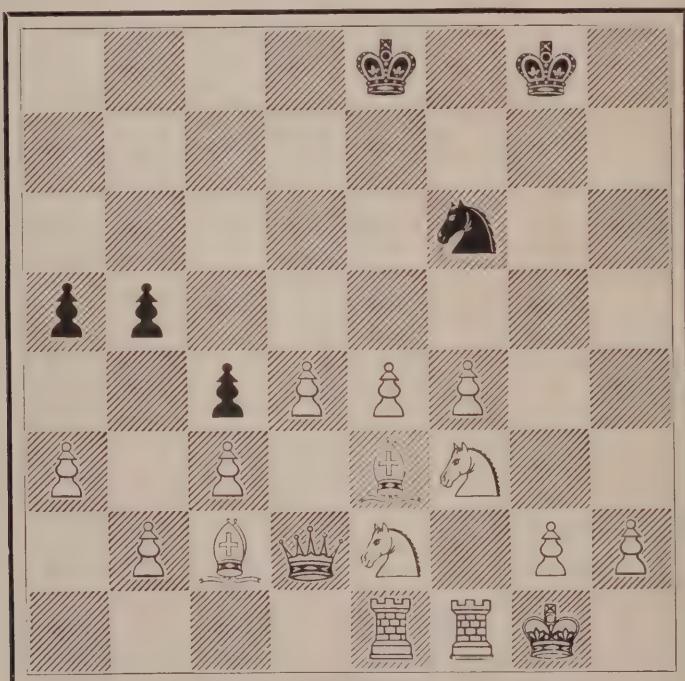
FORMULA No. 7.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O D A K} \\
 \text{O P C + O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \text{O P B 1 A.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Kt K B 3.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K 5 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt K B 3} \times \therefore \text{K B 5 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 87.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation White has nothing to fear from the posting of the black Kt at Q 4 after White's advance of P — K 5, as after the alignment of his major front by P — B 5, White threatens to occupy the strategetic objective by P — K B 6.

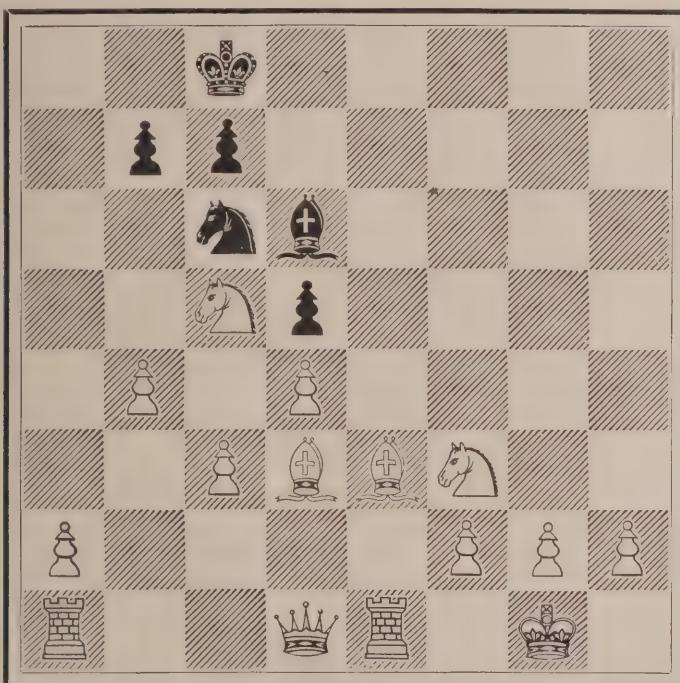
FORMULA No. 8.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O J} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 2 \text{ A} - \text{R}, \text{Q}, \text{Kt U}) + \text{K R K } 1 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R } 6 \text{ R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 88.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This double front of operations having been established, the only resource left to the opponent is to throw his whole force by the right against the white K.

For this reason, White must never invalidate his formation by the right, as he must rely on it for the integrity of his prime strategetic point. The advantage in mobility that Black already possesses on the right, will be much intensified should White, by changing his front to the left oblique, thus locate his king on his refused wing.

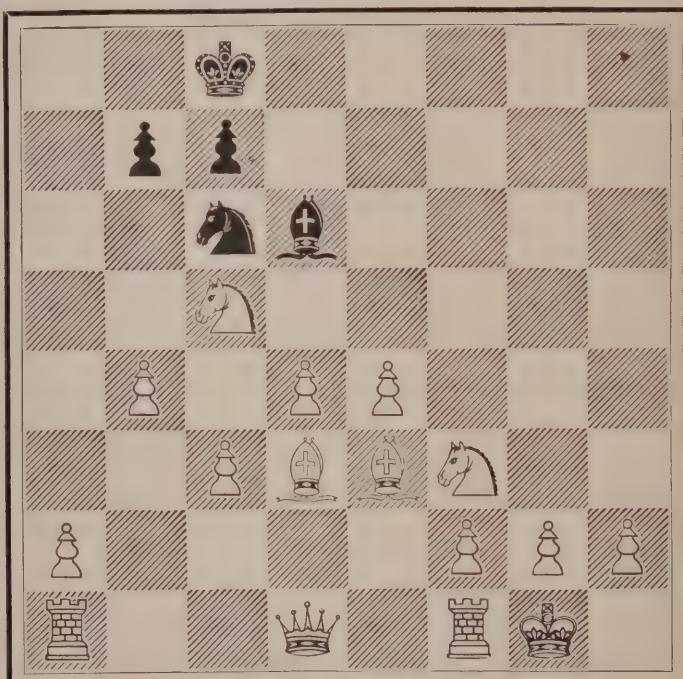
FORMULA No. 9.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O A J} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A} - \text{R, Q, Kt, U}) + \text{Q Kt Q B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 89.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must never advance the Q Kt P to Q Kt 5, attacking the black Q Kt in this double front. Black would retire Kt — Kt 1, and either exchange or compel the retreat of the white Kt at Q B 5, whereupon the strategic value of White's position is greatly depreciated.

White would commit a strategic error if, in this situation, he were to establish the major left oblique by P — Q 5, as his prime strategic point would then become posted on the refused wing.

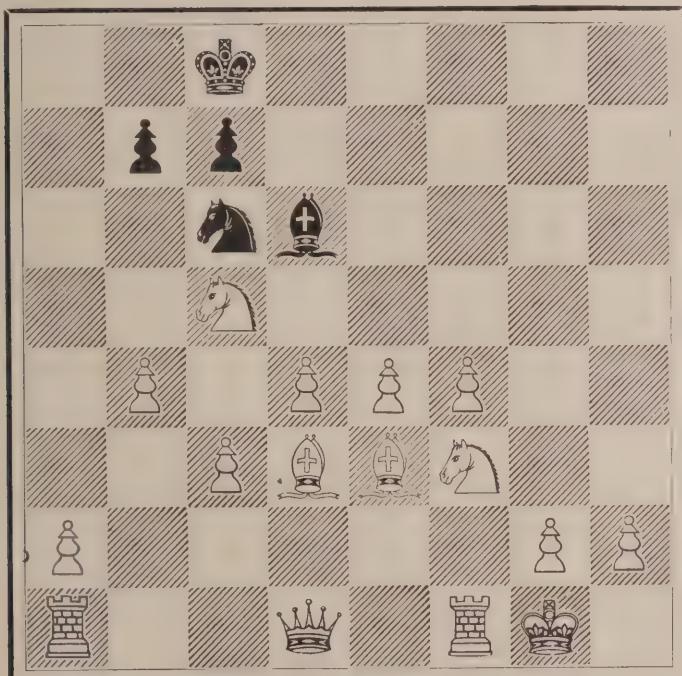
FORMULA No. 10.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\text{M R O D A J}} \\
 \overline{\text{O P L}} \leftarrow \\
 \text{M} \\
 \overline{(\text{O P B 1 A} - \text{R, Q, Kt, U}) + \text{Q Kt Q B 5.}} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R 6 R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 90.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — It would be a strategic error for White to establish the major right oblique by P — K 5, as he would be extending his strategic front not in the direction of the objective plane.

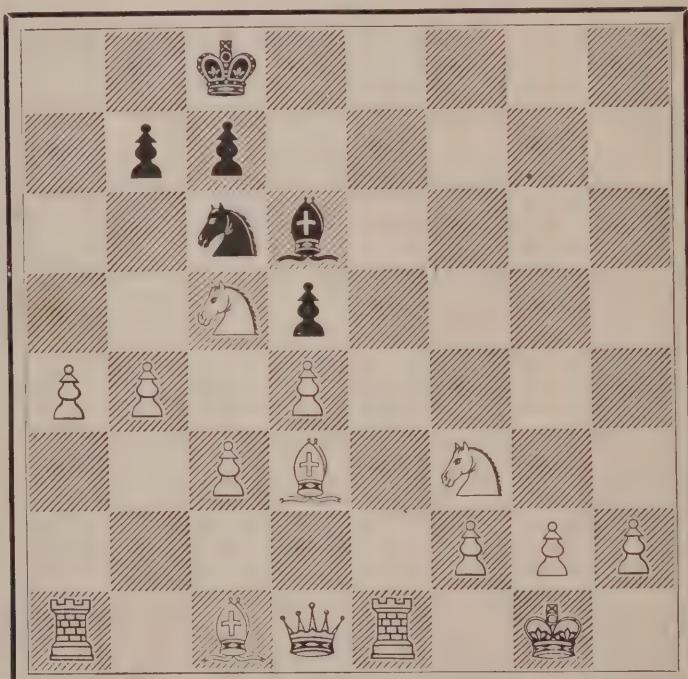
FORMULA No. 11.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O C A} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 2 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, Q, U}) + \text{K R K } 1 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \text{ R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 91.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White has also a secondary line of attack, resulting from the occupying of K 5 with the Kt, or of K 6, K 7, or K 8 by the K R, at the proper time, which always can be accurately calculated, as all of these moves, when valid, will be part of a line of operations.

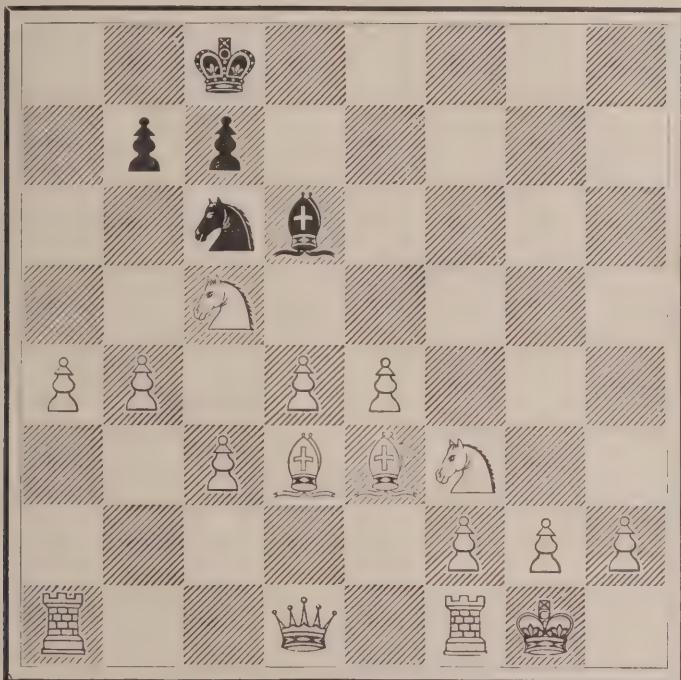
FORMULA No. 12.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O A C A} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A} - \text{Kt, R, Q, U}) + \text{Q Kt Q B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINIOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 92.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Should Black capture the white Kt at Q B 5, the capturing piece must, of course, be taken with the white Q Kt P.

But afterwards White should not by P — Q 5 change his front by the right, to the major left oblique aligned, as that would be a strategic error, whereby his king would become improperly posted on the refused wing.

White's correct course is to take possession of the open file thus created, and mass against the objective plane by Q — Q Kt 3 followed by K R — Q Kt 1.

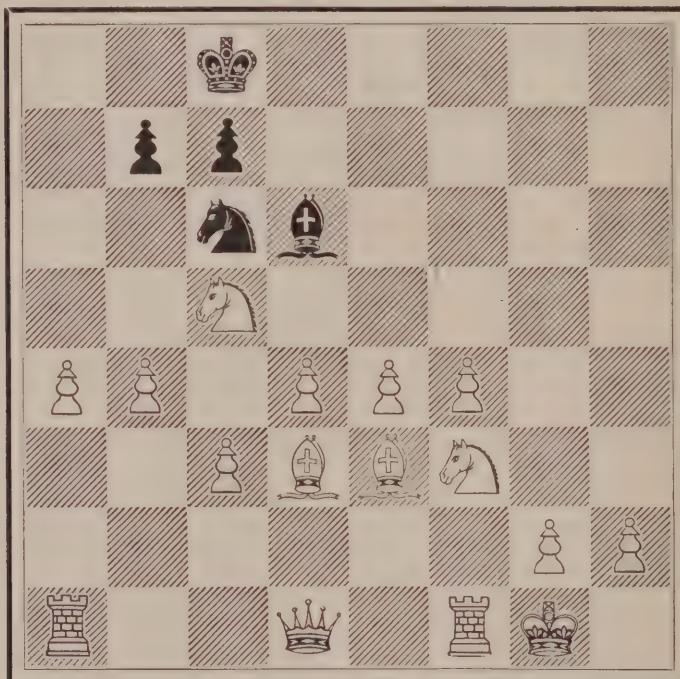
FORMULA No. 13.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O D A C A} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 (\text{O P B I A} - \text{Kt, R, Q, U}) + \text{Q Kt Q B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 93.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Black's game is hopeless. White has the advantage in position on both wings, which latter are connected by an impregnable centre.

With this formation White never should develop either by the right or by the left, but should win by means of his supplementary formation the crochet aligned, in co-operation with his reserve pieces.

MINOR CENTRE ENCEINTE.

This front properly is adopted whatever the location of the objective plane.

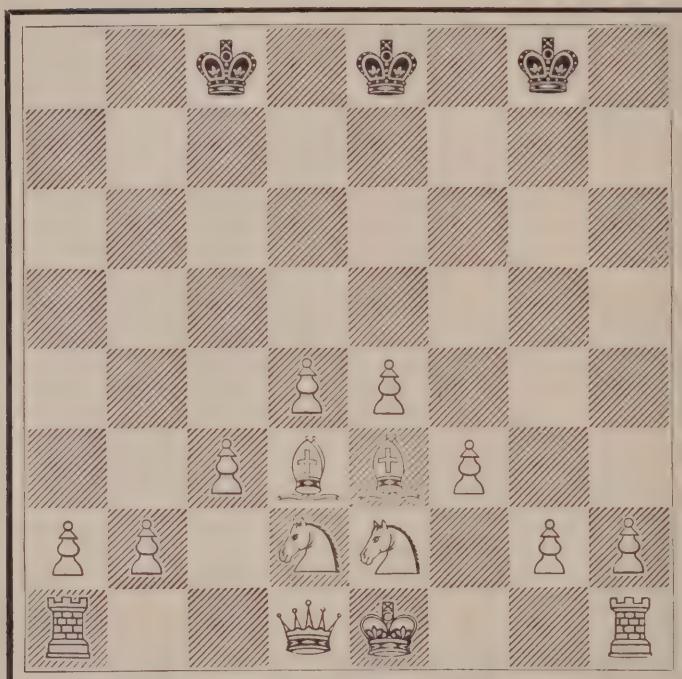
FORMULA No. 14.

$$\frac{\text{M C E}}{\text{O P C}} < \frac{\text{M}}{(\text{O P B } 3 - \text{R, Q, U})}.$$

MINOR CENTRE ENCEINTE.

FIG. 94.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This is the position of grand tenace at chess. From it the permanent location of the objective plane should be calculated, and the proper major front projected.

In all cases wherein the permanent location of the objective plane cannot be calculated, that line of development should be selected which at the given time seems most in accord with strategic principle, with the resource constantly kept in hand of adopting a double line of operations and establishing the crochet aligned.

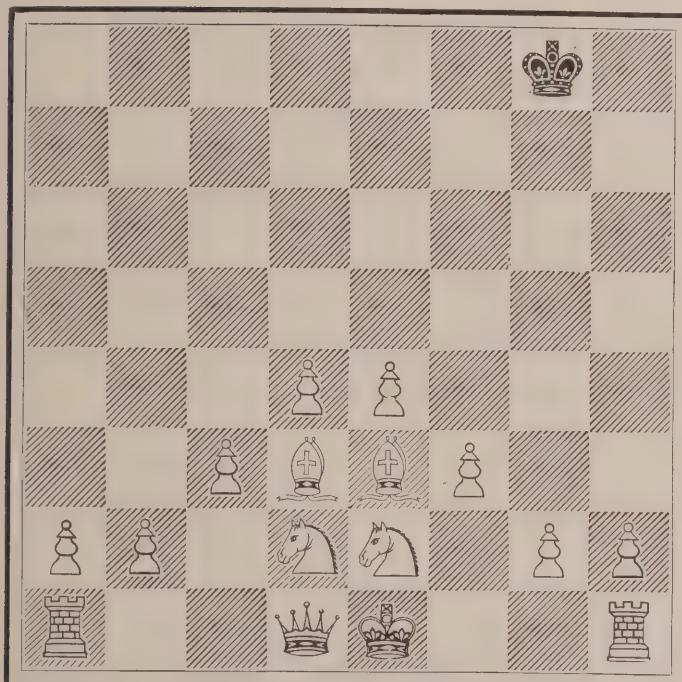
FORMULA No. 15.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{\text{M C E}}{\text{O P R}} < \\
 & \frac{\text{M}}{(\text{O P B } 3 - \text{R, Q, U})} \\
 & \sqrt{\therefore \text{M R O.}} \\
 & \frac{\text{D}}{\therefore \text{K Kt } 1 \underline{\text{K}} + \text{K B } 1 \underline{\text{R}} + \text{K B } 4 \underline{\text{P}} + \text{K } 5 \underline{\text{P}}.}
 \end{aligned}$$

MINOR CENTRE ENCEINTE.

FIG. 95.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White would commit a strategic error in attempting to establish the major front by the right previous to castling K R, on account of white's K R 4 being open to occupation by the black Q.

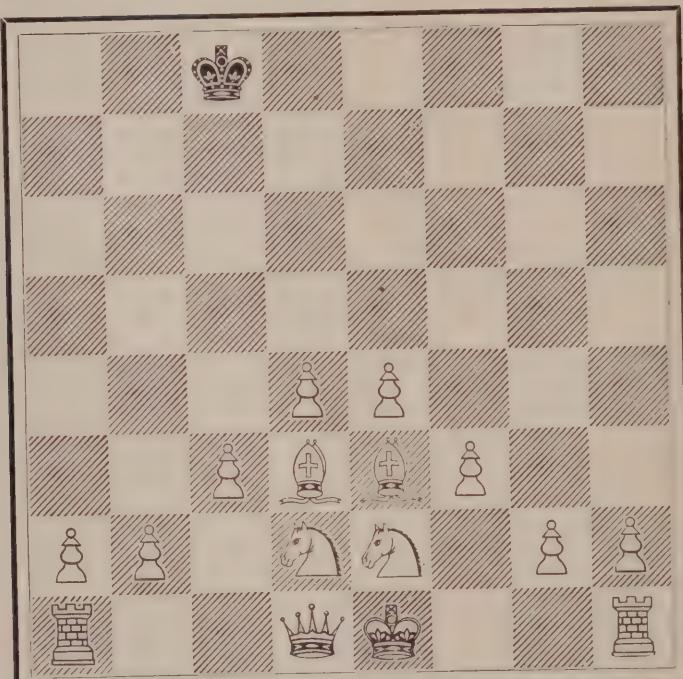
FORMULA No. 16.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M C E}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed, } -\text{R, Q, U}). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{M L O.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B 4 P, Q B 3 Kt, K 2 Q Q Kt 1 K Q B 1 R.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR CENTRE ENCEINTE.

FIG. 96.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White could also castle K R and establish the M R O D A J in this situation. But this would be inferior, as the prime strategical front is more exposed, and defended with greater difficulty, in a double front of operations than in a single front.

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE.

This front properly is adopted only when the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing.

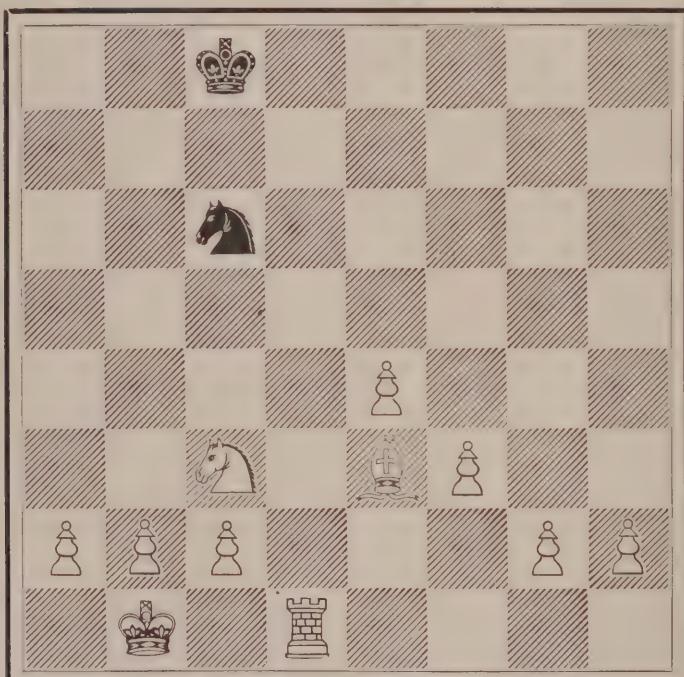
FORMULA No. 17.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M L O}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed, } -\text{R, Q, U}) + \text{Q R Q 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\frac{\text{M L O}}{\text{O P L}}} \\
 \times \text{B. Kt Q B 3.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 Kt, Q Kt 5 B, Q 3 Q R, Q 1 K R, K 2 Q.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 97.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This situation is decidedly more to White's advantage than when the objective plane is located on the right. It requires more time for Black to perfect his line of defence, owing to the fact that his Q is exposed to the attack of the white Q R, and does not naturally defend the black Kt at Q B 3. The point Q 5 is usually open to immediate occupation by the white Q Kt, and the black Q R P is undefended.

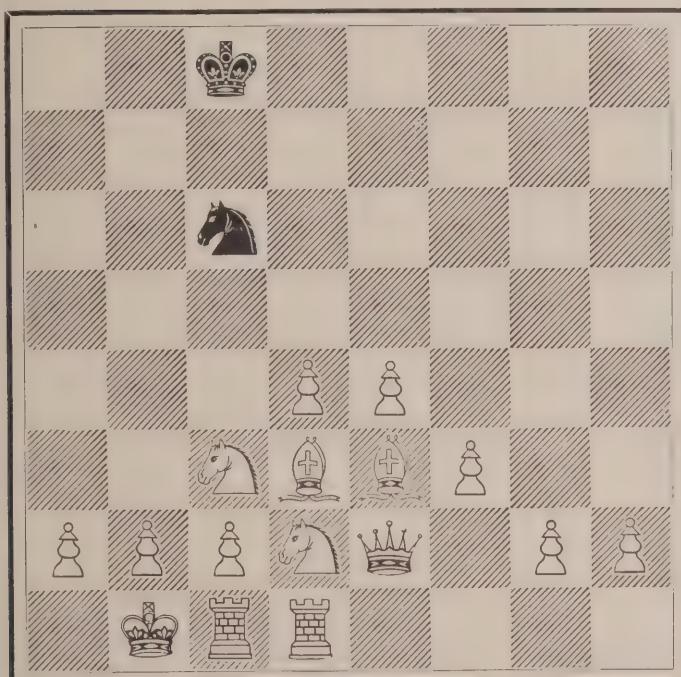
FORMULA No. 18.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M L O A}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P B 2 A, reversed.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Kt Q B 3.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt} \times \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 Kt.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED.

FIG. 98.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Black is lost. In most cases it will be found that White can properly sacrifice a piece in order to so expose the objective plane that it may be readily and decisively attacked.

It will be observed that Black has no offensive resources, as the entire White force interposes between him and its prime strategetic point.

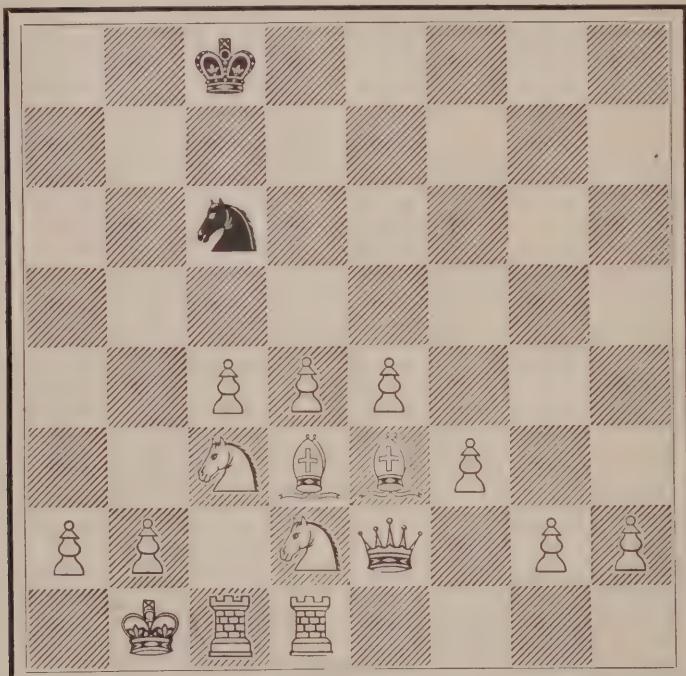
FORMULA No. 19.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\text{M L O D A}} < \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P B 1 A, reversed.} \\
 \sqrt{\overline{\cdots \text{M L O}}} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \times \text{B. Kt Q B 3.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt} \times \therefore \text{Q B 5 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED.

FIG. 99.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White wins easily in this situation. It is of no consequence that the black Kt may occupy Q 4, and from thence exchange for the white K B, for White's superiority in force and position is so sufficient that nothing can prevent his ultimate command of the objective plane.

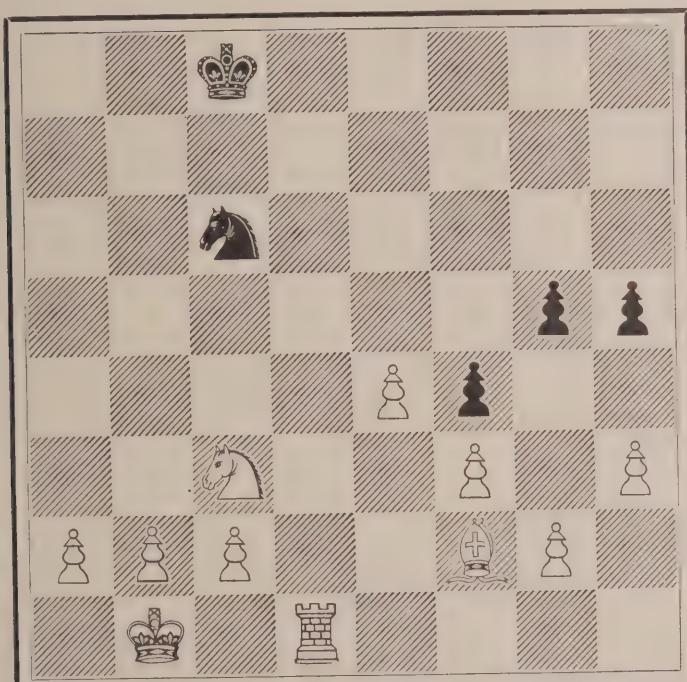
FORMULA No. 20.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\text{M L O K}} \\
 \text{O P L} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed, } -\text{R, Q, U}) + \text{Q R Q 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \overline{\frac{\text{M L O}}{\text{O P L.}}}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 Kt, Q Kt 5 B, Q 3 R, Q 1 Q R.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 100.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In the formations which include the minor crochet, it will be observed that the B is invariably retired to B 2. It must never be posted at Kt 1, even though the R's are deployed, as it is essential to the safety of the refused wing that no adverse piece, especially if the latter is a Kt, be permitted to occupy the point R 5.

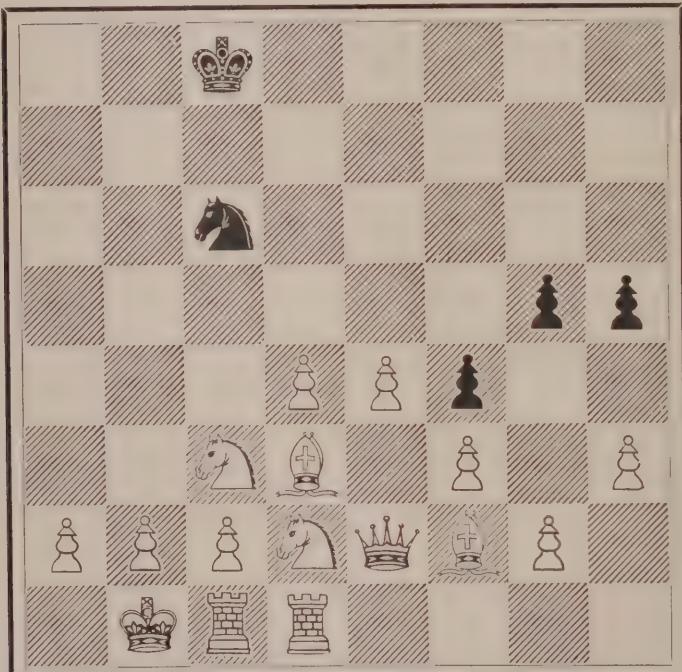
FORMULA No. 21.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M L O A K}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \overline{\text{O P B 2 A, reversed.}} \\
 \sqrt{\frac{\text{M L O}}{\text{O P L}}} \\
 \times \text{B. Kt Q B 3.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt } \bar{\text{Q}} \text{ B 3 } \times \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 Kt.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 101.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In all fronts directed by the left, and wherein the objective plane is the result of Black's castling Q R, if the latter attempts to support the black Kt at Q B 3 with the Q, the white K B can usually be developed at Q Kt 5 with advantage, especially after the white Q Kt has occupied the point white Q 5, for then the latter piece in many cases may be posted at Q Kt 4, and the disintegration of the pawns on Black's Queen's side ensured.

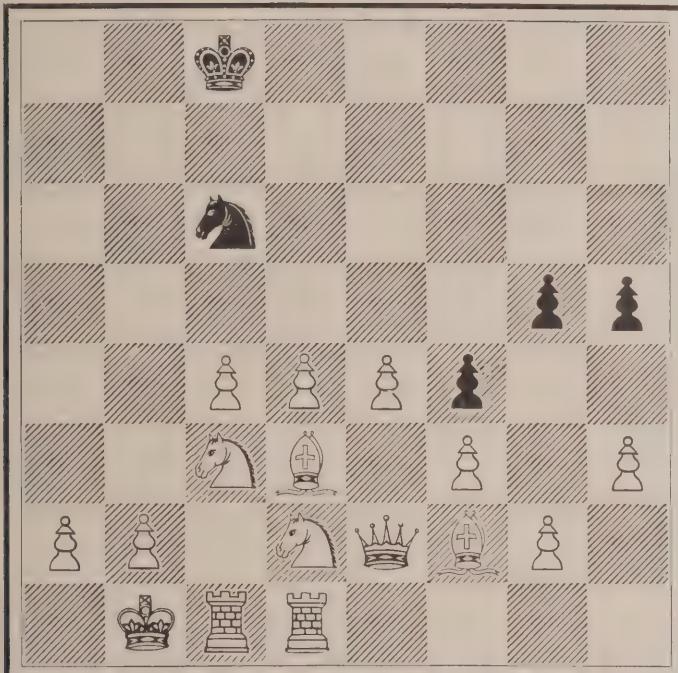
FORMULA No. 22.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O D A K} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P B 1 A, reversed.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \frac{\text{M L O}}{\text{O P L}}} \\
 \times \text{B. Kt Q B 3.} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q 5 P} \\
 \text{B. Kt Q B 3} \times \therefore \text{Q B 5 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 102.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—It seems worthy of remark in regard to this position, that under the most favorable circumstances, and even should Black break through the white minor crochet, still Black's game is hopeless, for the white R's are not required in the attack of the objective plane, and may both be sacrificed to prevent the queening of one or more black pawns, the white force in the interim having acquired a decisive advantage over the adverse king.

FORMULA No. 23.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M L O J} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(O P B 2 A, reversed, — Kt, R, U) + Q R Q 1 + K Kt K B 5.

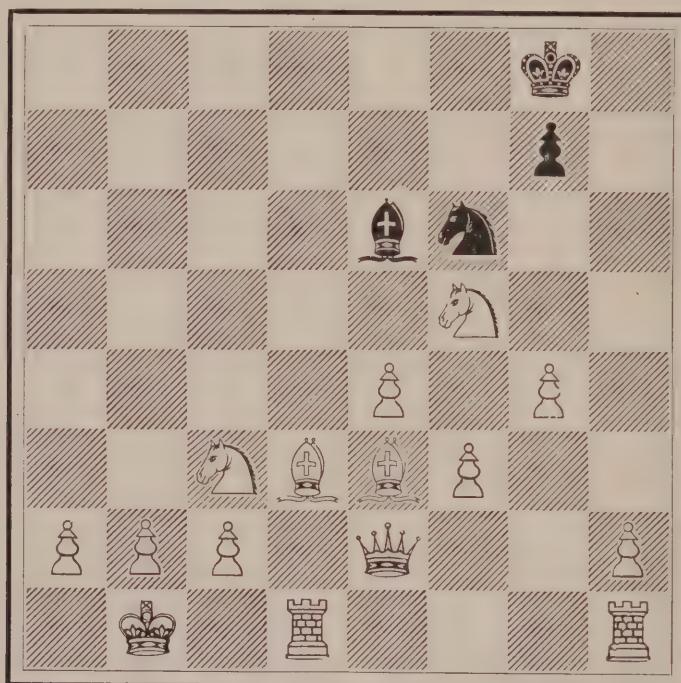
$$\sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \hline \text{Q R 6 P.} \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 103.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In all double fronts the presence of the white R P at R 5 is a serious matter to Black. Whether the pawn proceeds at once to R 6 and forces the black Kt P to Kt 3, or whether this is delayed and subordinated to the action of the other white pieces, is immaterial, and is always determined by the conditions which actually exist.

FORMULA No. 24.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M L O A J} \\ \hline \text{O P R} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

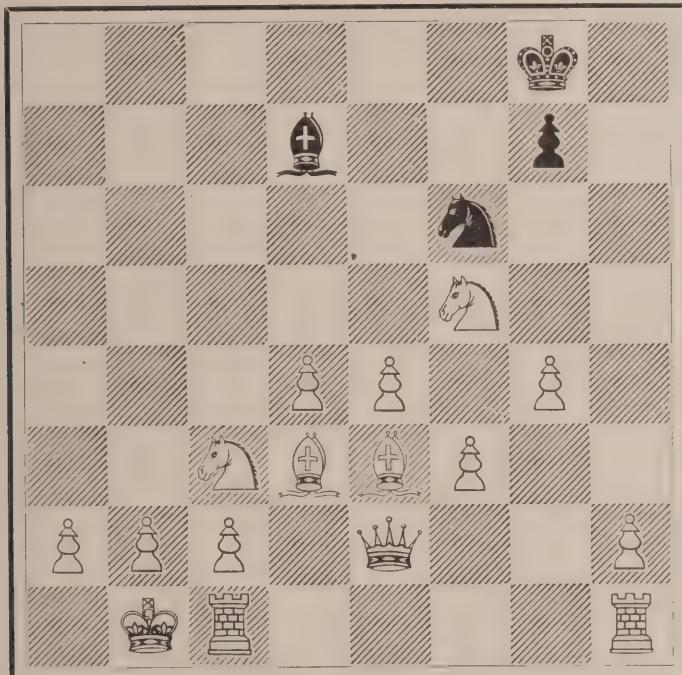
(O P B 2 A, reversed, — R U) + K Kt K B 5.

$$\begin{array}{c} \checkmark \times \text{B. K Kt P.} \\ \text{D} \\ \hline \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.} \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 104.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Whenever, in the double front, Black's attack against the white K becomes too powerful for the force defending, the white Q R must be played to Kt 1, and the K Kt retired to Q 1; while the white K, if necessary, may retreat *via* B 1 and Q 2. But this manœuvre is seldom advisable, except when the checkmate of the black king can be forecasted, as it is only a temporary expedient. If the command of the objective plane cannot be calculated, and Black's attack is more immediate, it is best to rest on the crochet aligned and counter attack on the other side of the board, and in defence of the white K.

Black will not be able to develop offensive measures of such strength except through errors on the part of White.

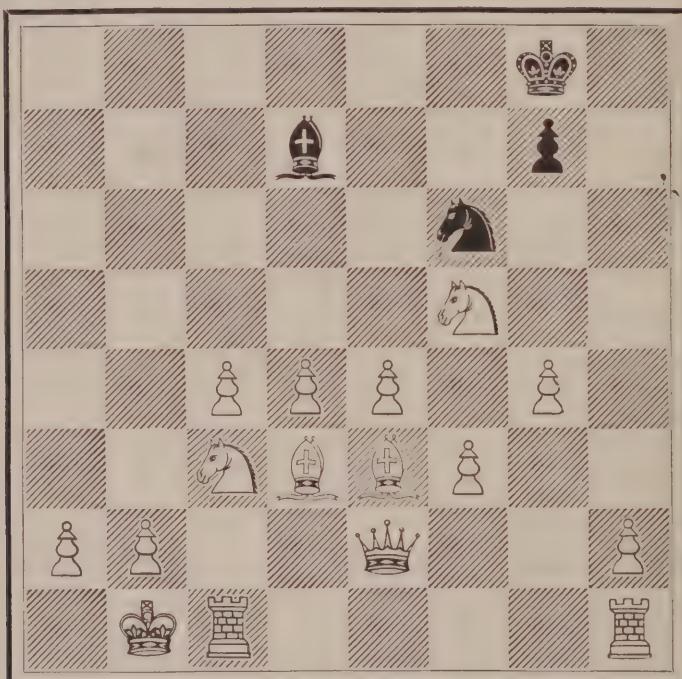
FORMULA No. 25.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O D A J} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed, } -\text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 105.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In the double front doubly aligned White is practically impervious to attack, and may proceed against the objective plane with entire security.

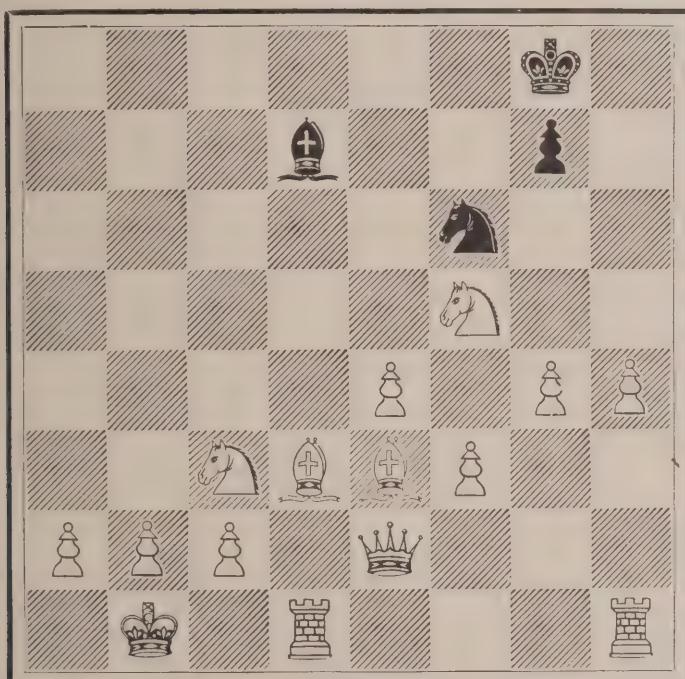
FORMULA No. 26.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O C A} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed, } -\text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{Q R Q 1} + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 106.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAMIM. — In all double fronts, wherein Black plays $\text{Kt P} - \text{Kt 3}$, and attacks the Kt at the angle of the salient and the major crochet, it depends upon the situation entirely as to whether the Kt be sacrificed or not. As a rule, this manœuvre will be fatal to Black.

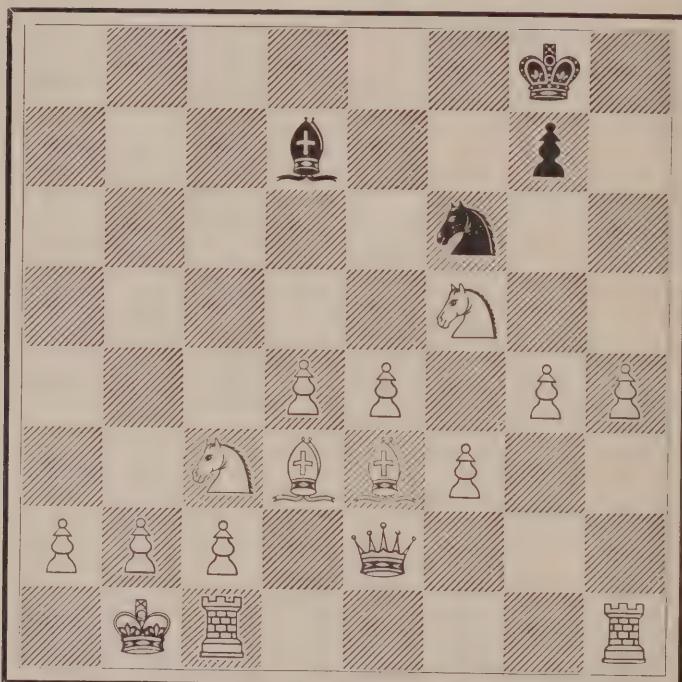
FORMULA No. 27.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overbrace{\text{M L O A C A}} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A}, \text{reversed}, -\text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R 6 R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 107.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—It must never be lost sight of that in the double front a prime object is to create an open file, either the Kt's or the R's, whereby the white Q and white R's may be brought into action against the objective plane.

After the R P has reached R 5 it will be found impossible for Black to prevent the creation of this open file.

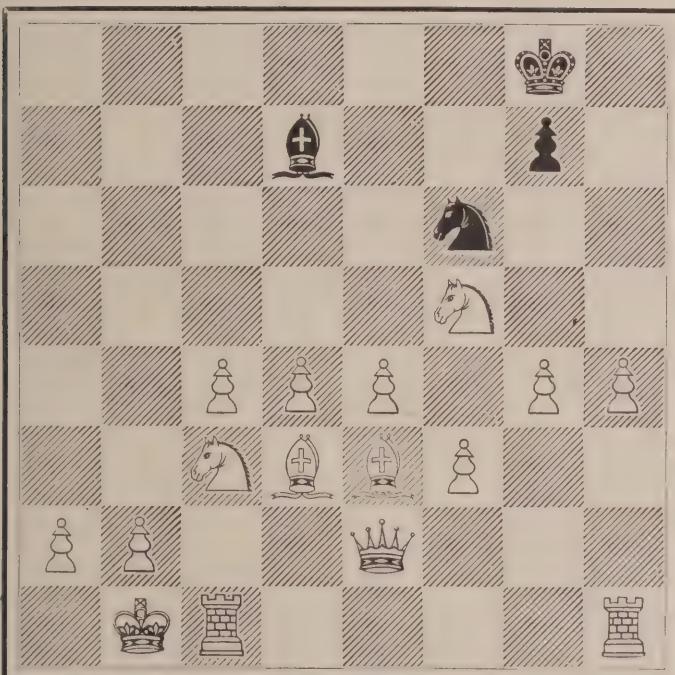
FORMULA No. 28.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O D A C A} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed, } -\text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 108.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The defensive resources of this position are surprising. White has not a piece nor a pawn which is not supported; but one point on White's side (Q Kt 4) can be occupied by an adverse piece, and the white pieces command 42 out of the total 64 squares of the chess-board.

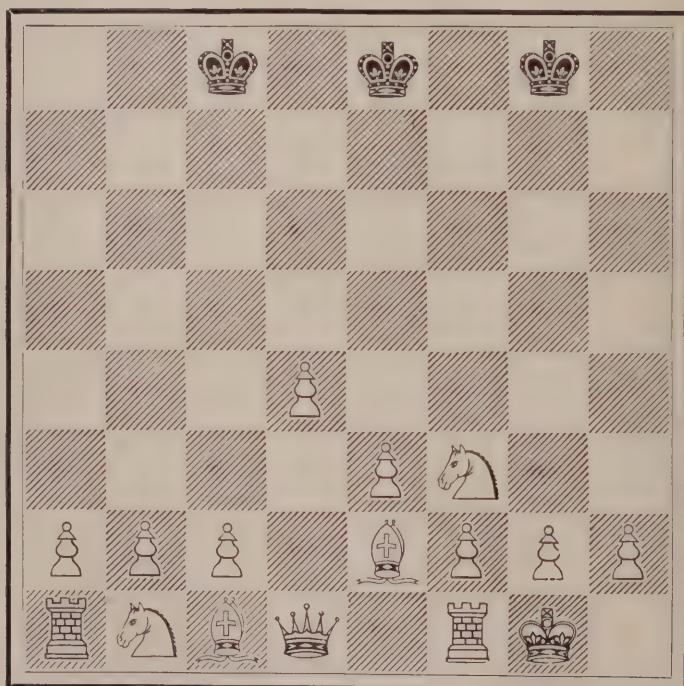
MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This front may be adopted either by White or by Black, or by both.

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

FIG. 109.

(*Black.*)

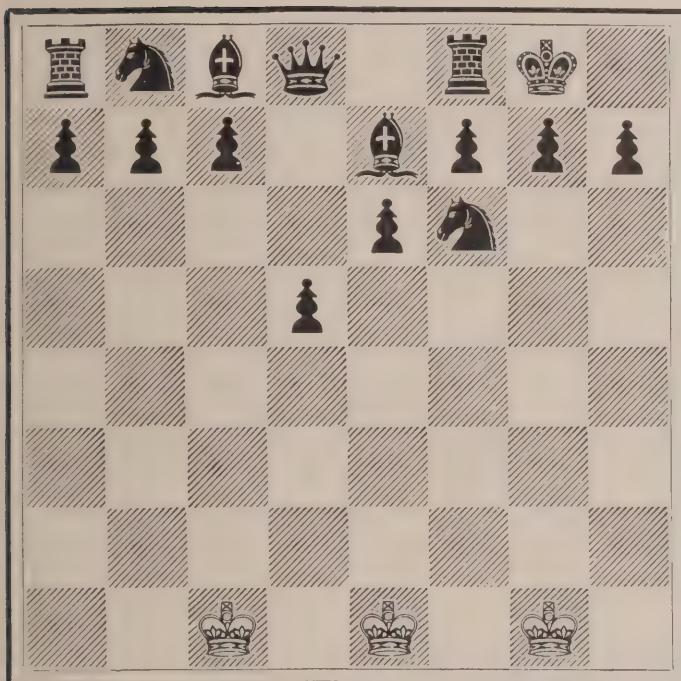


(*White.*)

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

FIG. 110.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front is far inferior to either the right oblique or the left oblique. It does not take the direction of the objective plane, it is not established on the strategetic centre, and it compels the prime strategetic point to become permanently located on the refused wing.

FORMULA No. 29.

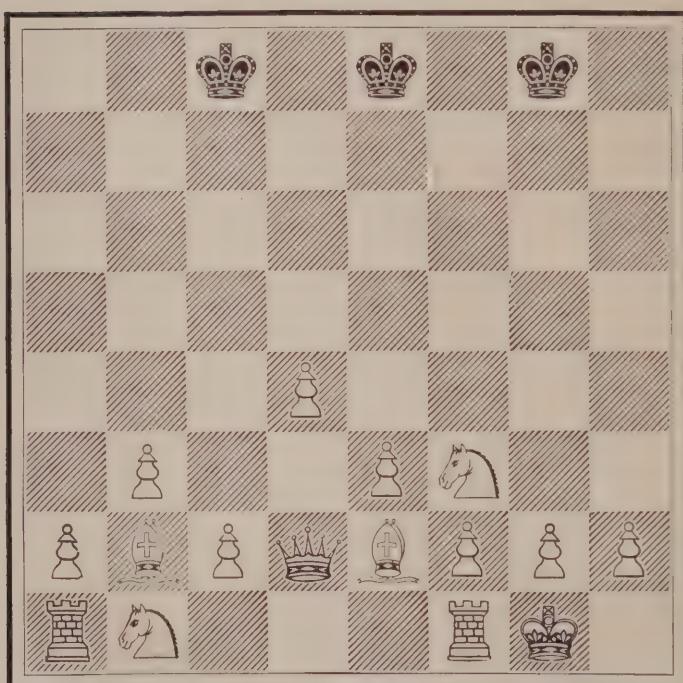
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\text{M L O R F}} \\
 \overline{\text{O P C, O P L, O P R}} < \\
 \overline{\text{M}} \\
 \overline{(\text{C P B } 1 - \text{Kt, R, U})} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \overline{\text{M L O R}}} \\
 \overline{\text{D}} \\
 \therefore \text{Q } 1 \underline{\text{K R}}, \text{ Q B } 4 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{ Q B } 3 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{ Q B } 1 \underline{\text{Q R}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN FIANCHETTO.

FIG. 111.

White.

(Black.)



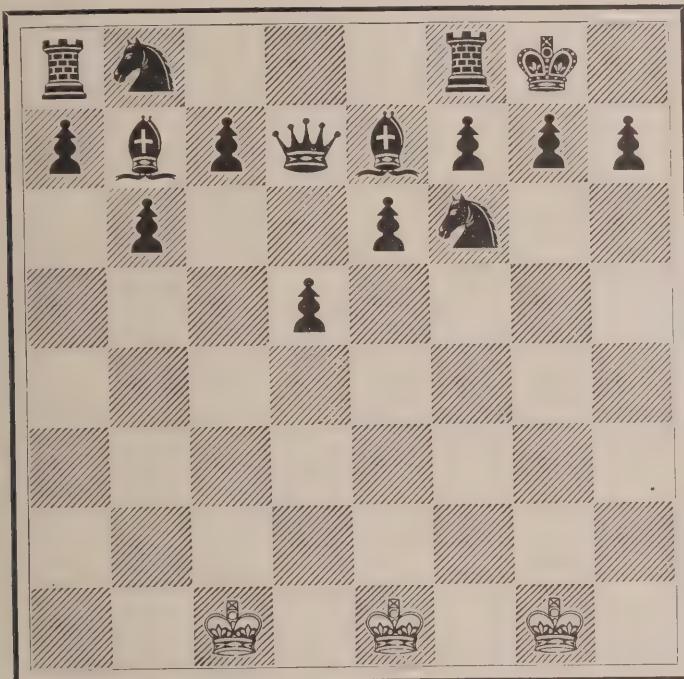
(White.)

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN FIANCHETTO.

Black.

FIG. 112.

(Black.)



(White.)

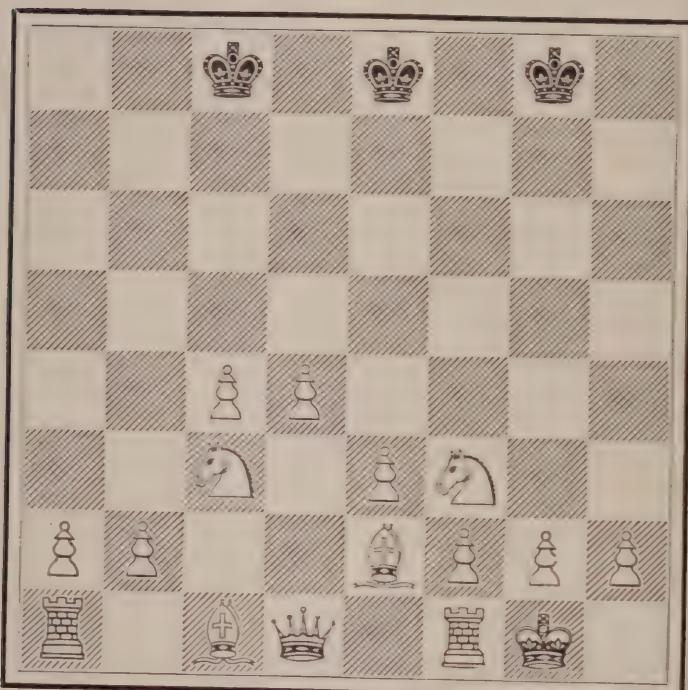
MAXIM.—This formation frequently is much preferable to aligning the front, on account of its preventing Black from exchanging the Q P and Q B P until such time as White may profit by such manœuvre. The fianchetto should be adopted only when the range of the B takes the direction of the objective plane.

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

FIG. 113.

White.

(Black.)



(White.)

FORMULA No. 30.

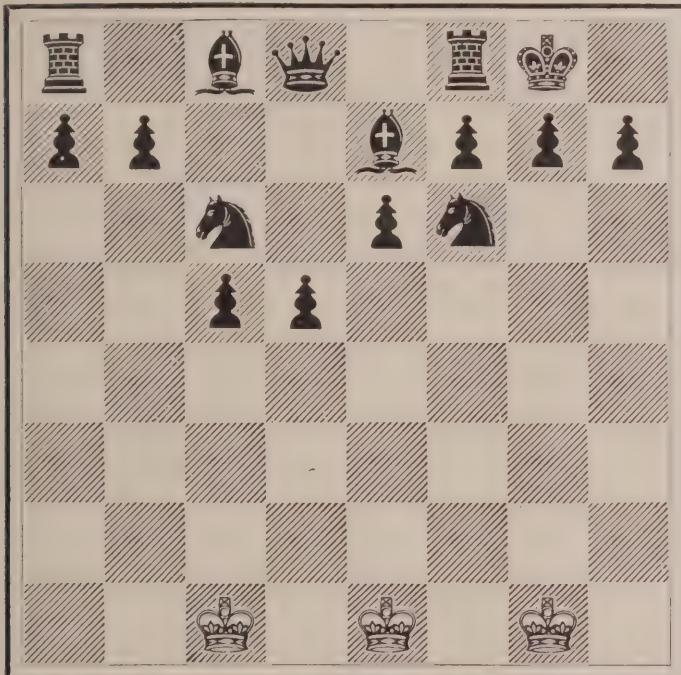
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O R A} \\
 \text{O P C, O P L, O P R} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{B, R, Q, U and 2nd aux. salient}). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{M L E R.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt } 3 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{Q Kt } 2 \underline{\text{B}}, \text{Q B } 1 \underline{\text{Q R}}, \text{Q } 2 \underline{\text{Q}}, \text{Q } 1 \underline{\text{K R}}.
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

Black.

FIG. 114.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This aligned front is much less valuable to White as an offensive formation than it is to Black as a defensive measure.

In the latter case it is of great utility, and one of the strongest minor fronts at Black's disposal.

FORMULA No. 31.

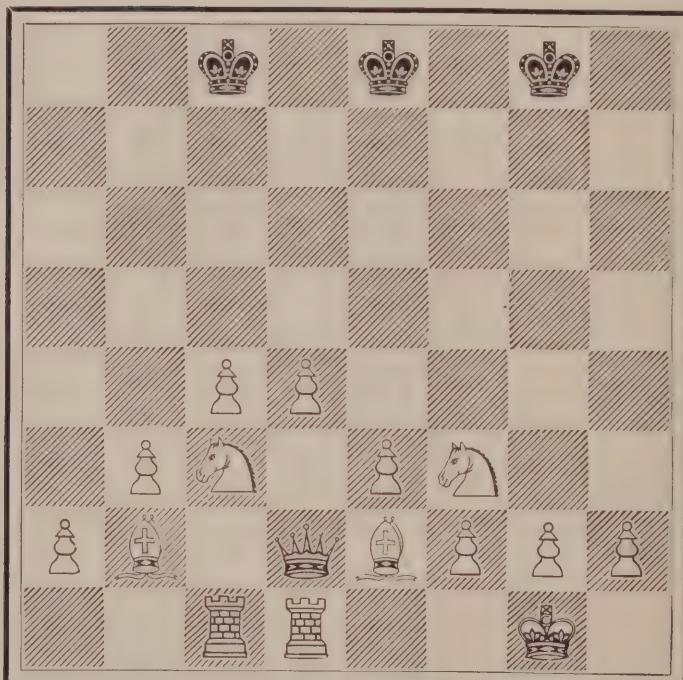
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L E R} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P C, O P R, O P L} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{C P B 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{M L O R H.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B 5 P, Q Kt 4 P, Q R 4 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT ENCEINTE REFUSED.

White.

FIG. 115.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front is much inferior to the right and left obliques, on account of the fact that it is not coincident with the strategetic centre.

Black should oppose it with the O P B 2 A, and direct his whole attack by the right against the objective plane.

FORMULA No. 32.

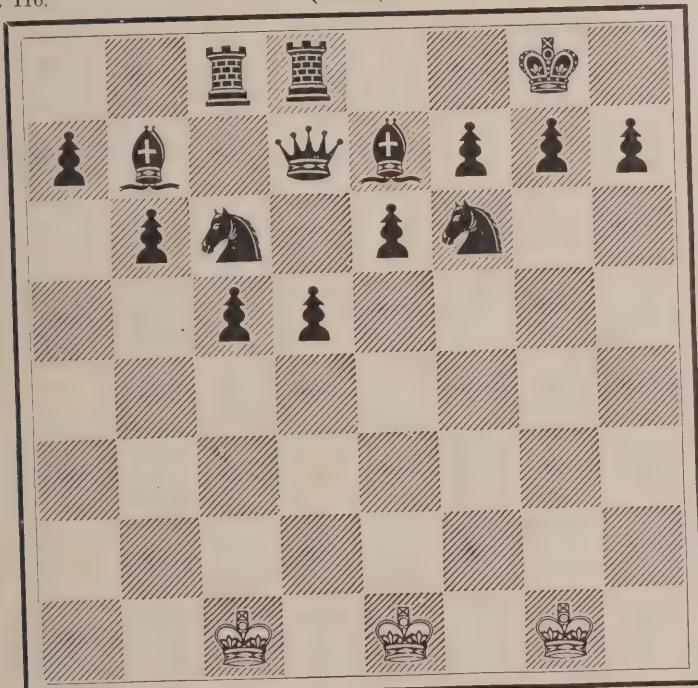
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L E R} \\
 \hline
 \overline{\text{O P C, O P L, O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{C P B 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{M L O R H.}} \\
 \hline
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B 5 P, Q Kt 4 P, Q R 4 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR LEFT ENCEINTE REFUSED.

Black.

(Black.)

FIG. 116.



(White.)

MAXIM. — The C P B 1 belongs equally to Black and to White, but the former never can safely adopt it if White initiates it; neither can he safely adopt it against the minor right oblique initiated by White. On the other hand, it is the most effective mobilization against the major right oblique when prematurely established by White.

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This front properly is adopted only by Black, and by him only when the objective plane is located on the King's wing.

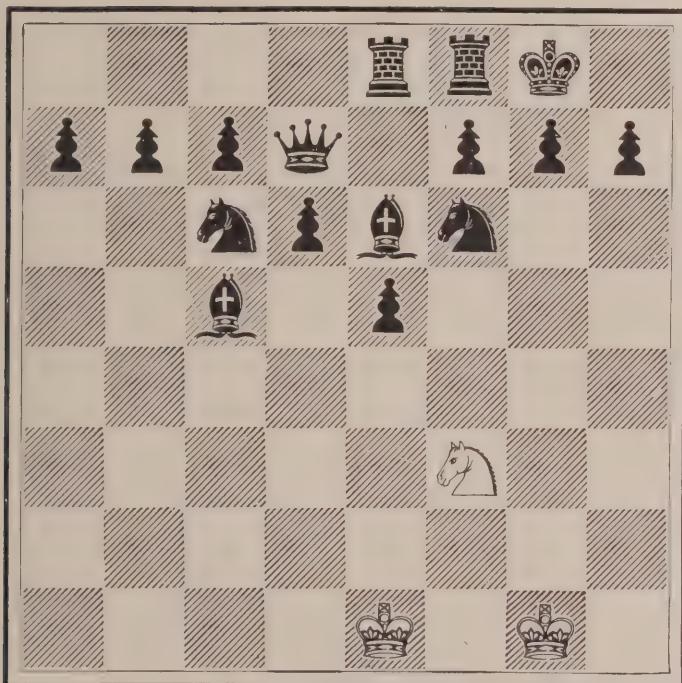
FORMULA No. 33.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O R} \\
 \overline{\text{O P C}, \text{O P R}} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \overline{\text{O P B } 5 \text{ A.}} \\
 \checkmark \therefore \text{O P B } 4 \text{ A.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K Kt } 5 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{K B } 4 \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

FIG. 117.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation it often is extremely good play for Black to manoeuvre K Kt — Kt 5.

If White at once replies with P — KR 3, it may create a weakness from which he will suffer throughout the game. Otherwise Black may follow with P — KB 4, securing the desired position.

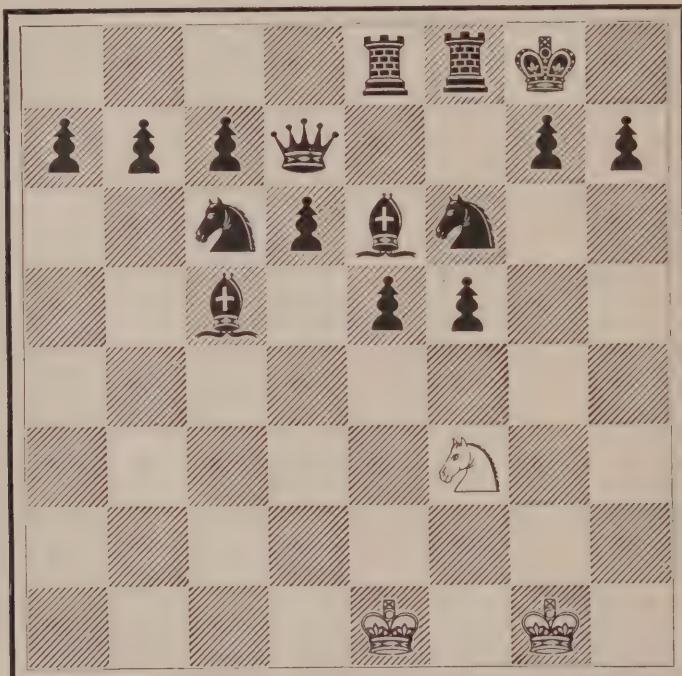
FORMULA No. 34.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O R A} \\
 \text{O P C, O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \text{O P B 4 A.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{O P B 1 A}} \\
 \times \text{W. Kt K B 3.} \\
 \hline
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K 5 P} \\
 \text{W. Kt K B 3} \times \therefore \text{Q 4 P, K 2 Q Kt, Q B 3 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MINOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

FIG. 118.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This powerful position belongs to Black. It is the strongest formation possible for him to attain, with correct play by White. It should be the model for the second player in all games which open with 1 P — K 4.

There is no reason why Black should lose, after he has once perfected this line of mobilization.

LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

Lines of Development are divided into eight classes according to their direction :—

- I. MAJOR FRONT BY THE RIGHT.
- II. MAJOR FRONT BY THE LEFT.
- III. MAJOR FRONT BY THE RIGHT REFUSED.
- IV. MAJOR FRONT BY THE LEFT REFUSED.
- V. GRAND FRONT BY THE RIGHT.
- VI. GRAND FRONT BY THE LEFT.
- VII. GRAND FRONT BY THE RIGHT REFUSED.
- VIII. GRAND FRONT BY THE LEFT REFUSED.

The object of a line of development always is to take possession of the strategetic objective.

PRINCIPLE.

A line of development should always take the direction of the objective plane.

Whenever the line of development does not take the direction of the objective plane, the strategic front of operations always should be reinforced by the crochet aligned.

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE.

The objective plane being located on the King's wing, this front, properly constructed, gives the advantage in position as compared with any adverse minor or major front of operations.

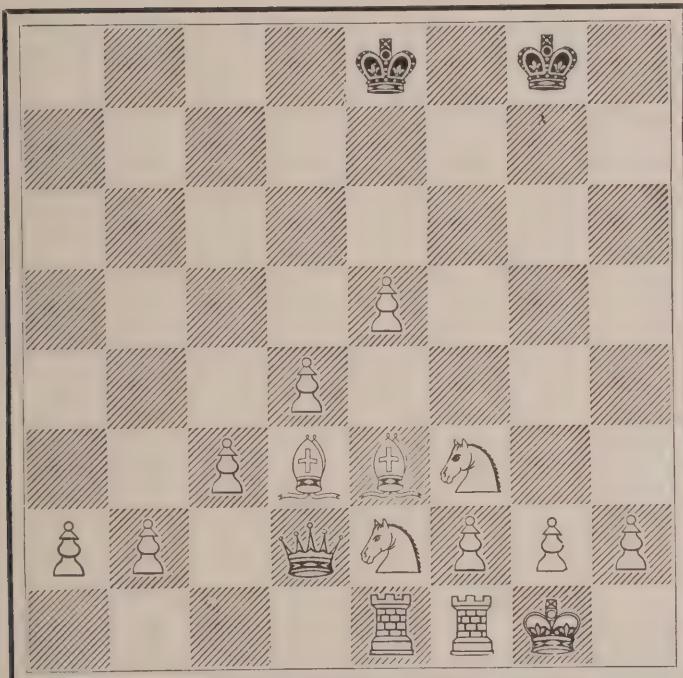
FORMULA No. 35.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \frac{\text{M R O}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \text{M} \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \frac{\text{M}}{(\text{O P B } 2 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5)}. \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \sqrt{\therefore \text{K B } 6 \text{ P.}} \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \text{D} \\
 & \therefore \text{K Kt } 5 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{K B } 4 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{K B } 5 \underline{\text{P}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 119.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In all single major fronts directed by the right, the object of White is to occupy the point white K B 6 with a piece or a pawn, and if the latter, then preferably with the K B P. All else being equal, this manœuvre, if successful, will give White a winning superiority in position.

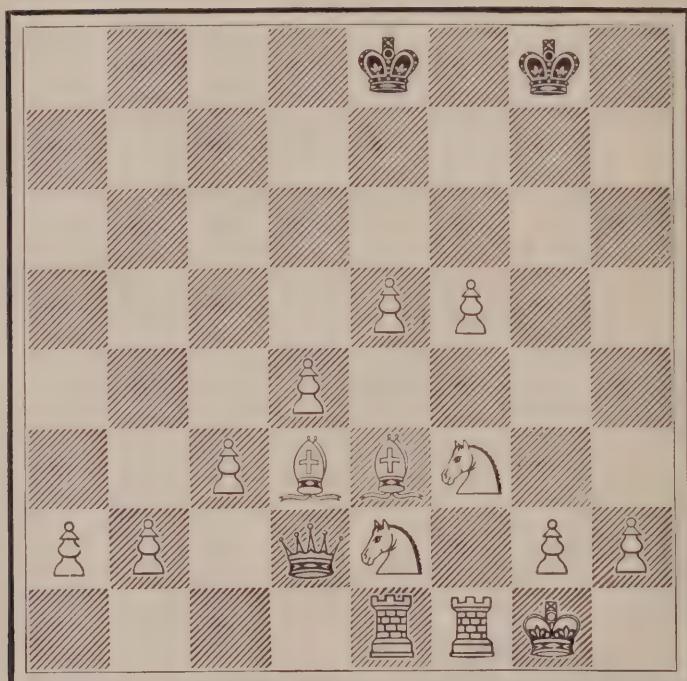
FORMULA No. 36.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \frac{\text{M R O A}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \text{M} \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \overline{(\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5)} \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \sqrt{\therefore \text{G R O.}} \\
 & \quad \quad \quad \frac{\text{D}}{\therefore \text{K B } 6 \text{ P.}}
 \end{aligned}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED.

FIG. 120.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — When the opportunity is presented to occupy the strategetic objective on a single front, it must be remembered that mere occupation is not enough, but that the piece or pawn must be established on K B 6. Thus, if the latter point is supported, White usually should so manœuvre as not to be compelled to retake adverse pieces with the white K P.

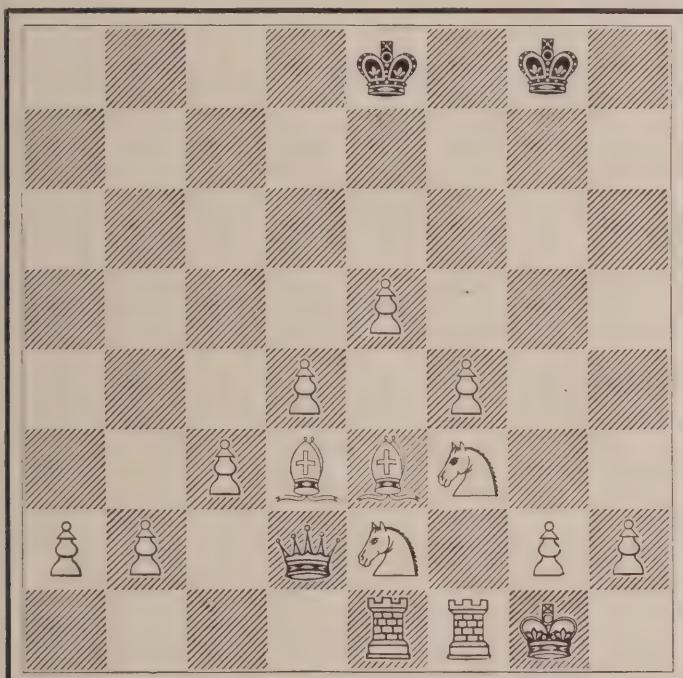
FORMULA No. 37.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O P}}{\cdot \text{O P C}, \text{O P R}} < \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O B P } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 4). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{M R O A.}} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K B } 5 \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE.

FIG. 121.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In this situation White secures a winning position by P—K B 5. As a rule, Black can prevent this only by the deployment K B P—B 4, in which case White should take with the K P *en passant*, followed by P—K B 5 and K Kt—K 5.

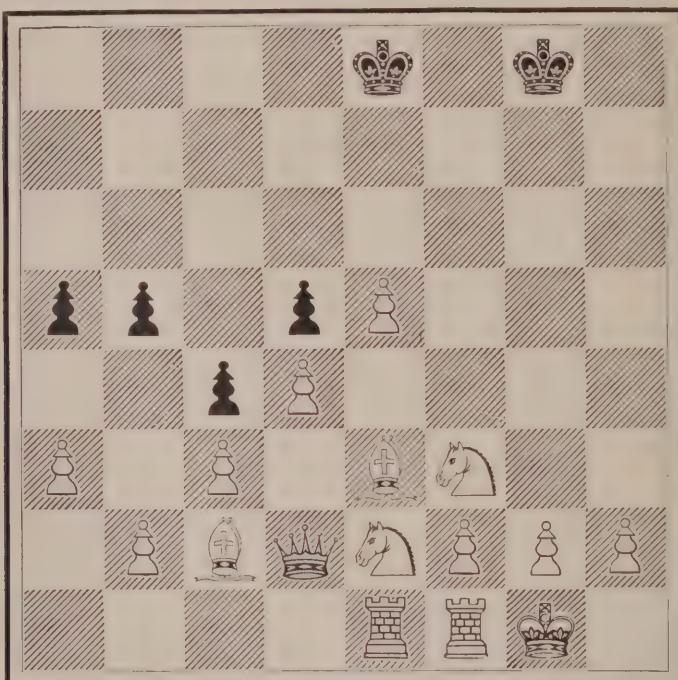
FORMULA No. 38.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \frac{\text{M R O K}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 & \frac{\text{M}}{(\text{O P B } 2 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P Q R } 3)} \\
 & \quad \sqrt{\therefore \text{G R O.}} \\
 & \therefore \text{K Kt } 5 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{K B } 4 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{K B } 5 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{K B } 6 \underline{\text{P}}
 \end{aligned}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 122.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this and similar situations Black's attack is not decisive except through an error on the part of White. The latter should attack the objective plane with the utmost vigor; exchange the Q R P for the Q Kt P when advanced, in order to reduce the promotion value of the black force. Usually White will win, from the fact that his front is directed against the objective plane, while Black's is not.

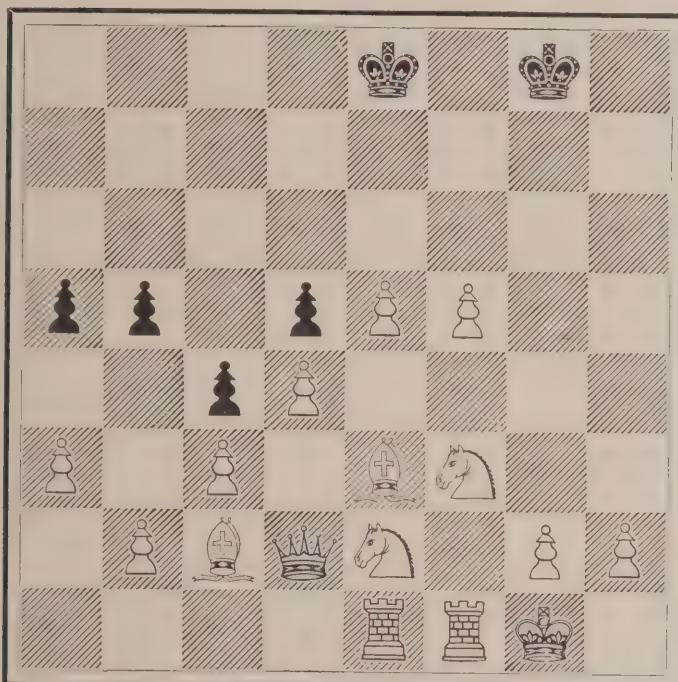
FORMULA No. 39.

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \frac{\text{M R O A K}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 & \quad \text{M} \\
 & \overline{(\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P Q R } 3).} \\
 & \quad \sqrt{\therefore \text{G. R. O.}} \\
 & \quad \overline{\text{D}} \\
 & \quad \therefore \text{K B } 6 \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{aligned}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 123.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This is the model for attack in all situations wherein the adverse king is located on the refused wing. It particularly shows the line of counter-attack which Black should always adopt whenever White initiates the left oblique refused.

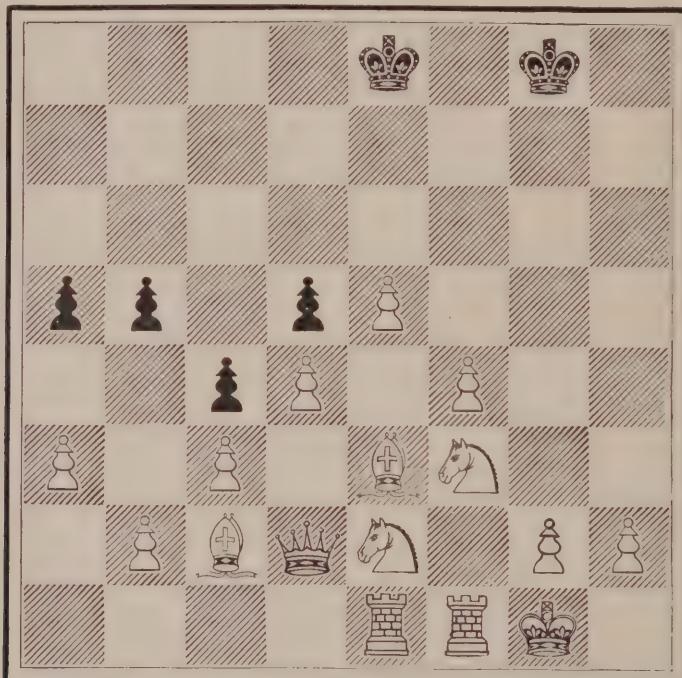
FORMULA No. 40.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M R O P K} \\
 + \text{O P C, O P R} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P Q R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\dots \text{G R O.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \dots \text{K B } 5 \text{ P, K B } 6 \text{ P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 124.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — After the establishment of the front aligned by $P - KB 5$, White usually can, with great advantage, manoeuvre the $K Kt - Kt 5$ before playing $P - KB 6$. At the same time it frequently happens that the immediate advance by $P - KB 6$ is preferable, retaking with the $K P$, and then posting the $K Kt$ at $K 5$.

In all cases wherein other things are equal, this is a winning position for White, as Black is enormously outflanked on the right, and will be found utterly unable to defend his prime strategetic point against the white force thus massed against the objective plane.

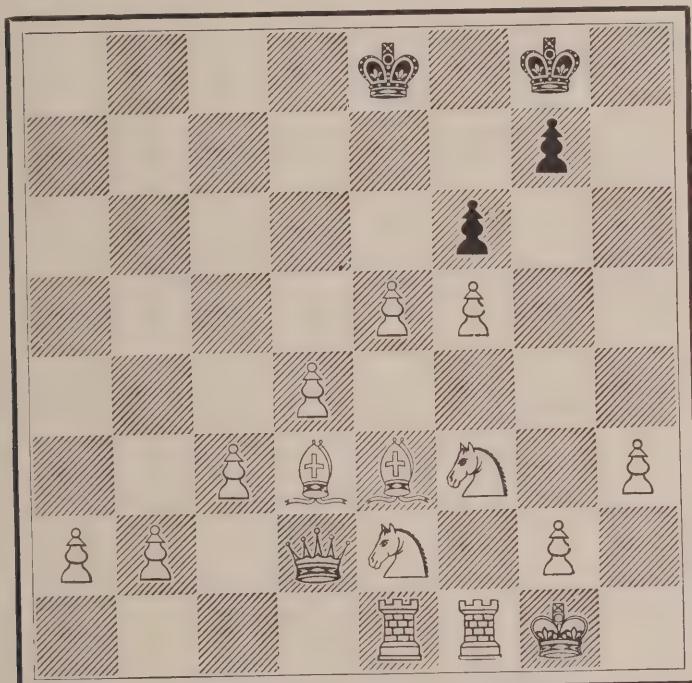
FORMULA No. 41.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O A W}}{\text{O P C; O P R}} < \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P - K R } 3) \\
 \quad \quad \quad \sqrt{\text{G R O.}} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K Kt } 4 \text{ P, K Kt } 5 \text{ P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 125.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — The formation en appui is chiefly directed against those positions in which Black has occupied the strategetic objective with his K B P strongly supported. The object of White is to break up this position by exchanging his K Kt P for the adverse K B P, and then to occupy the open K Kt file with his K R.

FORMULA No. 42.

$$+ \frac{\text{M R O D A W}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} <$$

M

$$\overline{(\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K B } 5, \text{P K Kt } 5, \text{P K R } 3 + \text{K R K Kt } 1 + \text{Q R K B } 1 + \text{K R } 2)}.$$

$$\checkmark \therefore \text{open K Kt file K R.}$$

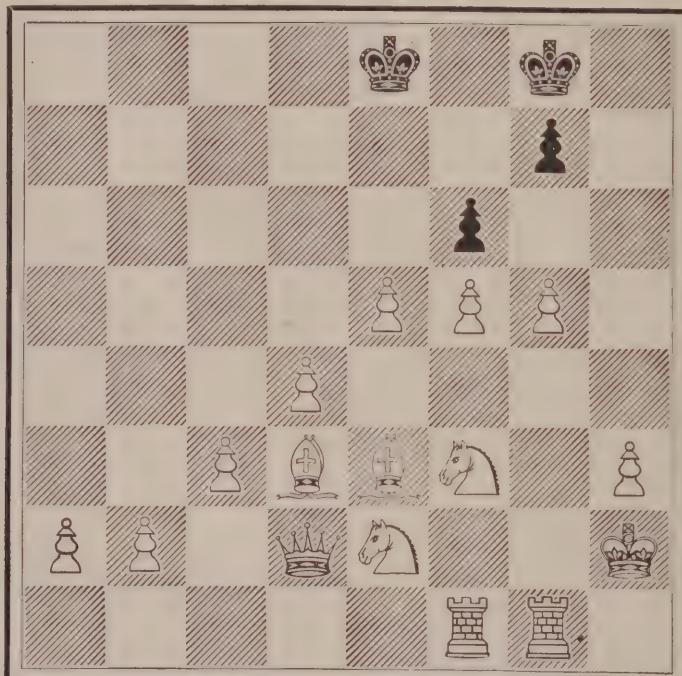
D

$$\overline{\therefore \text{K B } 6 \text{ K Kt P.}}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 126.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The white K Kt P should exchange for the black K B P.
There are no cases in which the K Kt P should advance to K Kt 6.

The *motif* of this situation is to permit of the white Q and R attacking the objective plain *via* the open K Kt file.

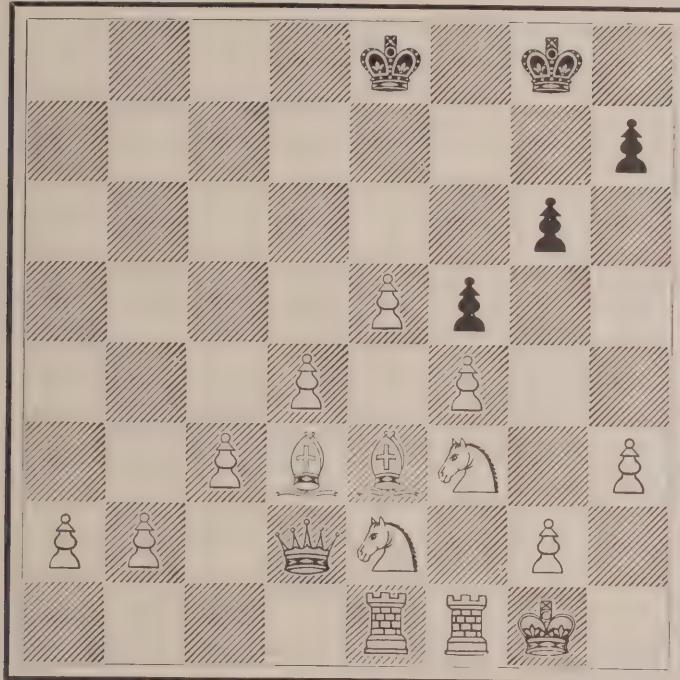
FORMULA No. 43.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O P W}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O B P } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{open K Kt file K R.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K R } 2 \text{ K, K Kt } 1 \text{ K R, K Kt } 4 \text{ P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI.

FIG. 127.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this and similar situations the object of White is to open the K Kt file by exchanging the K Kt P for the adverse K B P at K B 4, and then to occupy the open K Kt file with K R.

Usually the K Kt P should not be advanced to K Kt 4 until supported by the K R at K Kt 1; but there are cases wherein White may properly advance K Kt P — K Kt 4, and if Black plays K B P × Kt P, then White may proceed P — K B 5. But this last manœuvre is only feasible when Black has committed an egregious error, which opens to White a strategic line of operations.

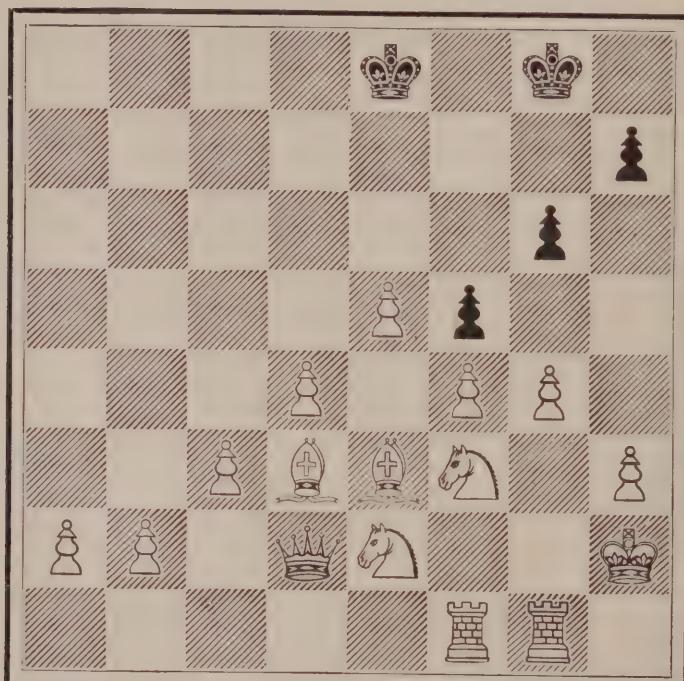
FORMULA No. 44.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O H W}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O B P } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{P K R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{open K Kt file K R.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K B } 5 \underline{\text{K Kt P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI.

FIG. 128.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this position Black's game is untenable, but White must never play P — K Kt 5, nor prematurely exchange the Kt P for the black K B P.

Instead, the white Q Kt may be developed at K Kt 3, after which White may frequently initiate a strategic line of operations by the sacrifice of a piece for one or more pawns.

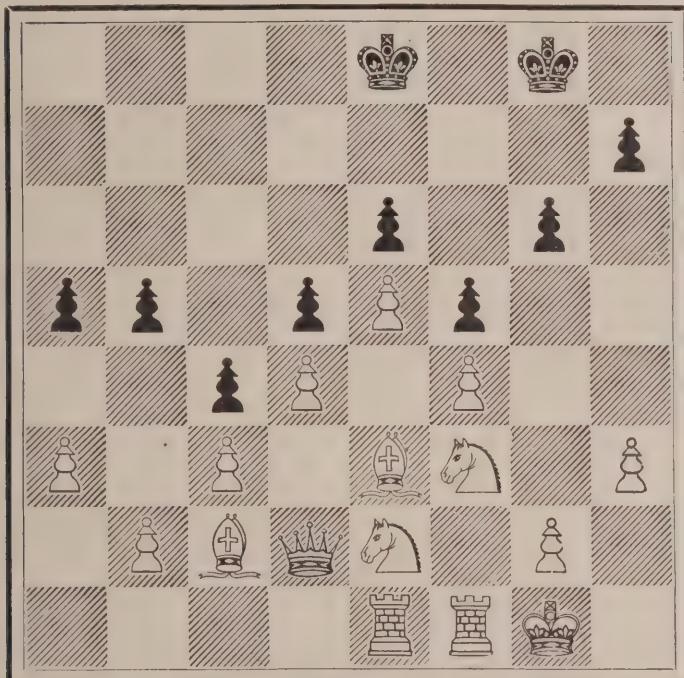
FORMULA No. 45.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O P W K}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{K Kt P echelon.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{K R } 2 \underline{\text{K}}, \text{K Kt } 1 \underline{\text{K R}}, \text{K Kt } 4 \underline{\text{P}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 129.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation many opportunities will be presented for breaking the right wing of Black, but in all cases the exchange of the K Kt P for the black K B P must be reserved for the decisive moment, and until such time as White has absolute control of the K Kt file, and in no case must the white K Kt P be advanced to K Kt 5.

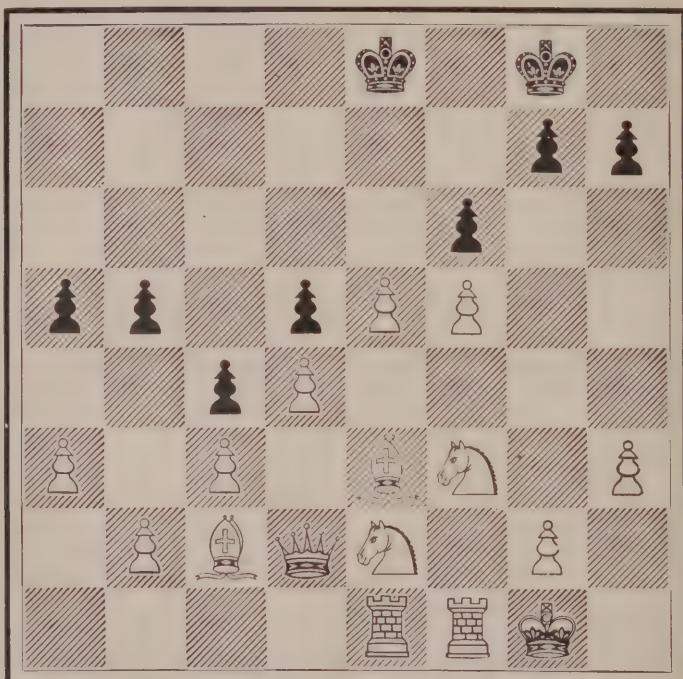
FORMULA No. 46.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O A W K}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. P K B } 3} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \underline{\text{K B } 4 \text{ K Kt.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 130.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White should never attempt to form the echelon in this and similar situations, but should seek for the strategic line of operations which will usually be found to exist. The sacrifice of a pawn, or even of a piece, will frequently be justified, if thereby White is enabled to occupy the strategetic objective.

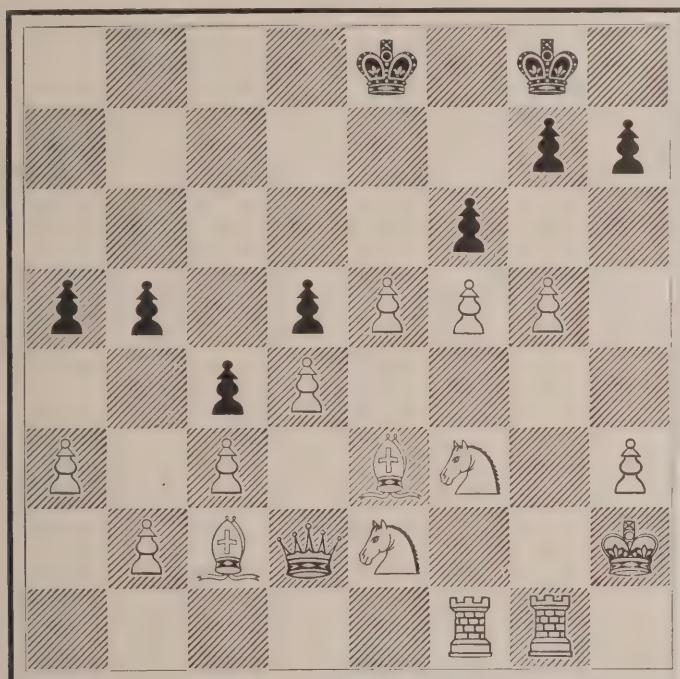
FORMULA No. 47.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O D A W K}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P K Kt } 5 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q R } 3). \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{open Kt file.}} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K B } 6 \underline{\text{Kt P}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI
WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 131.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must always, and at once, exchange his Kt P for the black K B P, and never lose his command of the open Kt file. Afterward the white Q B should develop at K B 6, and the white Kt at K B 4.

FORMULA No. 48.

$$+ \frac{M R O H W K}{O P C, O P R} < \\ M$$

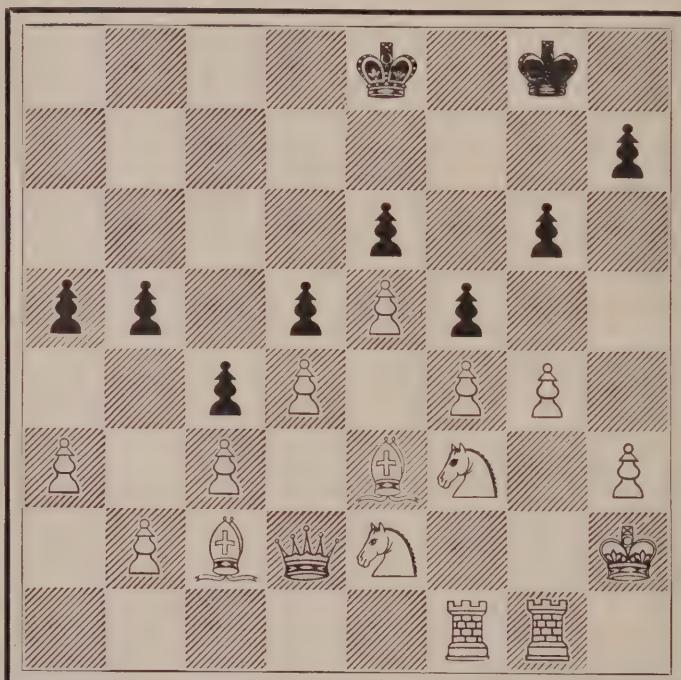
(O P B 1 A + P K 5 + P K Kt 4 + P K R 3 + P Q R 3 + K R K Kt 1
+ Q R K B 1 + K K R 2).

$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{open K Kt file.}} \\ D \\ \therefore K B 5 \underline{Kt} P, K Kt 5 \underline{K Kt}.$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI
WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 132.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The object of White, after opening the K Kt file, must always be to concentrate the Kts by K Kt 5 and K R 5 via K Kt 3, against the black King's wing pawns; to so manœuvre as to compel Black to create a strategical weakness in his position, and then to initiate a strategical line of operations by the sacrifice of a piece.

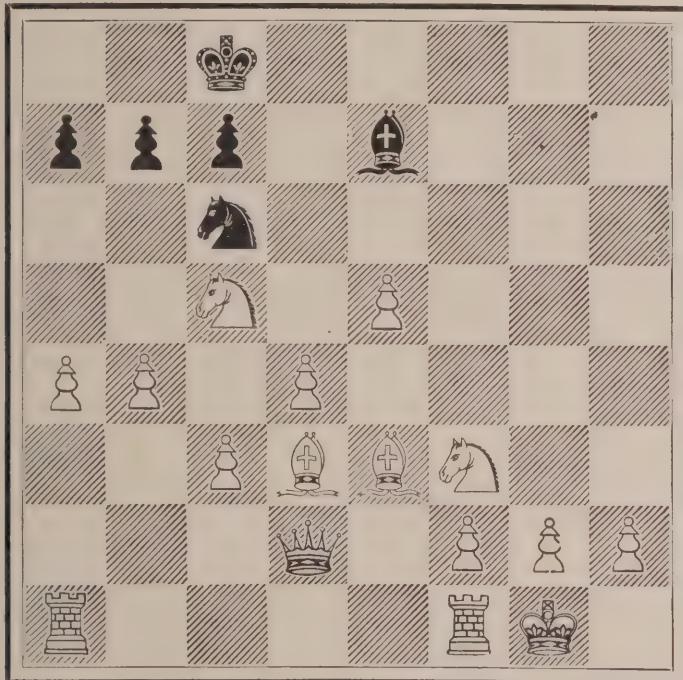
FORMULA No. 49.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\frac{\text{M R O C A}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 + \text{P Q R } 4 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R } 5 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{Q R } 6 \underline{\text{P}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 133.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must never change the direction of his front by playing in this situation $\text{P} - \text{Q } 5$. So long as no line of operations exists, the Q R P should steadily be advanced to its sixth. If $\text{P} - \text{Q } 5$, Black will retire $\text{Kt} - \text{Q Kt } 1$, and the white Kt must then either retreat or be exchanged, and White's strategic front is disorganized, and although it so happens that in this case he undoubtedly will win the game, the process is not scientific, and is far less easy than the consistent developing of the strategic front.

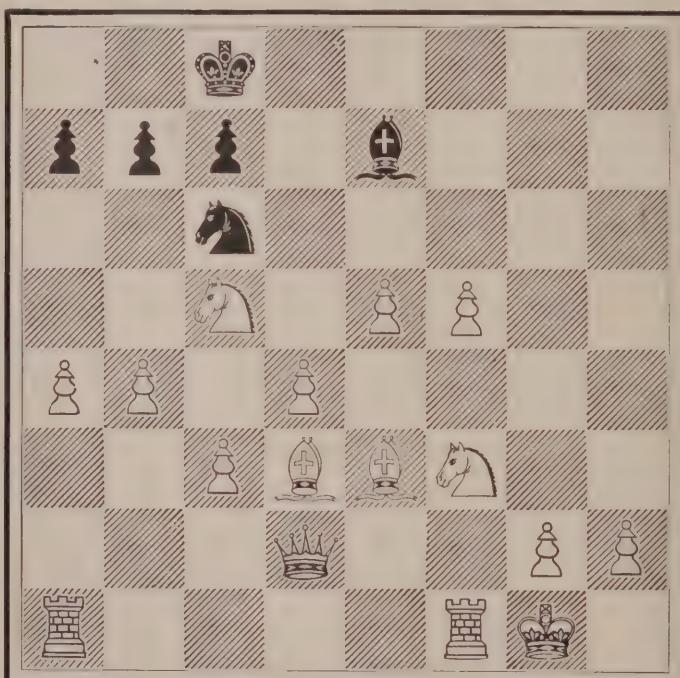
FORMULA No. 50.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O A C A}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 + \text{P Q R } 4 \\
 + \text{Kt} - \text{Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{ B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R } 5 \text{ P}}, \underline{\text{Q R } 6 \text{ P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 134.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White should not proceed with $P - KB 6$, thus establishing the grand right oblique, as that front would not have the direction of the objective plane. He should continue with the advance of the $QR P$ to $QR 6$.

It does not follow that a player should adopt a course which will ultimately win; the true criterion of skill is the selection of that course which wins in the quickest and surest manner. The high art consists in despatching a beaten antagonist like a master, and not like a novice.

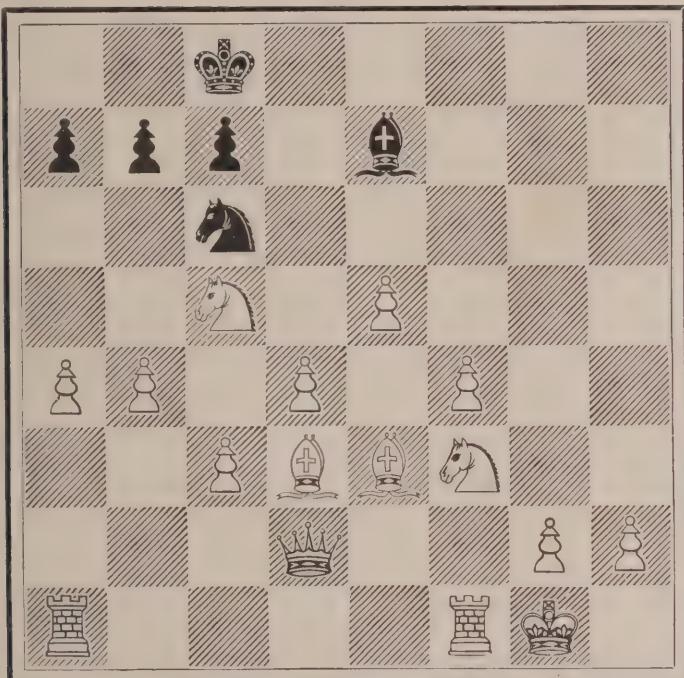
FORMULA No. 51.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O P C A}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P P 1 A} - \text{Kt, R U}) + \text{P K 5} + \text{P} - \text{Q R 4} + \text{P Q R 4} + \text{Kt Q B 5}. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 135.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation it will be found that through the errors of Black, a strategic line of operation may frequently be initiated by either P — Q 5, P — Q Kt 5, B — Q R 6, or Kt × Q Kt P. But neither of these moves are valid on a line of manœuvre, and you must not forget that a strategic line of operations does not exist until the checkmate of the adverse king can be definitely calculated.

FORMULA No. 52.

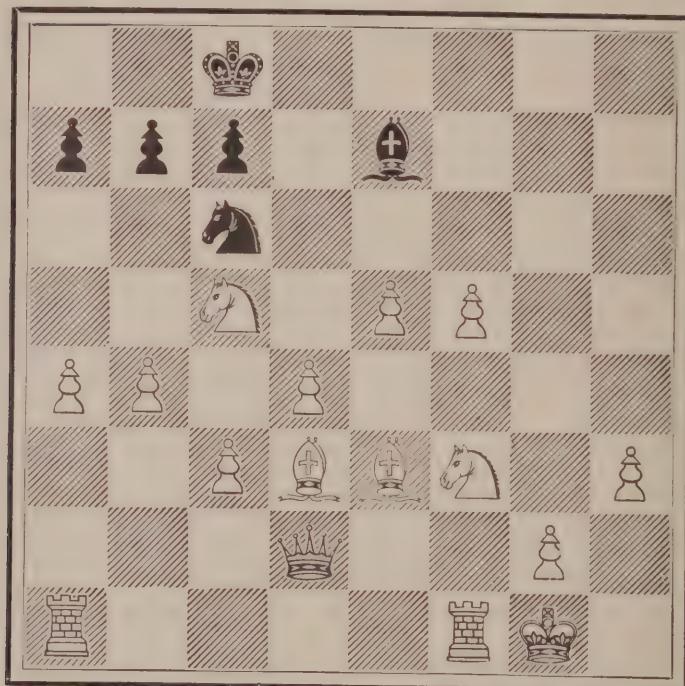
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M R O A W C A} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K 5} + \text{P K B 5} + \text{P K R 3} + \text{P Q Kt 4} \\
 + \text{P Q R 4).
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 136.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—If in this and similar situations Black makes the error of playing $P - Q R 3$, usually the best continuation for White is $P - Q Kt 5$; and this always is the correct move if the black point $Q 1$ is occupied by any piece except a Kt. The result will often be a strategic line of operations.

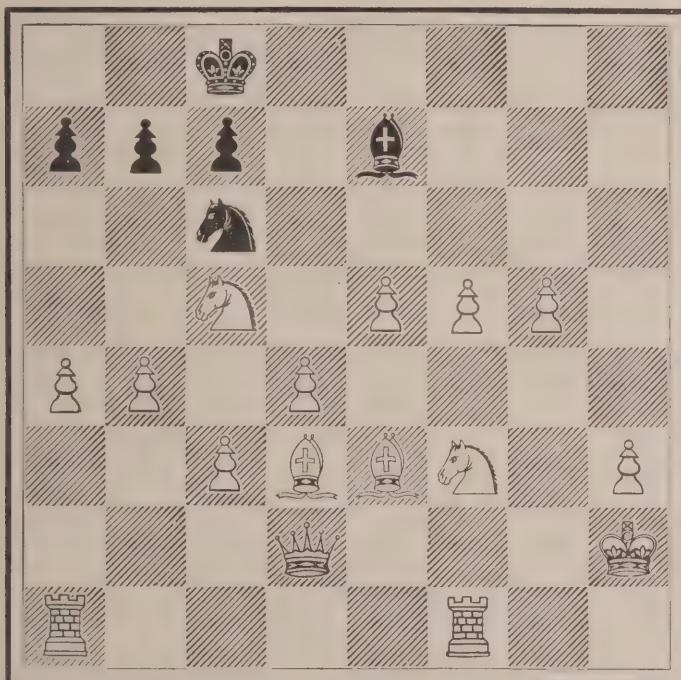
FORMULA No. 53.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M R O D A W C A} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K 5} + \text{P K B 5} + \text{P K Kt 5} + \text{P K R 3} \\
 + \text{P Q Kt 4} + \text{P Q R 4} + \text{K K R 2}). \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B.Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q.R 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI
WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 137.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In all situations wherein the major double front is doubly aligned, White has the advantage on both wings. This advantage is so decisive that often a logistic or a tactical line of operations presents itself before the strategic line of operations is initiated by $\text{P} - \text{Q R 6}$. These opportunities must never be neglected.

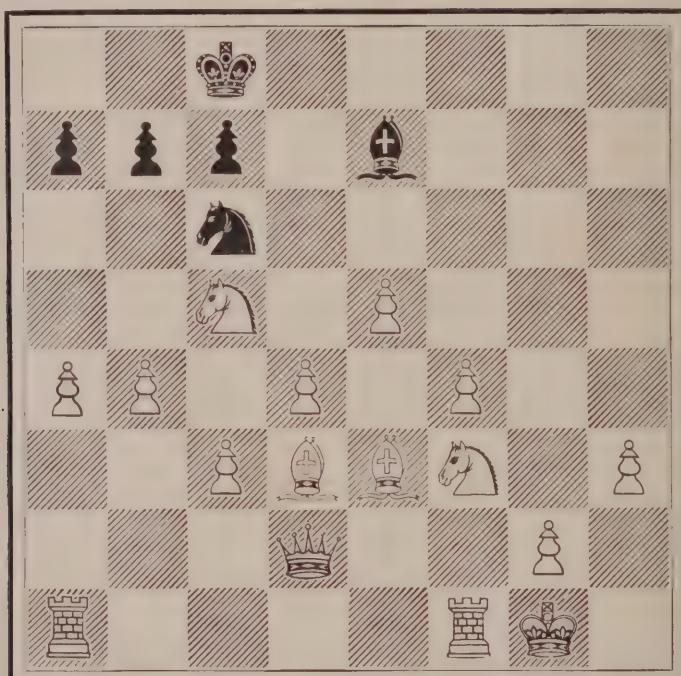
FORMULA No. 54.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 + M R O P W C A \\
 + O P L \\
 M \\
 \hline
 (O P B 1 A - Kt, R, U) + P K 5, P K R 3, P - Q Kt 4, P Q R 4, Kt Q B 5. \\
 \sqrt{ \times B. Q Kt P. } \\
 D \\
 \hline
 \therefore Q R 6 \underline{P}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 138.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—If in this situation Black makes the error of playing $P - Q Kt 3$, White replies $B - R 6$ (ck), followed by $K R - Q K 1$, and then by $P - Q R 5$. If the $B K$ retreats to $Q 1$, however, on the check White may usually best proceed with $Kt - Kt 7$ (ck), followed by $B - Q Kt 5$.

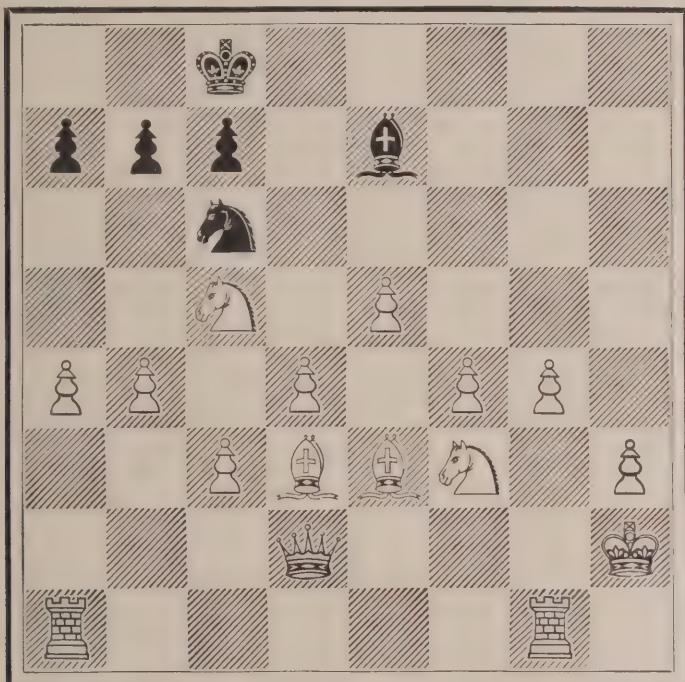
FORMULA No. 55.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M R O H W C A} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 \\
 + \text{P Q R } 4 + \text{K K R } 2. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 139.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.— In all cases wherein Black makes the error of playing P—Q R 4, White should reply with K R—Q Kt 1. If Black now exchanges the white Kt at Q B 5, White retakes with Q Kt P, followed by Q—Q Kt 2. The black K thus being driven to the centre, White now continues the attack by developing his major front by the right unto P—K B 5 and P—K Kt 5, with the purpose of occupying the strategetic objective with a piece.

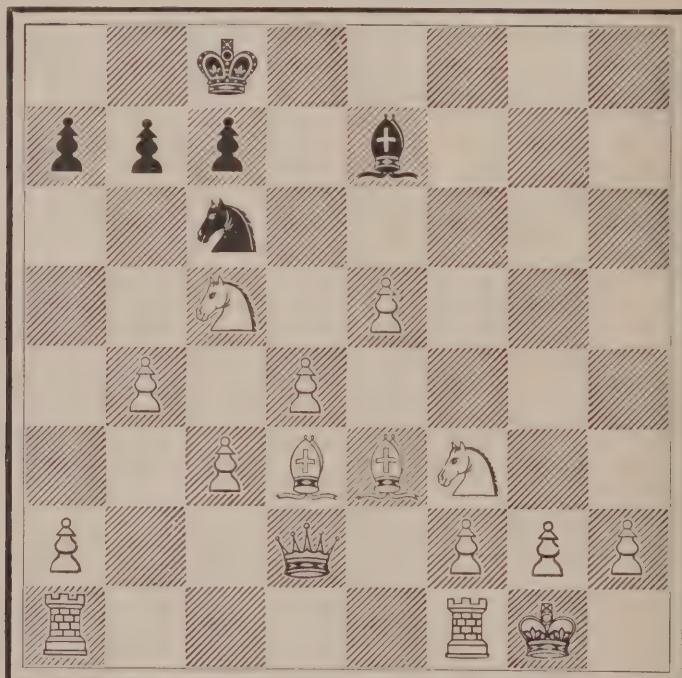
FORMULA No. 56.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O J}}{\text{O P L}} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P} - \text{K 5} + \text{P Q Kt 4} + \text{Q Kt Q B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\text{.. en potence}} \\
 \times \text{B. Q Kt P.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{K 1 or K Kt 5 Kt, + K B 4 P} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 140.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must prepare to support his major front with the K B P en potence, and his best move is Kt — K Kt 5, all else being equal. Otherwise, he should play Kt — K 1, followed by P — K B 4 in either case, and returning the Kt to K B 3 with all despatch.

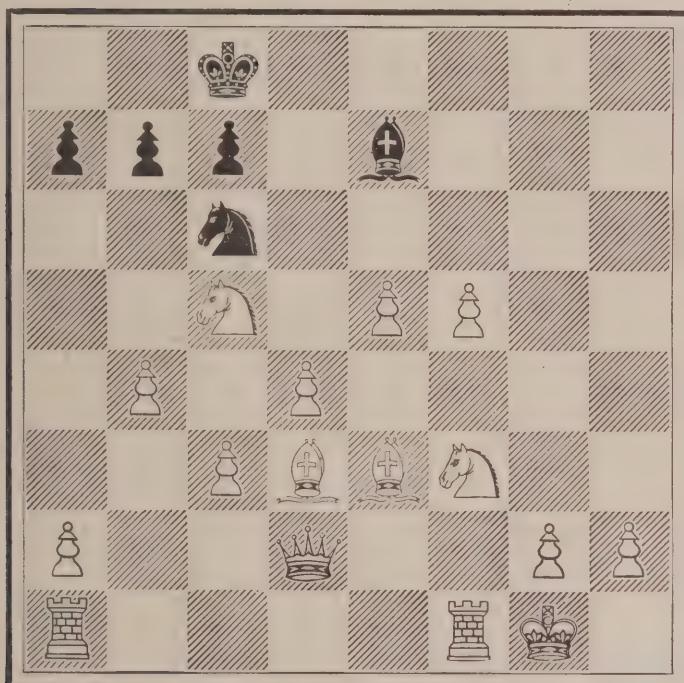
FORMULA No. 57.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\frac{\text{M R O A J}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 141.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White must establish the crochet aligned by $\text{P} - \text{Q R } 4$ at once ; and as in all similar cases, he must hold his right wing and centre immovable, and press the attack on the left with all possible energy.

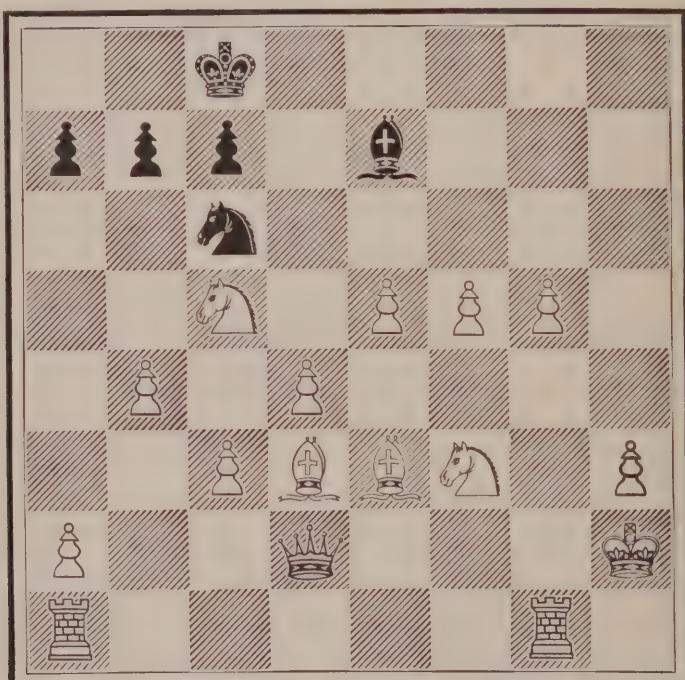
FORMULA No. 58.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O D A W J}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K 5} + \text{P K B 5} + \text{P K Kt 5} + \text{P K R 3} \\
 + \text{P Q Kt 4} + \text{Q Kt Q B 5} + \text{K K R 2} + \text{K R K Kt 1.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. P Q Kt 2.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI
WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 142.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Here is presented a strong temptation for White to develop a single front by the right, all of which is wrong at this time. White should at once establish the crochet aligned by $\text{P} - \text{Q R 4}$, and hold stationary his centre and right wing until a line of operations is initiated.

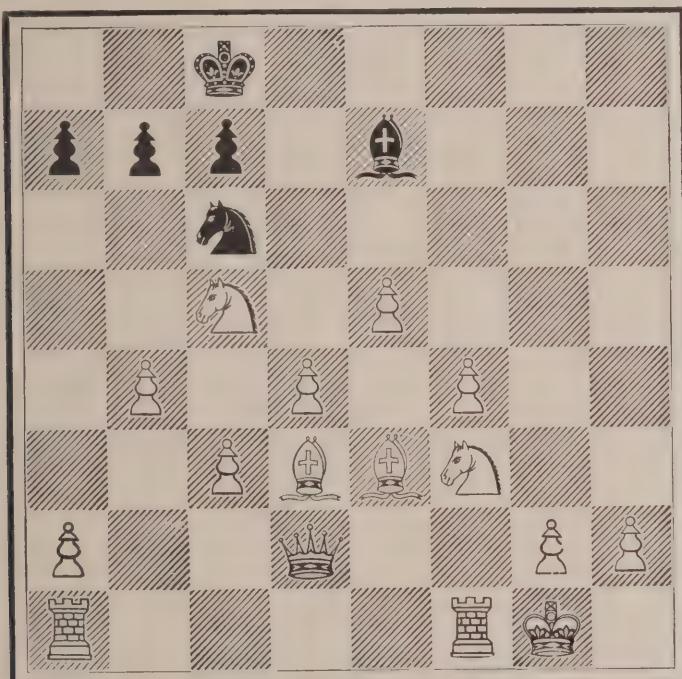
FORMULA No. 59.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{\text{M R O P J}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P} - \text{K 5} + \text{P Q R 4} + \text{Q Kt Q B 5}. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \frac{\text{D}}{\therefore \text{Q R 6 P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 143.

(Black.)



(White.)

M A X I M. — White should establish the crochet aligned by $\text{P} - \text{Q R 4}$ at once, and follow this with $\text{P} - \text{Q R 5}$. This is one of the safest positions that White can adopt, for Black can make no impression whatever on the white right wing.

FORMULA No. 60.

$$+ \begin{matrix} M & R & O & W & J \\ O & P & L \end{matrix} <$$

M

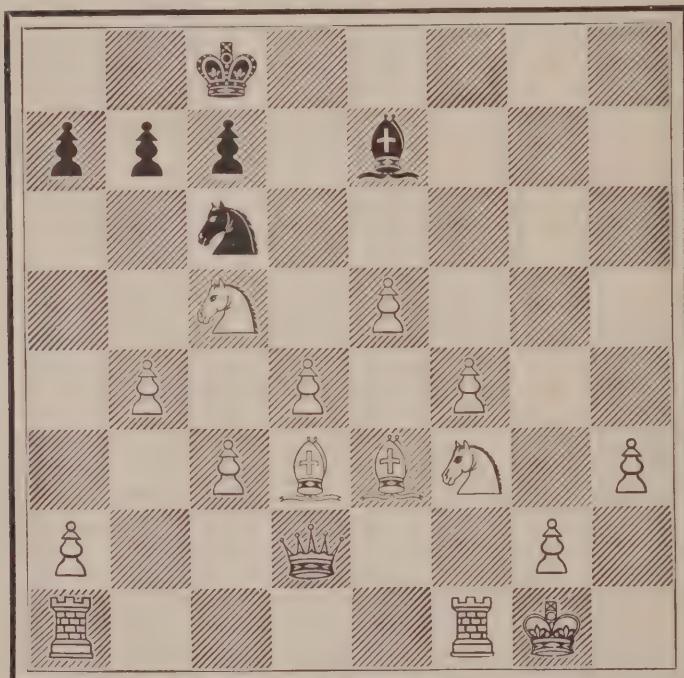
$$(O P B 1 A - Kt, R, U) + P K 5 + P K R 3 + P Q Kt 4 + Q Kt Q B 5.$$

$$\sqrt{\begin{array}{c} \therefore \text{appui} \\ \times B. Q Kt P. \\ D \\ \hline \therefore K R 2 \underline{K} \\ \therefore Q R 6 \underline{P}. \end{array}}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE EN APPUI WITH MAJOR
CROCHET.

FIG. 144.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White should play at once $K - K R 2$, in order to perfect the en appui and to permit of the quick formation of the echelon on the right, when necessary. Then he should at once proceed to establish the crochet aligned by $P - Q R 4$.

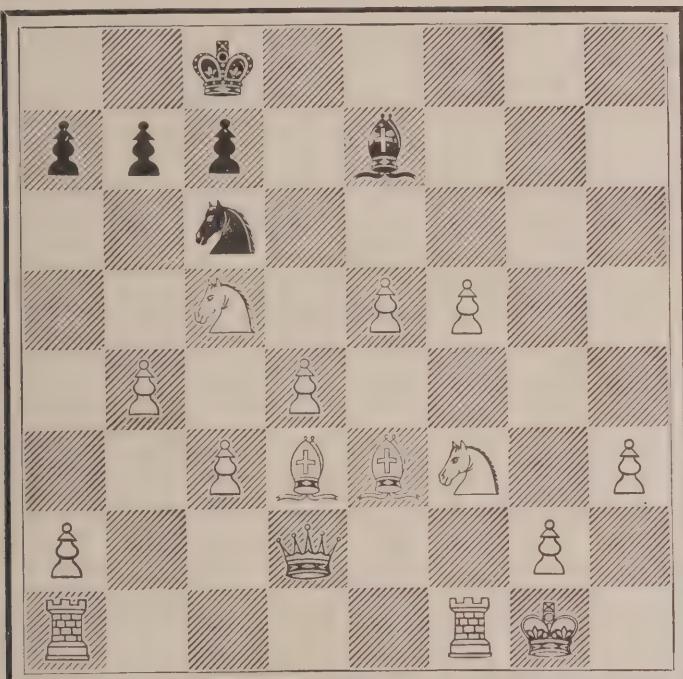
FORMULA No. 61.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M R O A W J} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q Kt } 4. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \text{ P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 145.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Whenever the formation en appui is adopted, the K should be posted at R 2, in order to support the R P and to make room for the posting of the R at Kt 1. This may be delayed in cases where, as in this instance, the strategic front is so powerfully developed that White has nothing to fear from any attempted adverse attack.

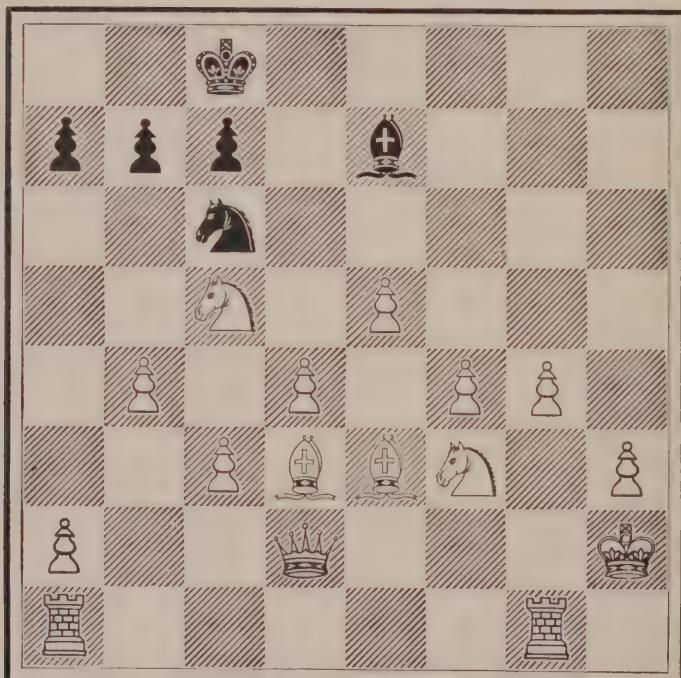
FORMULA No. 62.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\overline{\text{M R O H W J}} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P Kt } 4 + \text{P K R } 3 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 \\
 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5 + \text{K K R } 2 + \text{K R K Kt } 1. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \underline{\text{R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 146.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In these fronts, never change the direction by advancing $\text{P} - \text{Q } 5$, nor extend further in the same direction by $\text{P} - \text{K B } 6$. Put all your time and energy into the attack of the objective plane, by means of the crochet aligned.

MAJOR RIGHT ENCEINTE.

The objective plane being located on the King's wing, this front, properly constructed, constitutes a winning advantage in position.

FORMULA No. 63.

$$+ \frac{\text{M R E W}}{\text{O P C, O P R}} < \\ \text{M}$$

$(\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{R U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{P} - \text{K R } 3$
 $+ \text{K K R } 2 + \text{K R K Kt } 1 + \text{Q R K B } 1.$

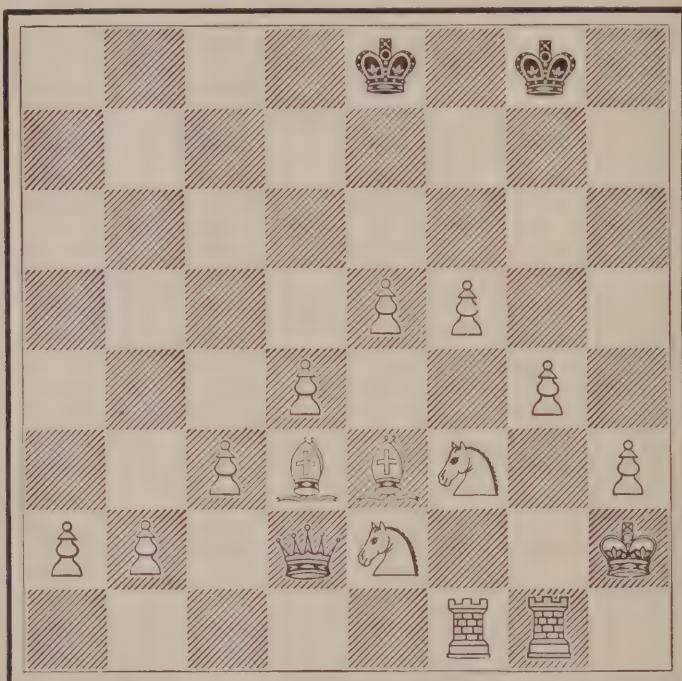
$\sqrt{\text{Grand Right Oblique.}}$
 D

$\therefore \text{K B } 6 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{ or K Kt } 5 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{ or K B } 4 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{ or K Kt } 5 \underline{\text{Kt}}.$

MAJOR RIGHT ENCEINTE EN APPUI.

FIG. 147.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White's win is assured, the question being merely one of manner of finishing the game. The best move usually will be P—K Kt 5. Either P—K B 6 (if no black pawn is at either K 2 or K Kt 2), or Kt—Kt 5, or Kt—B 4, and in some cases Q B—Kt 5, are available. The object is simply to establish the grand right oblique and to open the K Kt file for the rooks in case Black has castled K R.

FORMULA No. 64.

$$+ \frac{M R E W K}{O P C, O P R} < \\ M$$

$(O P B 1 A - R U) + P K R 3 + P K Kt 4 + P K B 5 + P K 5$
 $+ P Q R 3 + K K R 2 + K R K Kt 1 + Q R K B 1.$

\sqrt{D} Grand Right Oblique.

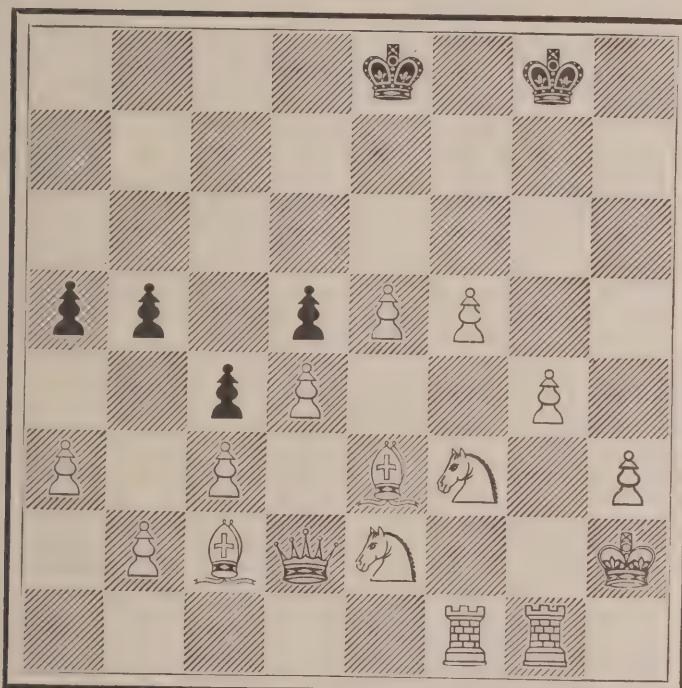
D

$\therefore K B 6 \underline{P},$ or $K Kt 5 \underline{P},$ or $K B 4 \underline{Kt},$ or $K Kt 5 \underline{Kt}.$

MAJOR RIGHT ENCEINTE EN APPUI WITH MINOR
CROCHET.

FIG. 148.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The remarks on the foregoing apply equally to this situation. White establishes the minor crochet in order to properly oppose the major left oblique refused and echeloned adopted by Black.

FORMULA No. 65.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M R E W J} \\ + \text{O P L} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array}$$

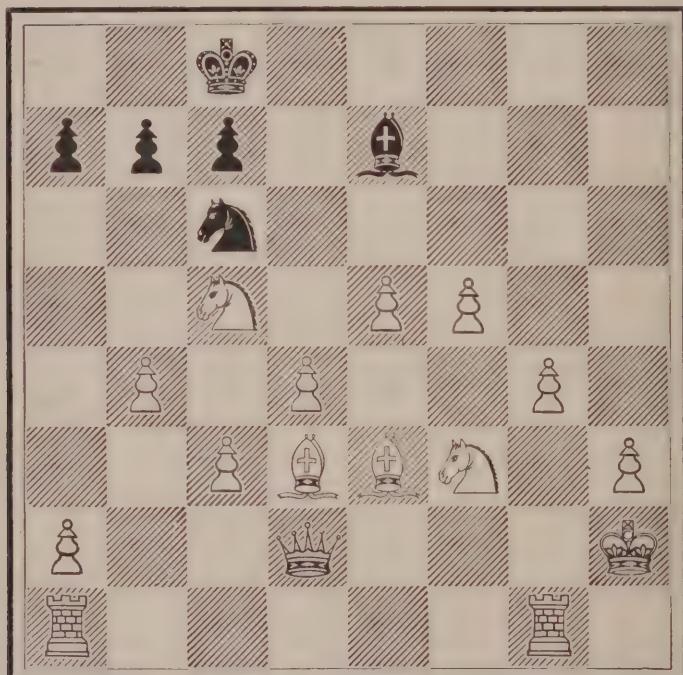
$(O P B 1 A - Kt, R, U) + P K 5 + P K B 5 + P K Kt 4 + P K R 3$
 $+ K K R 2 + K R K Kt 1.$

$\sqrt{\begin{array}{c} \therefore \text{ Crochet aligned} \\ \text{C A} \therefore \times \text{B. Q Kt P.} \\ \hline \text{D} \end{array}}$
 $\therefore \underline{Q R 4 P}, \underline{Q R 5 P}, \underline{Q R 6 P}.$

MAJOR RIGHT ENCEINTE EN APPUI WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 149.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this and similar positions establish the crochet aligned, and attack the square Q R 6 with the Q R P, meanwhile availing of any opportunity to win in any other way by an error of the opponent, and especially by Kt \times Q Kt P, or by P — Q Kt 5.

Changing front by P — Q 5 will seldom be found desirable, although it may be adopted at times when the opponent has played so unscientifically that he is without resources.

The right enceinte rarely should be adopted without the en appui, and as a rule the latter should be constructed first.

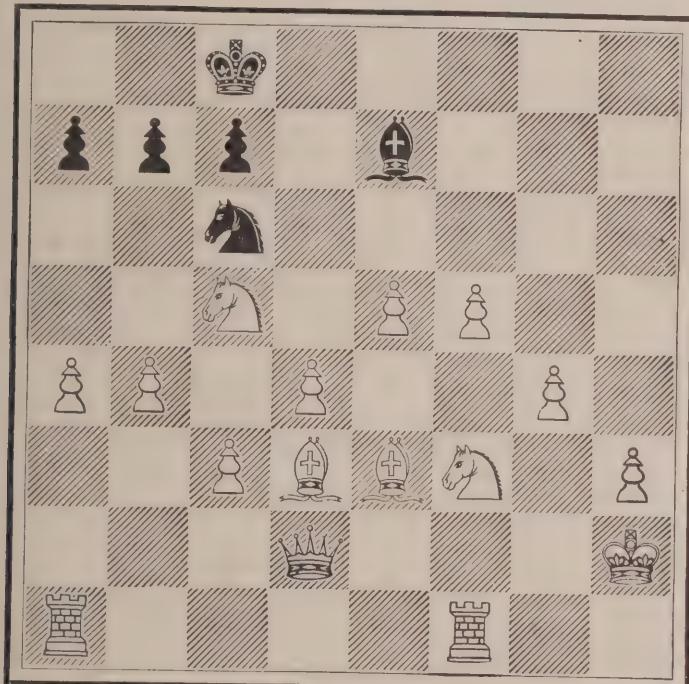
FORMULA No. 66.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\frac{\text{M R E W C A}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P K } 5 + \text{P K B } 5 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{P K R } 3 \\
 + \text{K K R } 2 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 + \text{P Q R } 4 + \text{Q Kt Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \text{ P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT ENCEINTE EN APPUI WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 150

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In all formations which include the en appui, it is necessary to prevent the opponent from creating by the exchange of pawns open files which cannot be controlled by the kindred rooks. It is equally important to maintain intact the P at K5 and at Q4 until the decisive moment.

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This is the model front for Black to aim at when the objective plane is located on the King's wing.

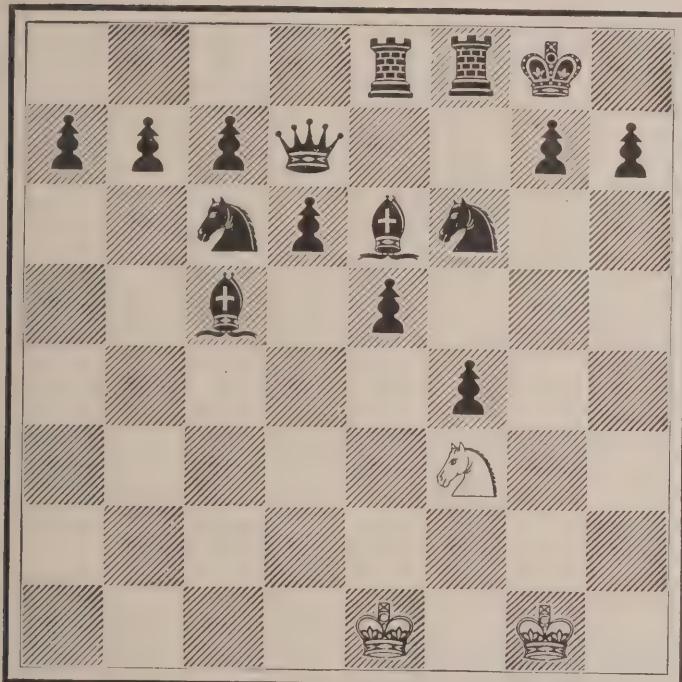
FORMULA No. 67.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{M R O R} \\
 + \text{O P C, O P R} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 4 \text{ A}) + \text{P K B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{W. Kt K B } 3.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K } 5 \text{ P} \\
 \text{W. Kt K B } 3 \times \therefore \text{K } 4 \text{ Q Kt.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

FIG. 151.

(*Black.*)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This position belongs to Black, and is the most powerful formation possible for him to attain with proper play on the part of White.

Black can now proceed with P - K 5, or P - K Kt 4 (in which case he should first move K - R 1), or Kt - K Kt 5, or B - K Kt 5. After either of these moves Black may continue as best suits the resulting situation, having always in view the dislodging of the white Kt at K B 3 and the establishing of the O P B 1 A by P - K 5, followed by P - Q 4 and P - Q B 3 (after Kt - K 4 or Kt - K 2), if and when necessary.

a

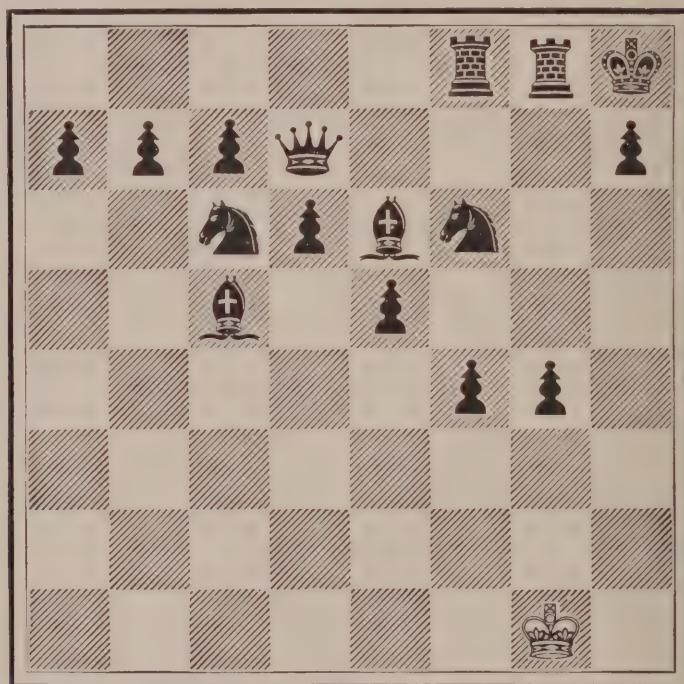
FORMULA No. 68.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M R O R A}}{\text{O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 4 A} - \text{R, U}) + \text{K K R 1} + \text{K R K Kt 1} + \text{Q R K B 1} \\
 + \text{P K B 5} + \text{P K Kt 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{W. Kt K B 3.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{W. Kt K B 3} \times \therefore \text{K B 6 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

FIG. 152.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — After establishing the grand right oblique by P — K B 6, Black should not neglect to support it by properly developing the K P and Q P along the strategetic centre.

FORMULA No. 69.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M R O R P} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

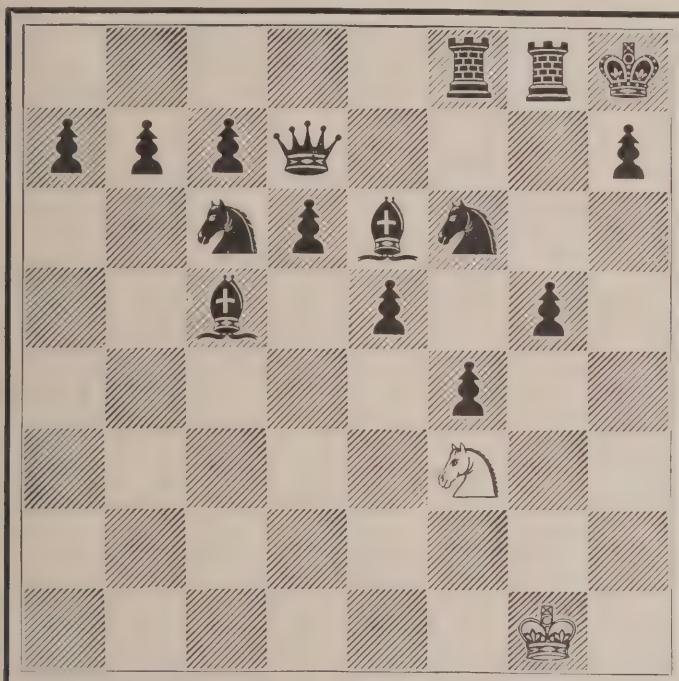
$(O P B 4 A - R, U) + P K B 5 + P K K t 4 + K K R 1 + K R K K t 1$
 $+ Q R K B 1.$

$$\begin{array}{c} \sqrt{\times} W. Kt K B 3. \\ D \\ \therefore K K t 5 P. \end{array}$$

MAJOR RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN POTENCE.

FIG. 153.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—It is usually well to defer the attempt to dislodge the white K Kt in this and similar situations until such time as nothing can prevent the quick development of the front from the M R O R to the G R O, by the advance of P—K 5 and P—Q 4. If, however, White's king's wing becomes disintegrated, and the front refused is sufficient for forming the base of operations, then, of course, there is no necessity for further developing it, and Black should manœuvre to initiate a strategic line of operations.

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE.

The objective plane being located on the Queen's wing, this front, properly constructed, gives the advantage in position as compared with any adverse front of operations.

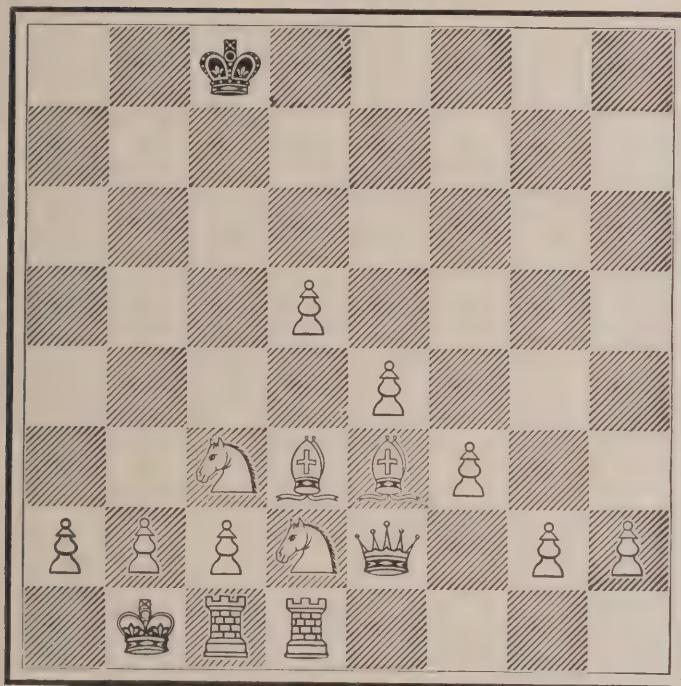
FORMULA No. 70.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\text{M L O} \\
 \text{O P L} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed}) + \text{P Q 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{en potence.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 Kt} + \text{Q B 4 P.} \quad .
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 154.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — It is a serious matter whenever the major front is adopted and there is inability to support it at once with the formation en potence.

The opponent, in such a case, should violently attack the vertex pawn, and endeavor to destroy the front at once.

In this position White, if he has the time, and if the black K is permanently located on the Queen's side, may properly form the appui and retire the Q Kt temporarily to Q R 2, in order to advance P — Q B 4.

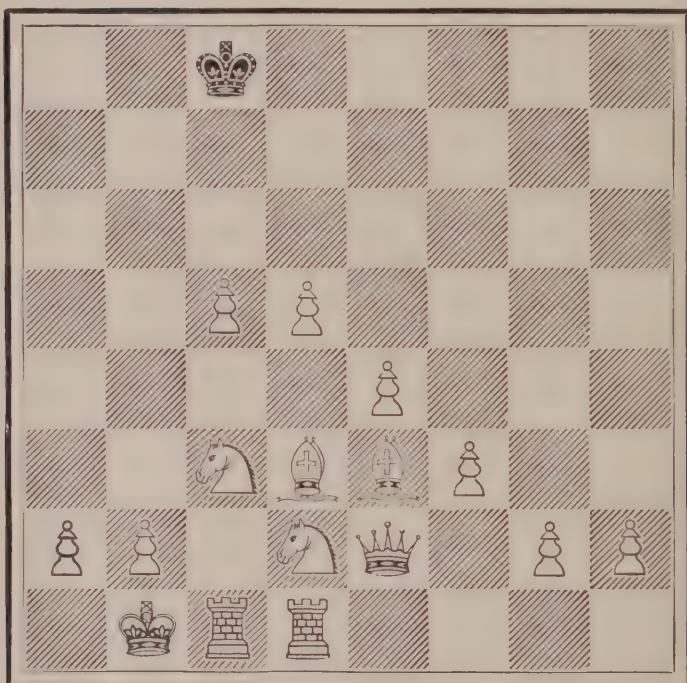
FORMULA No. 71.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + M L O A < \\
 + O P L \\
 \hline
 M \\
 (O P B 1 A, reversed) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{Grand Left Oblique.}} \\
 D \\
 \therefore Q B 6 \underline{P}, \text{ or } Q Kt 5 \underline{Kt}, \text{ or } Q Kt 5 \underline{B}, \text{ or } Q B 4 \underline{Kt}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED.

FIG. 155.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The idea is to establish a white pawn or a white piece at O B 6, without removing the white Q P from Q 5.

This may be done in several ways, all of which are indicated in the line of development.

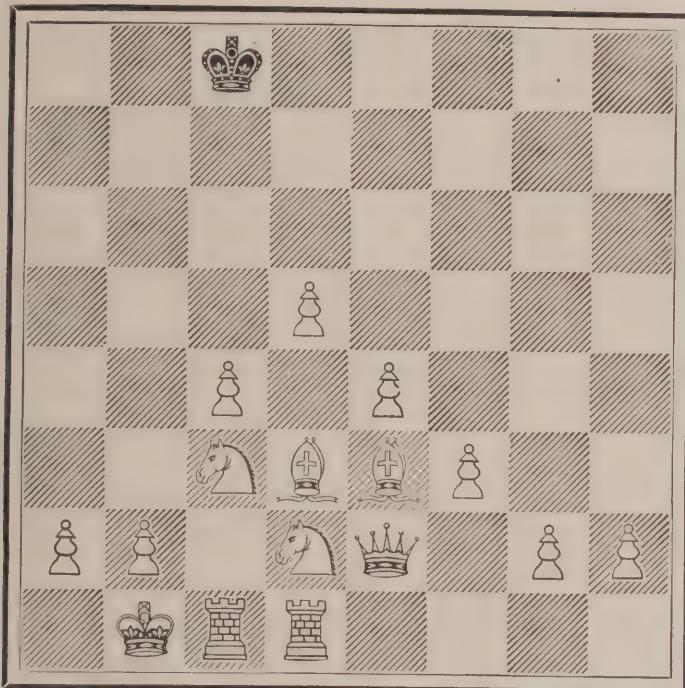
FORMULA No. 72.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M L O P} \\
 - \text{O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A, reversed}) + \text{P Q } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{front aligned.}} \\
 \hline
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B } 5 \text{ } \underline{\text{P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE.

FIG. 156.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this and similar situations White wins by establishing the major front aligned. Whenever Black presents this alignment by playing $P - B 4$, White seldom should take the pawn *en passant*, but, instead, he should form the echelon supported *en appui*.

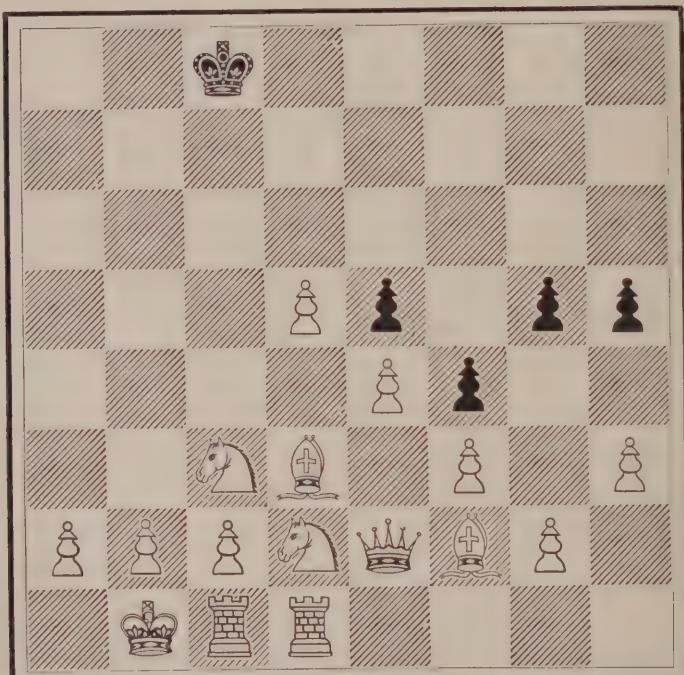
FORMULA No. 73.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O K} \\
 + \text{O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P K R 3.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{en potence.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 Kt} + \text{Q B 4 P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 157.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White's object is to form the en potence at once and afterward to establish the grand left oblique, while the minor crochet covers the right wing against the adverse major front echeloned. The Kt always is preferably developed at Kt 5 in these situations.

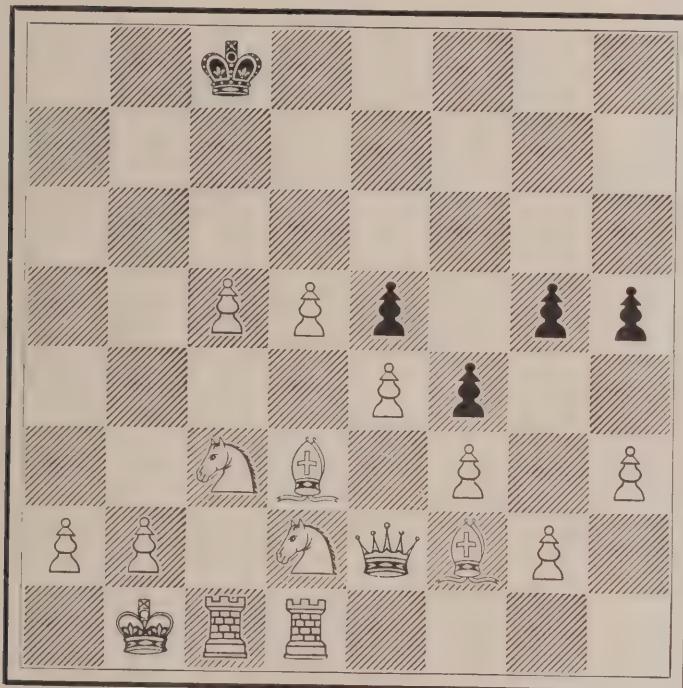
FORMULA No. 74.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M L O A K} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A, reversed}) + \text{P Q } 5 + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P K R } 3. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ Grand Left Oblique.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q B } 6 \underline{\text{P}}, \text{ or Q Kt } 5 \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{ or Q Kt } 5 \underline{\text{B}}, \text{ or Q B } 4 \underline{\text{Kt}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 158.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In this and similar situations a line of operations usually exists, whereby the command of the objective plane may readily be secured. Otherwise, the object of White always is to establish the B P or a piece upon the strategetic objective, without eliminating the white pawn at Q 5.

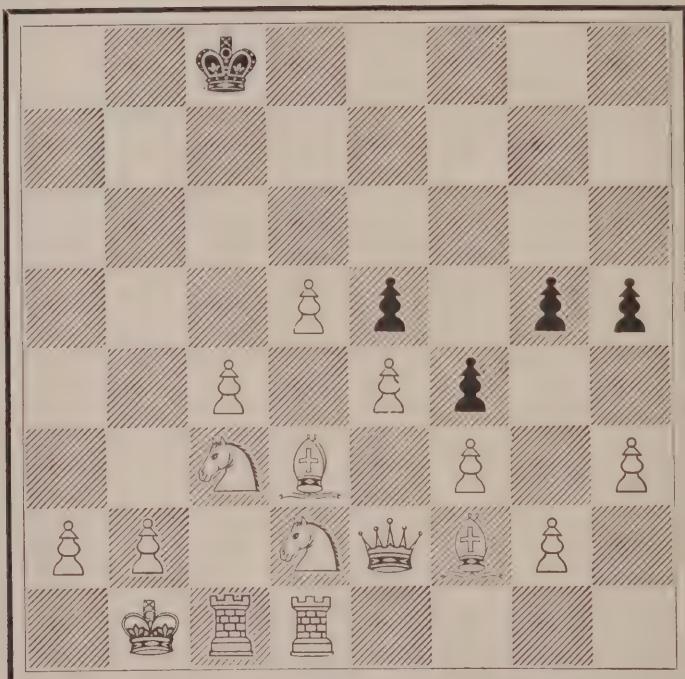
FORMULA No. 75.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{r}
 \text{M L O P K} \\
 + \text{O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M}
 \end{array} \\
 \overline{(\text{O P B 1 A, reversed}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P K R 3.}} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{front aligned.}} \\
 \begin{array}{r}
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B 5 P.}
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 159.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White must push his attack against the objective plane with all vigor, while Black must with like energy attack the logistic horizon.

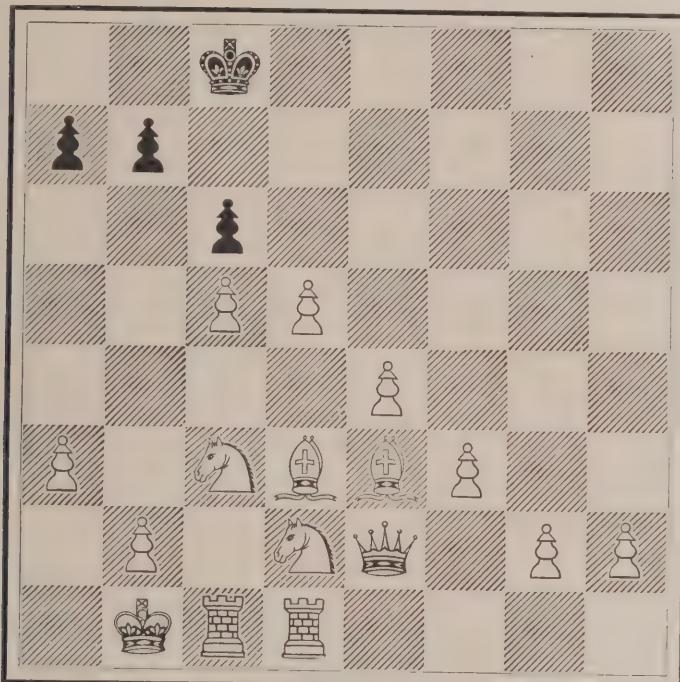
FORMULA No. 76.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L O A W}}{\text{O P L}} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q B 5} + \text{P Q R 3.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{Major Left Enceinte.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q R 2 K, Q Kt 4 P, Q Kt 1 R.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 160.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Never be guilty of the folly of advancing $P - Q 6$, unless on a line of operation.

The proper manœuvre is to advance $P - Kt 4$, thus forming the major enceinte, which latter may be later resolved into the double alignment.

FORMULA No. 77.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M L O D A W} \\ + \text{O P L} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

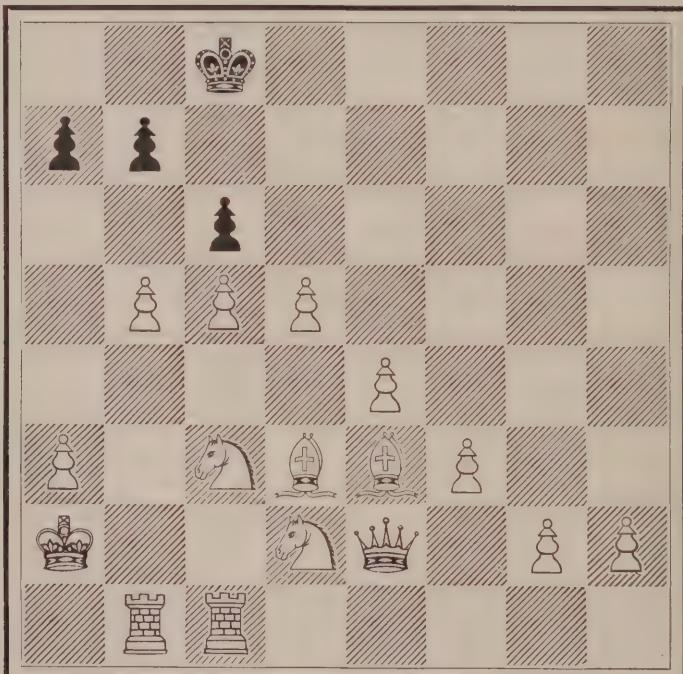
(O P B 1 A, reversed - R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P Q Kt 5 + K Q R 2
+ Q R Q Kt 1 + K R Q B 1.

$$\begin{array}{c} \checkmark \therefore \text{open Q Kt file} \\ \times \text{B. P Q B 3.} \\ \hline \text{D} \\ \therefore \text{Q B 6 O Kt P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 161.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—If Black plays B P \times Q P, always retake with the Kt at B 3.

Never advance the Kt P to Kt 6, nor the O P to Q 6.

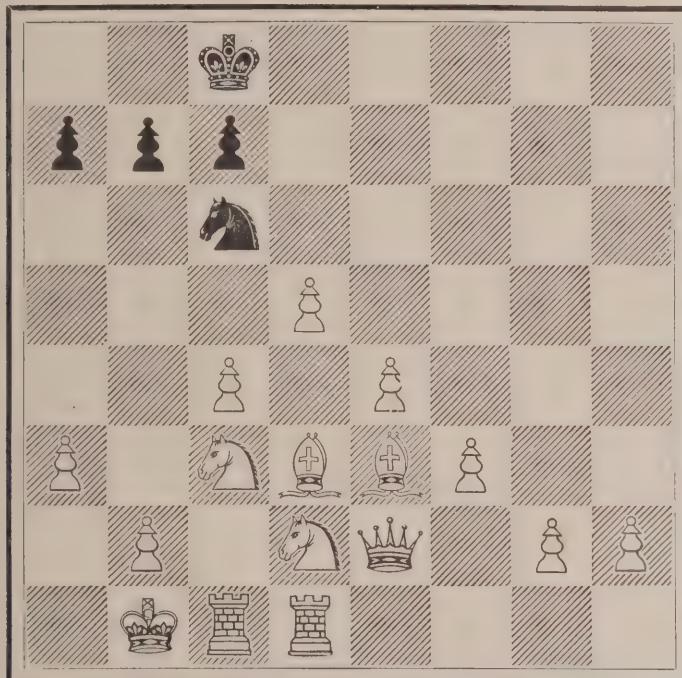
FORMULA No. 78.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L O P W}}{\text{O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A, reversed}) + \text{P Q } 5 + \text{P Q R } 3, \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ front aligned.}} \\
 \frac{\text{D}}{\therefore \text{Q B } 5 \text{ P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI.

FIG. 162.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Whenever the major front is established en potence, never hesitate to form the front aligned by advancing the B P to B 5 on the next move.

All else being equal, the establishment of the front aligned constitutes a won game.

FORMULA No. 79.

$$+ \frac{\text{M L O H W}}{\text{O P L}} < \\ \text{M}$$

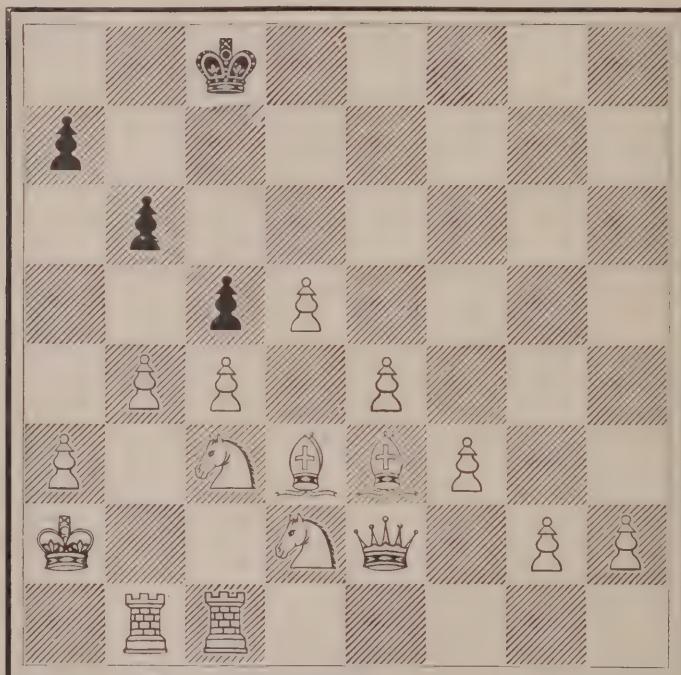
(O P B 1 A, reversed — R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q R 3 + P Q Kt 4 + K Q R 2
+ Q R Q Kt 1 + K R Q B 1.

$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{open Q Kt file.}} \\ \text{D} \\ \underline{\therefore \text{Q B 5 Q Kt P.}}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI.

FIG. 163.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This situation usually results from Black's effort to prevent the alignment of White's major front. White must never fail to open the Kt file by exchanging the Kt P; still he need not do this at once, but may properly await the opportune moment.

FORMULA No. 80.

$$\begin{array}{c} + \text{M L O D A W K} \\ \hline \text{O P L} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

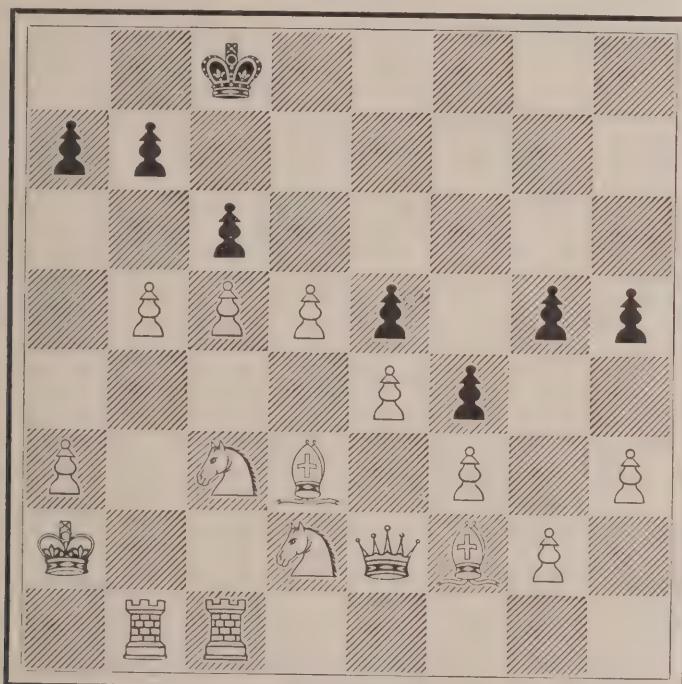
$(\text{O P B } 1 \text{ A, reversed} - \text{B, R, U}) + \text{P Q } 5 + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 5 + \text{P Q R } 3$
 $+ \text{K Q R } 2 + \text{Q B K B } 2 + \text{Q R Q Kt } 1 + \text{K R Q B } 1.$

$$\begin{array}{c} \sqrt{\dots \text{Q Kt file.}} \\ \text{D} \\ \hline \dots \text{Q B } 6 \text{ Q Kt P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI
WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 164.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—White, of course, has a won game, and to finish it off in an elegant manner is the particular object he has in view. The initial step always is to open the Kt file by Kt P × B P.

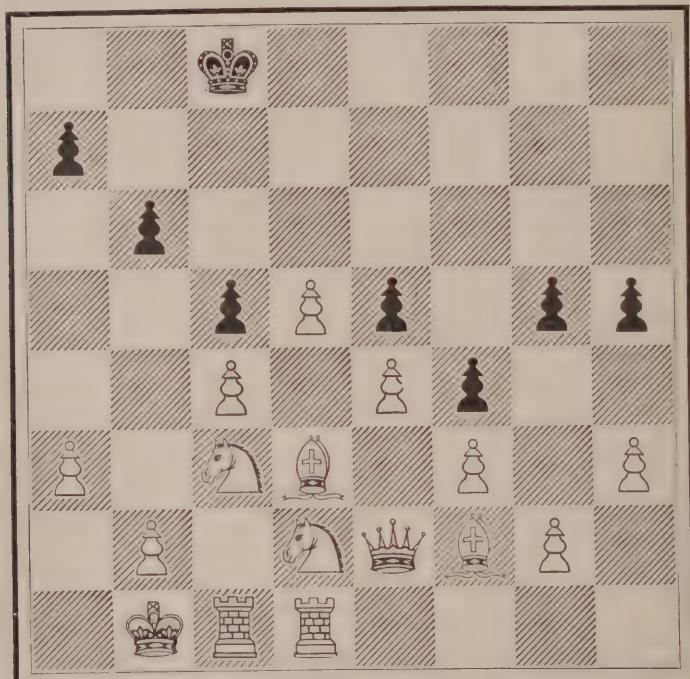
FORMULA No. 81.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + M L O P W K \\
 + O P L \\
 \hline
 M \\
 \hline
 (O P B 1 A, reversed - B, U) + P Q 5 + P Q R 3 + P K R 3 + Q B K B 2. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{echelon.}} \\
 D \\
 \hline
 \therefore Q R 2 \underline{K}, Q Kt 1 \underline{Q} R, Q Kt 4 \underline{P}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 165.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This position invariably necessitates the formation of the echelon.

In such a case always post K at R 2, before advancing Kt P.

FORMULA No. 82.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M L O H W K} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M}
 \end{array} <$$

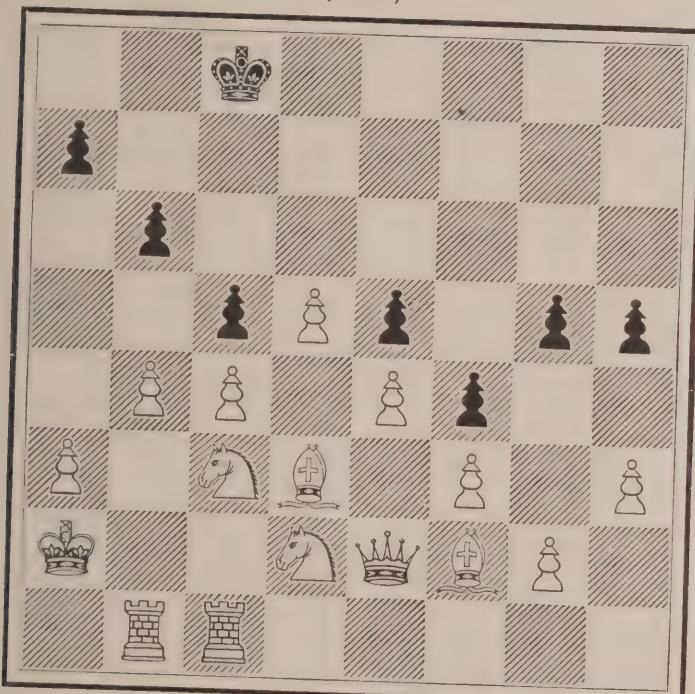
(O P B 1 A, reversed — B, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 3
 + P K R 3 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K R Q B 1 + Q B K B 2.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \checkmark \therefore \text{open Q Kt file.} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q B 5 } \underline{\text{Q Kt P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 166.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation it is sometimes well to double the rooks on the Kt file before exchanging Kt P for the adverse B P, but more frequently this is immaterial.

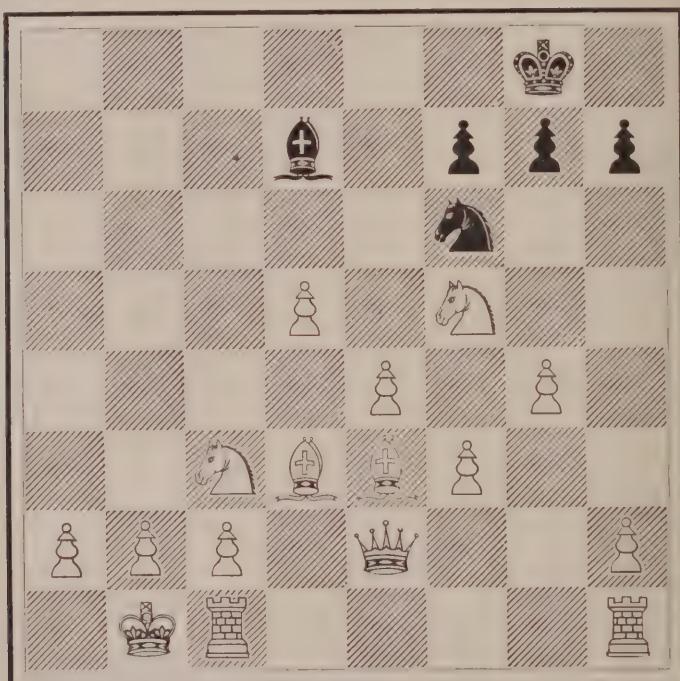
FORMULA No. 83.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L O J}}{\text{O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 2 A, reversed} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q Kt 4} + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{en potence} + \text{crochet aligned.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 } \underline{\text{Kt}}, \text{Q B 4 } \underline{\text{P}}, \text{Q R 4 } \underline{\text{P}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 167.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — The sacrifice of the Kt for the Kt P must always be borne in mind by White in these situations.

FORMULA No. 84.

$$+ \frac{\text{M L O A J}}{\text{O P R}} < \\ \text{M}$$

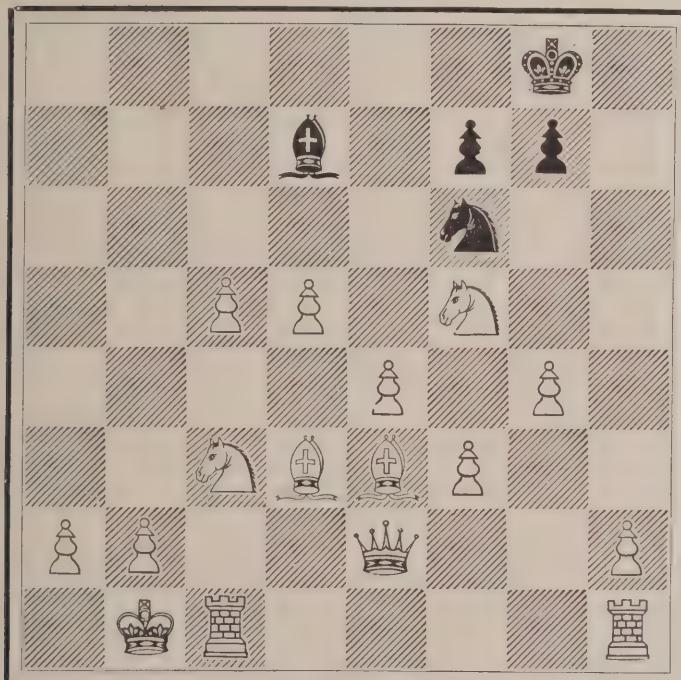
(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P K Kt 4
+ K Kt K B 5.

$$\sqrt{\begin{array}{c} \therefore \text{crochet aligned} \\ \times \text{B. K Kt P.} \\ \text{D} \end{array}} \\ \therefore \text{K R 4 P, K R 5 P, K R 6 P.}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 168.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Always remember that there is no quicker nor safer way of winning the game, than by the march of the R P to R 6 after the formation of the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 85.

$$\begin{array}{c} + \text{M L O P J} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P K Kt 4 + K Kt K B 5.

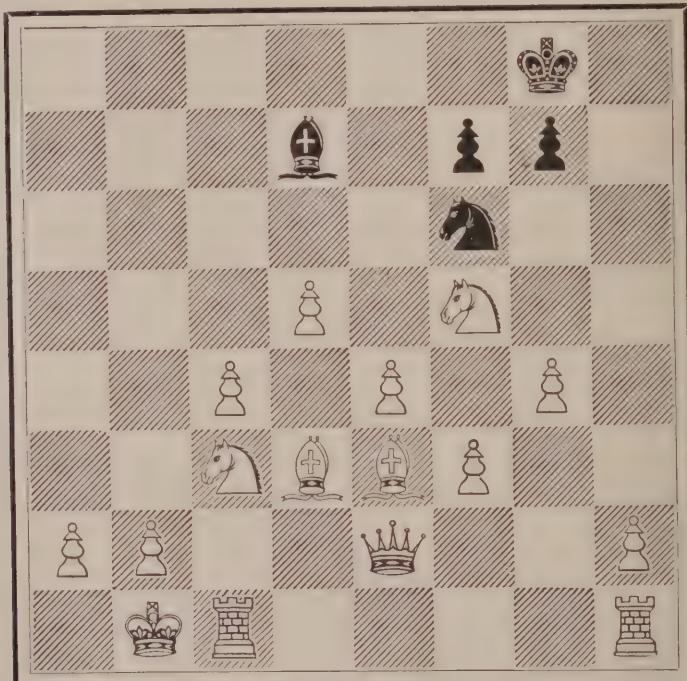
$\sqrt{\therefore \text{crochet aligned.}}$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \hline \therefore \text{K R 4 P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 169.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — The en potence is invaluable in these situations, as it prevents the disintegration of the strategic front by the adverse pawns. The front must always be relied on to cover the prime strategic point when attacking by the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 86.

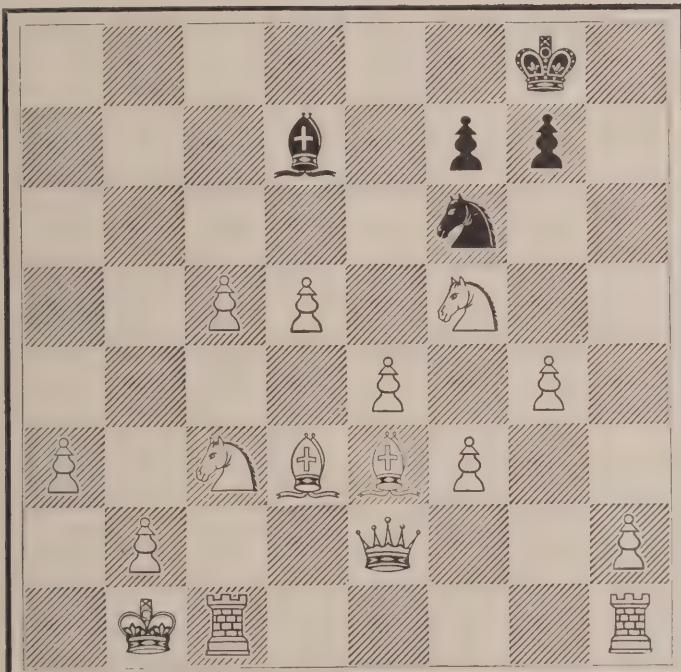
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M L O A W J} \\
 - \text{O P R} \\
 \hline
 \text{M}
 \end{array} <$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P Q R 3
 + P K Kt 4 + K Kt K B 5.
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{crochet aligned.}}
 \frac{\text{D}}{\therefore \text{K R 4 K R P.}}

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 170.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White wins in this situation with ease. Black is on the defensive on both wings. This is one of the few situations in which White ever is justified in attacking on both flanks simultaneously.

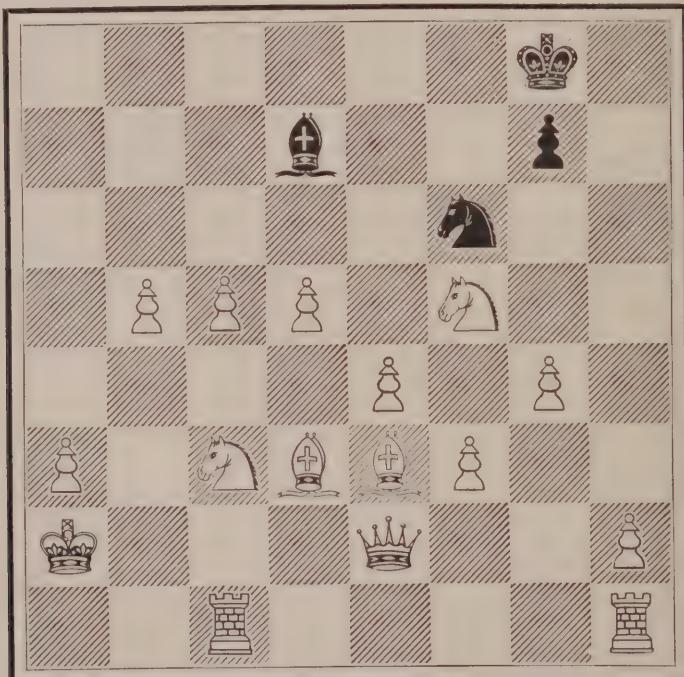
FORMULA No. 87.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \overbrace{\text{M L O D A W J}}^{\leftarrow} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B I A}, \text{reversed} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q B 5} + \text{P Q Kt 5} \\
 + \text{P Q R 3} + \text{P K Kt 4} + \text{K Kt K B 5} + \text{K Q R 2}. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{crochet aligned.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K R 4 K R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBlique DOUBLY ALIGNED EN APPUI
WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 171.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White's superiority in position is manifest, and he can win either on the right or on the left.

The attack always, however, should be directed against the objective plane in preference to any other line of manœuvre, but the first line of operations presented must always be accepted.

FORMULA No. 88.

$$+ \frac{M L O P W J}{O P R} < \\ M$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q R 3 + P K Kt 4
+ K Kt K B 5.

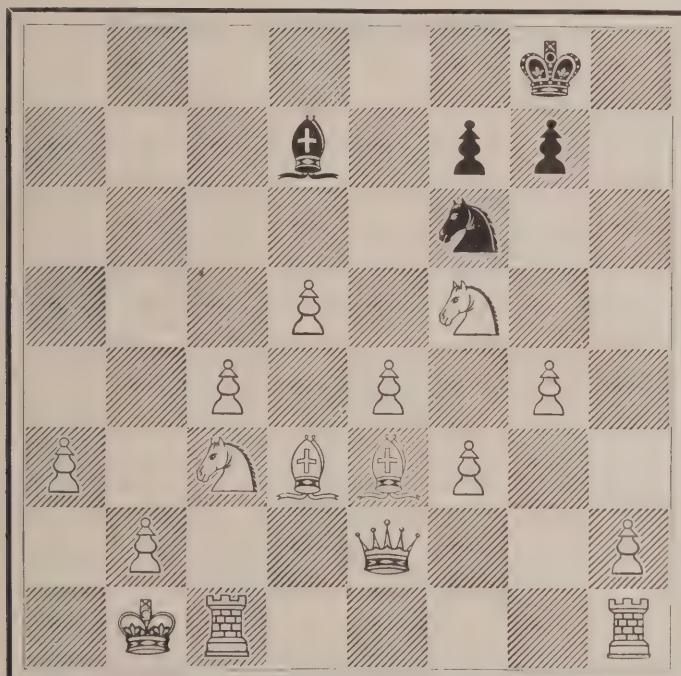
\checkmark ∵ ∴ crochet aligned.

$$\frac{D}{\therefore K R 4 \underline{K R P}.}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 172.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This is another winning position for White, the proper process being the formation of the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 89.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M L O H W J} \\ + \text{O P R} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 3
+ P K Kt 4 + K Kt K B 5.

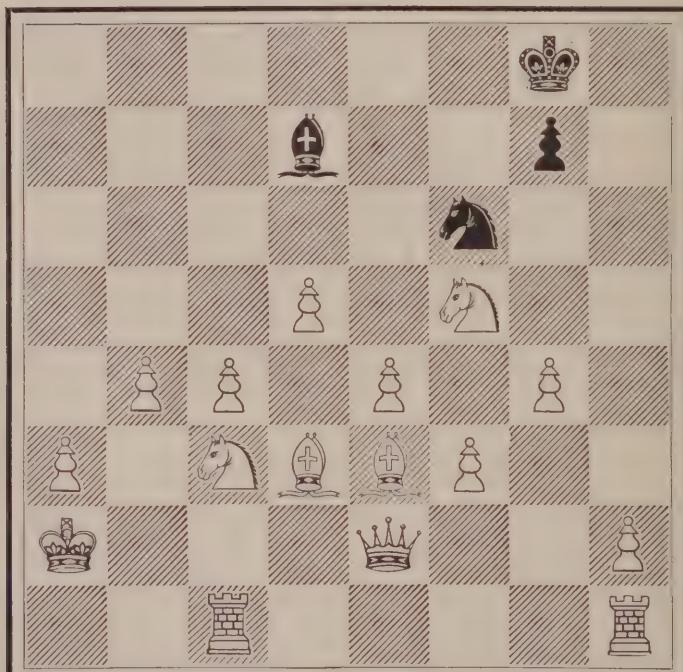
\checkmark ∴ crochet aligned.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \hline \text{∴ K R 4 K R P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 173.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This is a powerful formation, and all to White's advantage. It usually results from the eccentric manœuvres of Black in the location of his prime strategetic point.

White should, of course, at once attack with the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 90.

$$+ \frac{M L O C A}{O P R} < \\ M$$

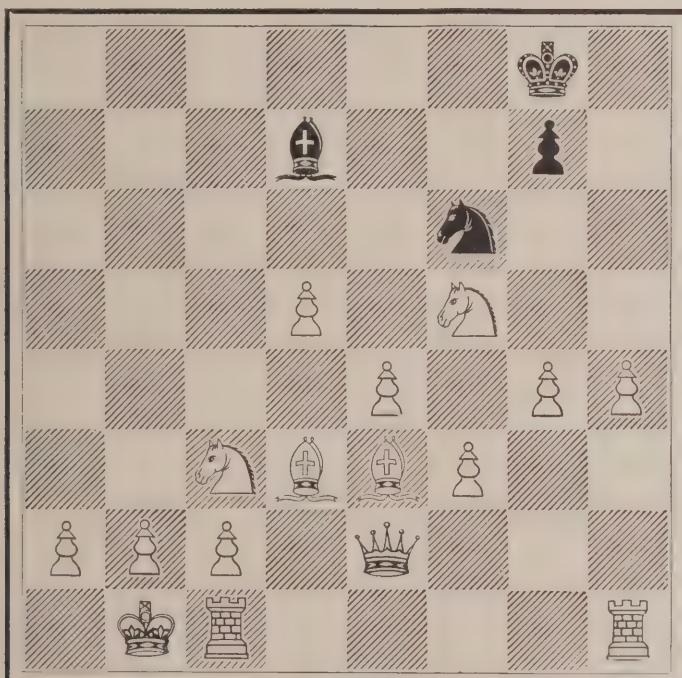
(O P B 2 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P K Kt 4 + P K R 4
+ K Kt K B 5.

$$\sqrt{\times B. K Kt P.} \\ D \\ \therefore K R 5 \underline{K R P}, K R 6 \underline{K R P}.$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 174.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation, if Black menaces a strong attack by the left, it usually is well to reinforce the major front with the en potence for the purpose of covering the prime strategetic point, and preventing the disintegration of the strategic front.

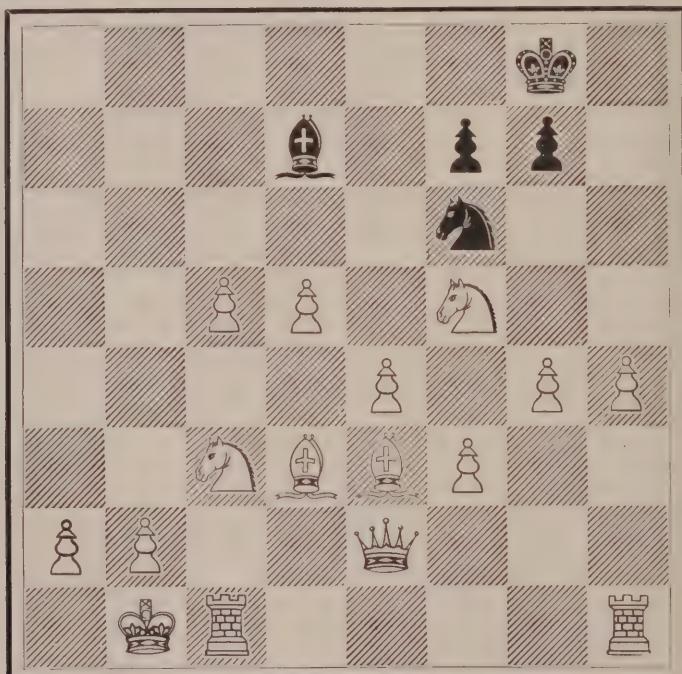
FORMULA No. 91.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \text{M L O A C A} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q B 5} + \text{P K Kt 4} \\
 + \text{P K R 4} + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{K R 5 } \underline{\text{K R P}}, \text{K R 6 } \underline{\text{K R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 175.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This aligned front is not so desirable as the front en potence, unless the attack takes the direction of the left, for the purpose of acting against the logistic horizon on a line of operations.

FORMULA No. 92.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{M L O P C A} \\ + \text{O P R} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

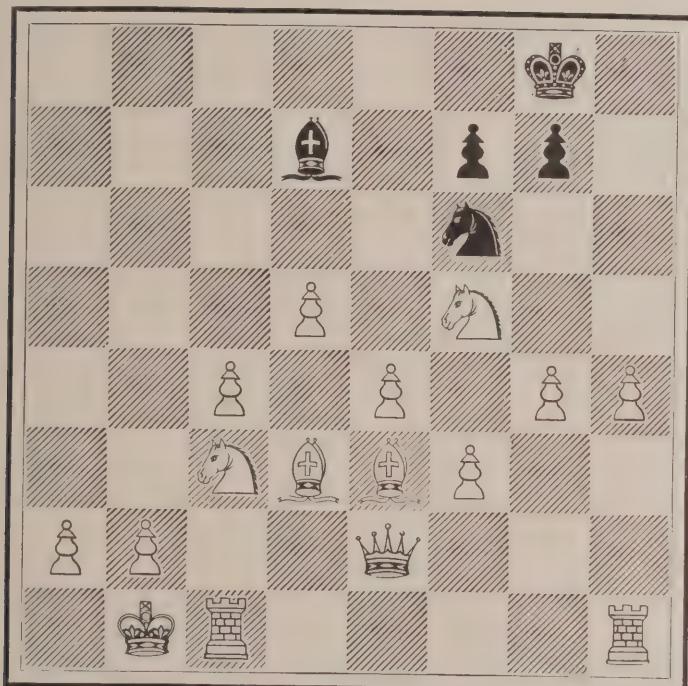
(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P K Kt 4 + P K R 4
+ K Kt K B 5.

$$\begin{array}{c} \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\ \text{D} \\ \hline \therefore \text{K R 5 K R P, K R 6 K R P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE WITH CROCHET
ALIGNED.

FIG. 176.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This is a model front when operating with the crochet aligned. Black is, and must remain, absolutely on the defensive, or attack at a great disadvantage.

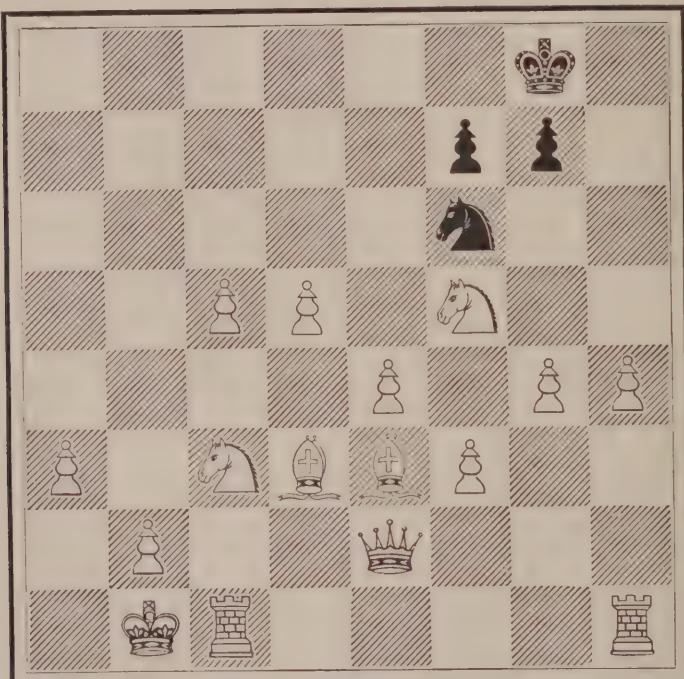
FORMULA No. 93.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 +\frac{\text{M L O A W C A}}{\text{O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{O P B 1 A, reversed} - \text{Kt, R, U}) + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q B 5} + \text{P Q R 3} \\
 + \text{P K Kt 4} + \text{P K R 4} + \text{K Kt K B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{K R 5 } \underline{\text{K R P}}, \text{K R 6 } \underline{\text{K R P}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 177.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — The front aligned in these situations is not desirable unless Black has serious defects existing in his left flank.

Whenever the objective plane is not posted at its extremity, the strategic front is stronger en potence than in any other formation.

FORMULA No. 94.

$$\begin{array}{c} + \text{M L O P W C A} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q R 3 + P K Kt 4
+ P K R 4 + K Kt K B 5.

$\sqrt{\times \text{B.K Kt P.}}$

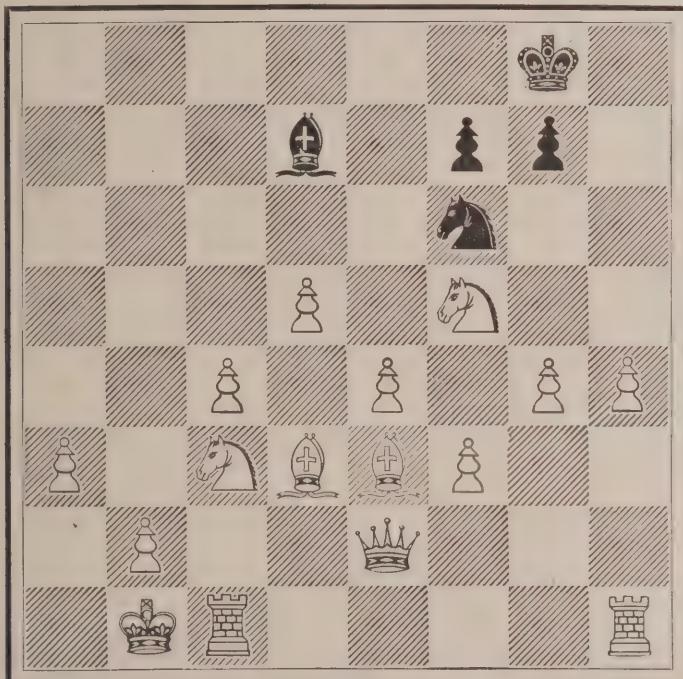
D

$\therefore \text{K R 5 K R P, K R 6 K R P.}$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 178.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The appui in these situations is not desirable, as it offers a chance of success to a proper attack by Black, should any opportunity arise for the sacrifice of a piece for the white R P and Kt P.

FORMULA No. 95.

$$+ \frac{\text{M L O H W C A}}{\text{O P R}} < \\ \text{M}$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 3
+ P K Kt 4 + P K R 4 + K Q R 2 + K Kt K B 5.

$$\sqrt{\times \text{B. P K Kt 2.}}$$

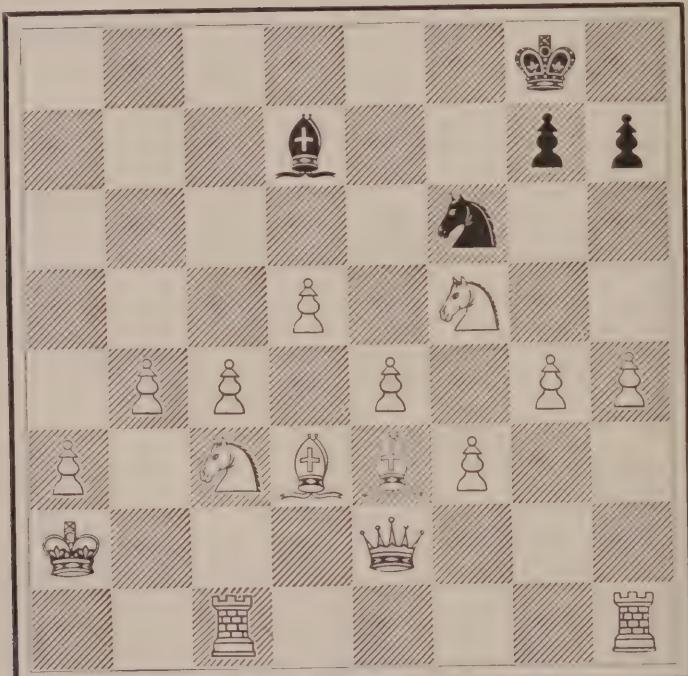
D

.: K R 5 K R P, K R 6 K R P.

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE ECHELONED EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 179.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—To permit the formation of this powerful front, Black must manœuvre with great eccentricity.

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This front, properly constructed, gives the advantage in position against a minor front of the same class; but it is inferior to a front directed either by the right or by the left, or by the right refused.

FORMULA No. 96.

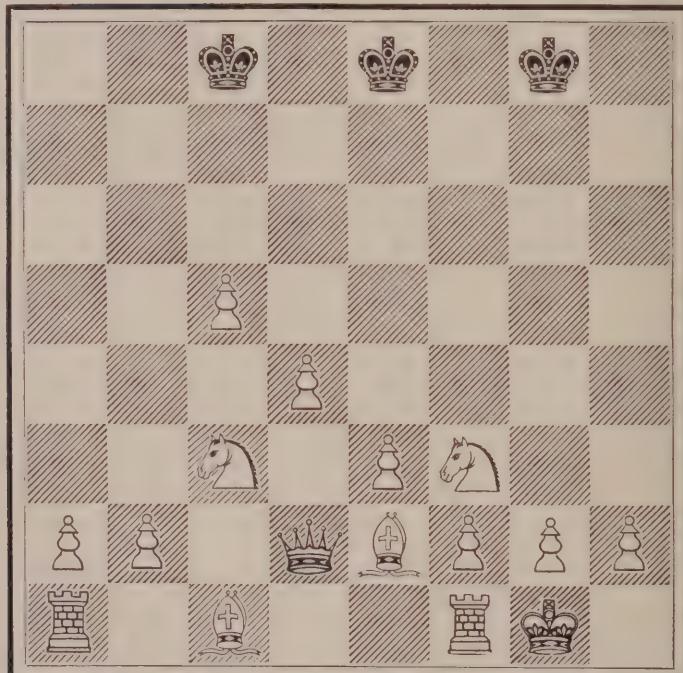
$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{M L O R} \\
 + \text{O P C, Q P R, Q P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{B, R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\quad \therefore \text{en puissance.}} \\
 \hline
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt } 4 \text{ Q Kt P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

White.

FIG. 180.

(Black.)



(White.)

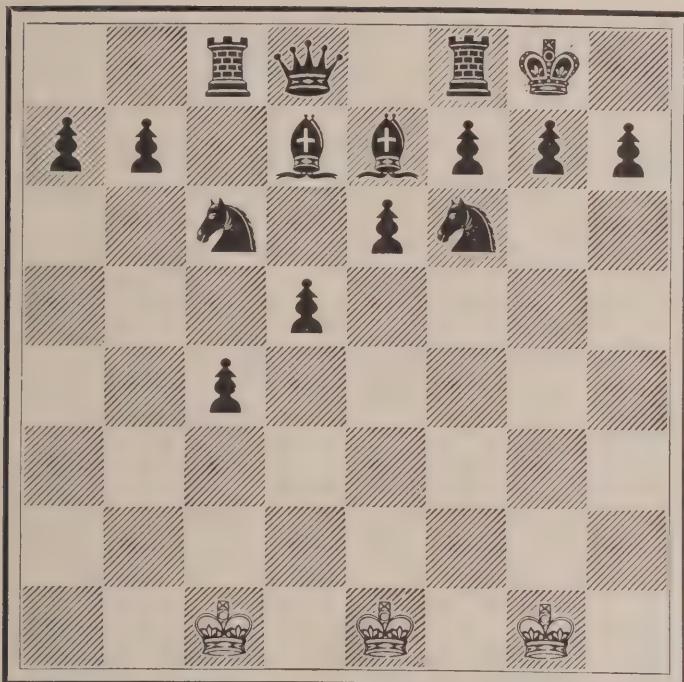
MAXIM.—This front is a desirable front for White to establish only when Black has adopted the major left oblique refused.

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

Black.

FIG. 181.

(Black.)



(White.)

FORMULA No. 97.

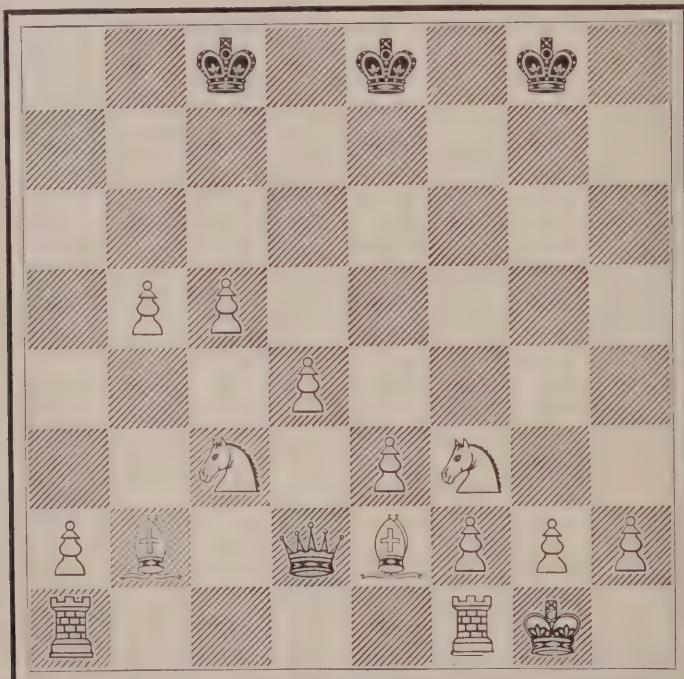
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O R A} \\
 + \text{O P C, O P R, O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ Major Left Enceinte Refused.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 4 \underline{\text{Q R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

White.

FIG. 182.

(Black.)



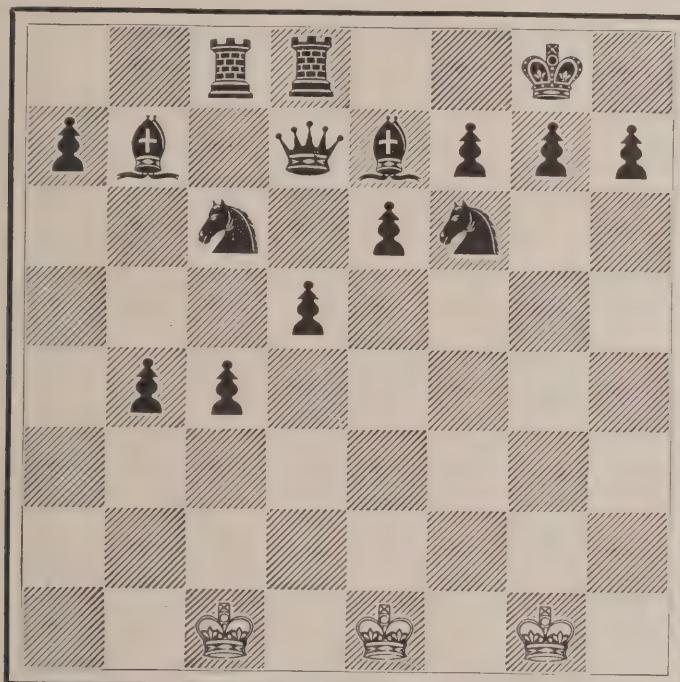
(White.)

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

Black.

FIG. 183.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front is legitimate for both White and for Black, but its weakness consists in the fact that it has not the direction of the objective plane, and does not permit of the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 98.

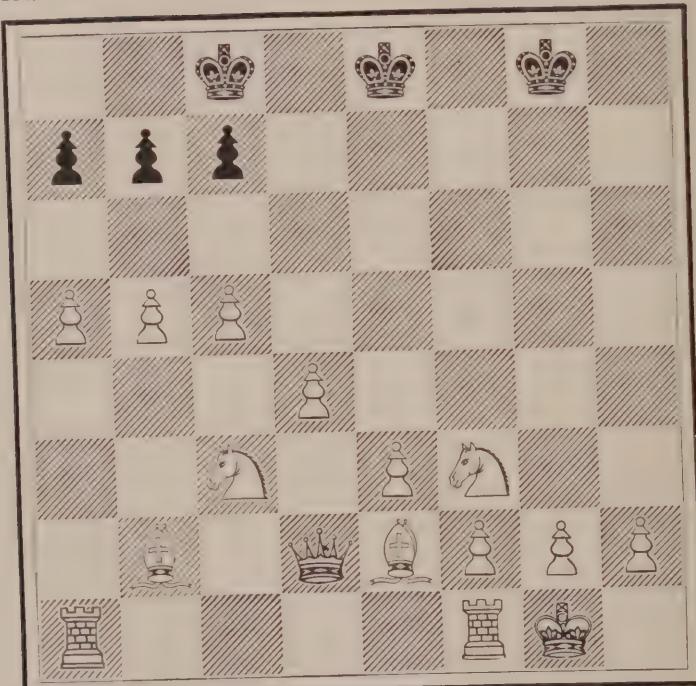
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L O R D A} \\
 + \text{O P C, O P R, O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 5 + \text{P Q R } 5. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ open Q R file.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt } 6 \underline{\text{Q Kt P}}, \text{ or } \therefore \text{Q R } 6 \underline{\text{Q R P}}.
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND DOUBLY
ALIGNED.

White.

FIG. 184.

(Black.)



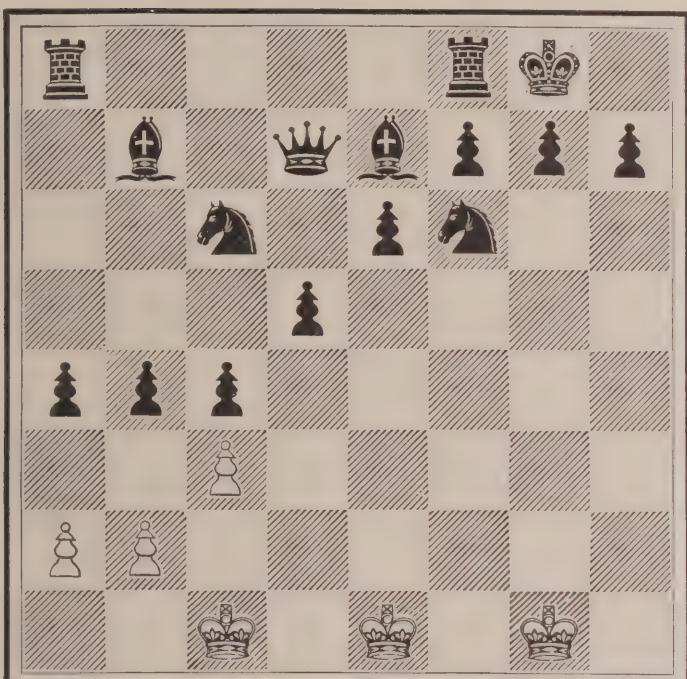
(White.)

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND DOUBLY
ALIGNED.

Black.

FIG. 185.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This front, all else being equal, is certain to pierce the adverse left wing, and to ensure the queening of a kindred pawn.

FORMULA No. 99.

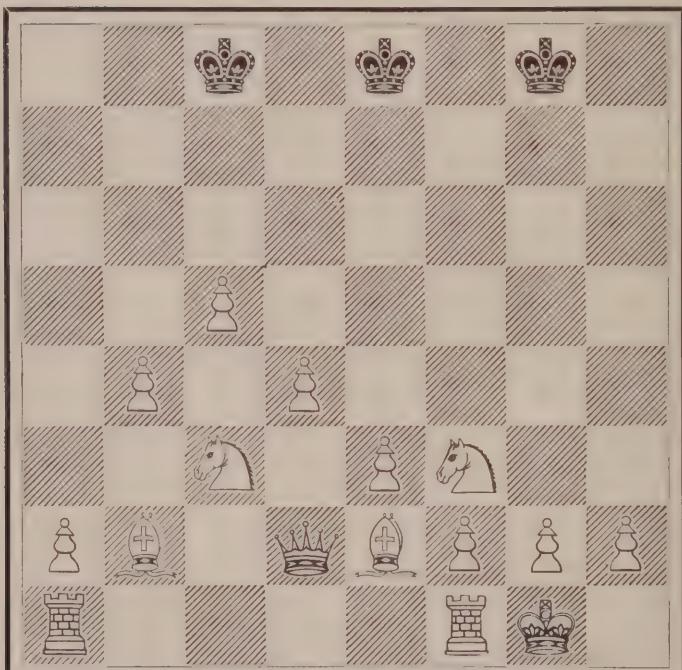
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L O R P}}{\text{O P C, O P R, O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 4. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ echelon.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R } 4} \underline{\text{Q R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN POTENCE.

White.

FIG. 186.

(Black.)



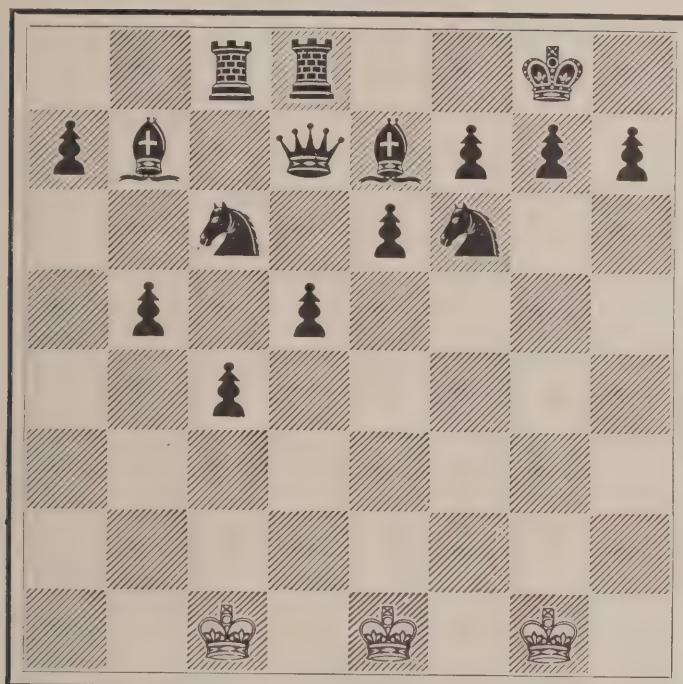
(White.)

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN POTENCE.

Black.

FIG. 187.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This en potence to the major left oblique refused is a very necessary formation. It usually is developed from the fianchetto. It properly may be reinforced by the echelon, but the most powerful method is to convert it into the major left enceinte (O P R).

FORMULA No. 100.

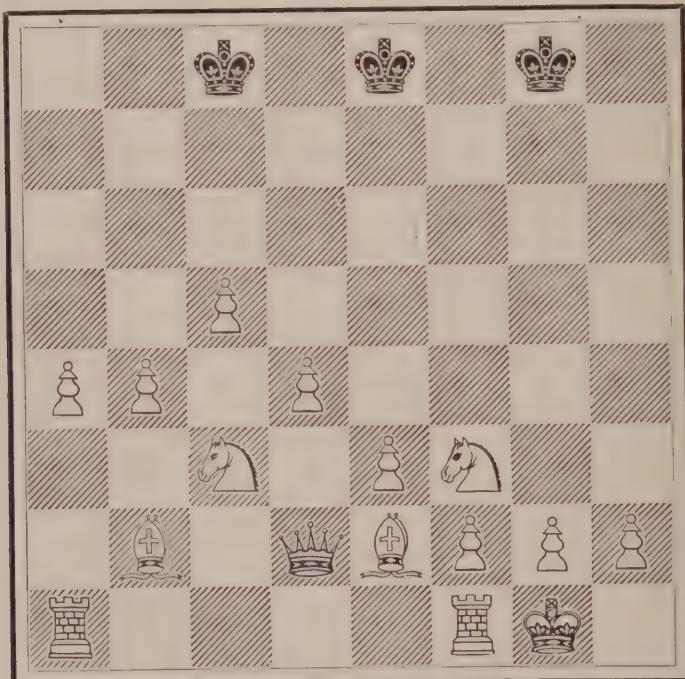
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L O R H}}{\text{O P C, O P R, O P L}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{R, U} + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 4 + \text{P Q R } 4) \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{Major Left Enceinte Refused.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q Kt P Q Kt P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ECHELONED.

White.

FIG. 188.

(Black.)



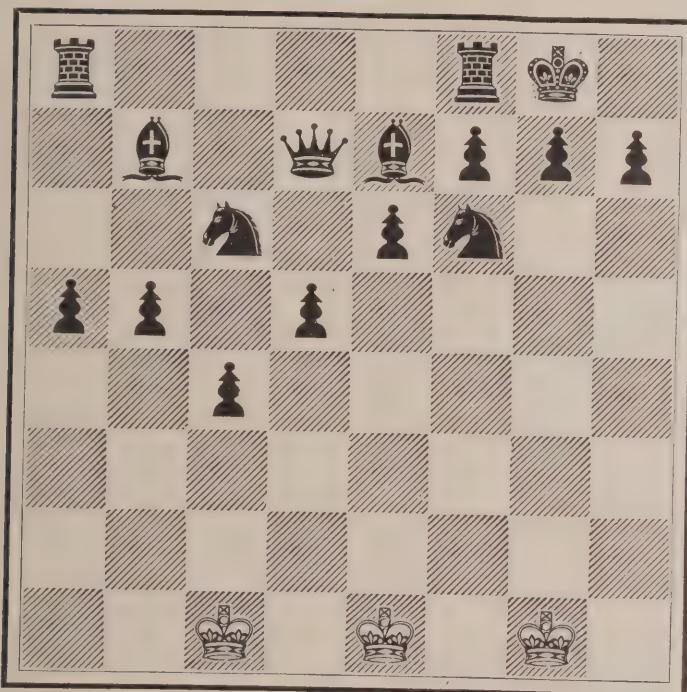
(White.)

MAJOR LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ECHELONED.

Black.

FIG. 189.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This powerful formation ensures the superiority in position on the left.

Its weakness lies in the exposure of the King's side to the attack of the right oblique.

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE REFUSED.

This front, properly constructed, gives, all else being equal, a winning logistic line of operation against the logistic horizon.

FORMULA No. 101.

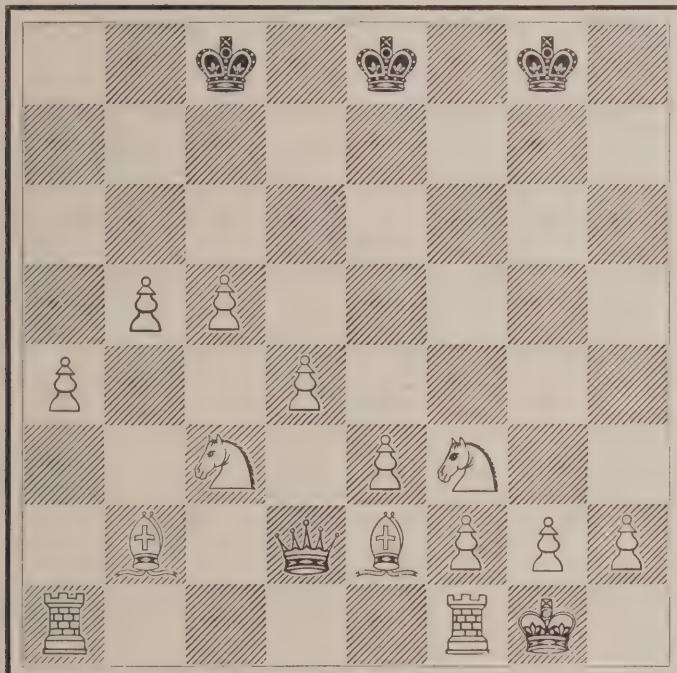
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \quad \text{M L E R} \\
 \text{O P C, O P R, O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M} \\
 (\text{C P B } 1 - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 5 + \text{P Q Kt } 5 + \text{P Q R } 4. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{ Major Left Oblique Refused and Doubly Aligned.}} \\
 \quad \quad \quad \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R } 5 \underline{\text{Q R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE REFUSED.

White.

FIG. 190.

(Black.)



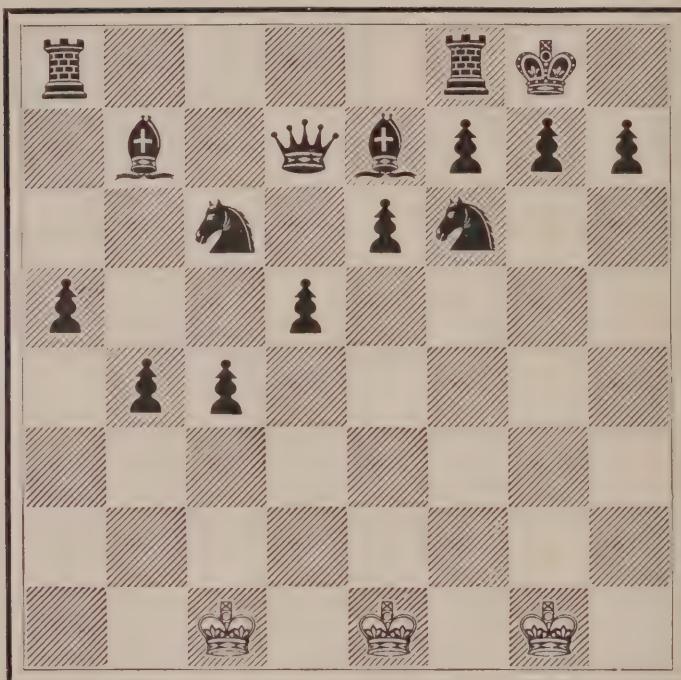
(White.)

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE REFUSED.

Black.

FIG. 191.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This formation is decisive of the advantage on the Queen's wing, and inaugurates the process which disintegrates the adverse right oblique.

But the weakness of all these fronts directed by the left refused is, that the prime strategetic point is located on the wing refused.

FORMULA No. 102.

$$\begin{array}{c} + \text{M L E W} \\ - \text{O P L} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array}$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 3
+ K Q R 2 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K R Q B 1.

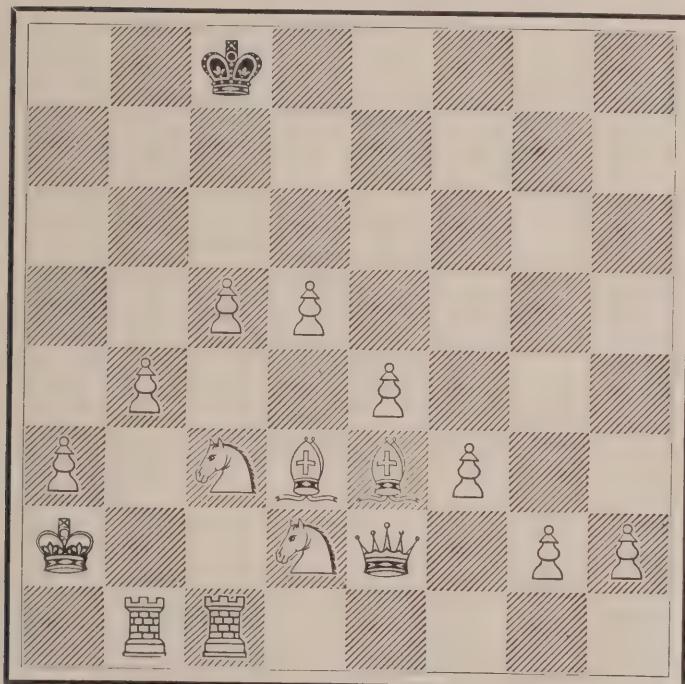
$\sqrt{\therefore \text{Major Left Oblique Doubly Aligned.}}$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \hline \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 Q Kt P.} \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE EN APPUI.

FIG. 192.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This powerful position is decisive of the advantage on the Queen's wing when attacking by the left oblique.

FORMULA No. 103.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L E W K} \\
 + \text{O P L} \\
 \hline
 \text{M}
 \end{array}
 <$$

(O P B 1 A, reversed — R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 3
 + P K R 3 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K R Q B 1 + K Q R 2.

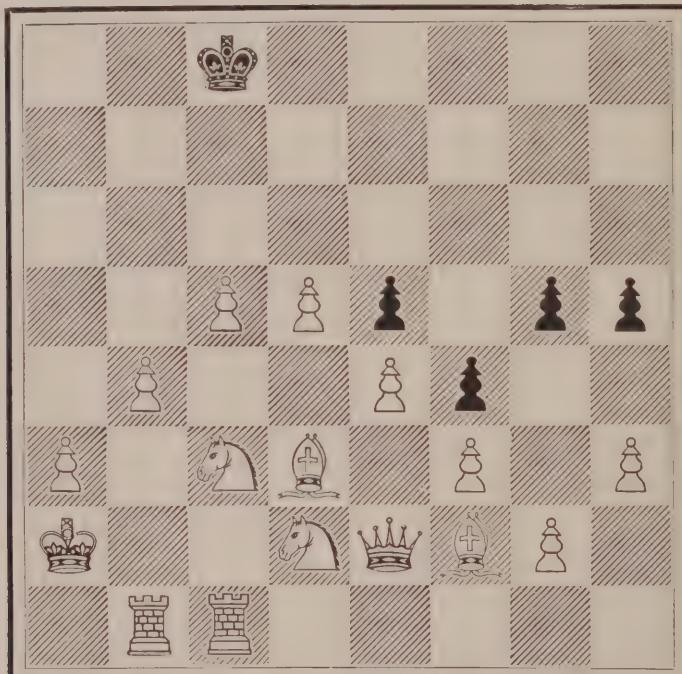
$\sqrt{\therefore \text{Major Left Oblique Doubly Aligned.}}$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{Q Kt 5 } \underline{\text{Q Kt P.}}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE EN APPUI WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 193.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—In this and similar situations White will gain command of the objective plane before Black can profit by occupying the logistic horizon and uniting with his hypothetical force.

FORMULA No. 104.

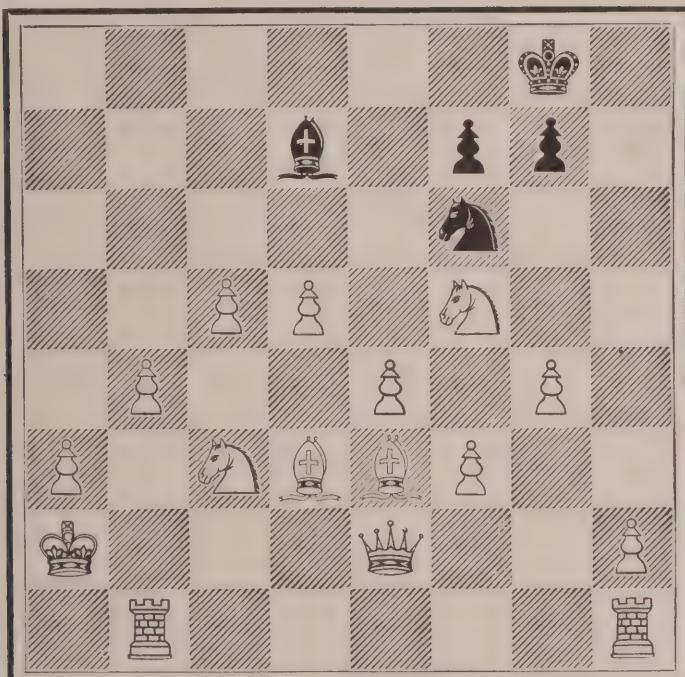
$$\begin{array}{c}
 + \frac{\text{M L E W J}}{\text{O P R}} < \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \{ \text{O P B 1 A, reversed} - \text{Kt, R, U} \} + \text{P Q 5} + \text{P Q B 5} + \text{P Q Kt 4} \\
 + \text{P Q R 3} + \text{P K Kt 4} + \text{Q R Q Kt 1} + \text{K Kt K B 5}. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{crochet aligned.}}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K R 4 K R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE EN APPUI WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 194.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White will win by the advance of Q R P to R 6 after the formation of the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 105.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{M L E W C A} \\
 + \text{O P R} \\
 \hline
 \text{M}
 \end{array} <$$

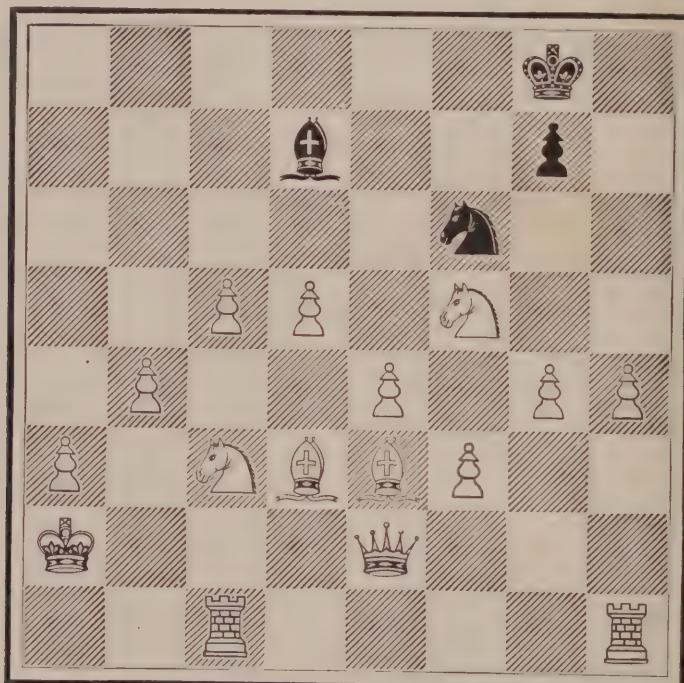
(O P B 1 A, reversed — Kt, R, U) + P Q 5 + P Q B 5 + P Q Kt 4
 + P Q R 3 + P K Kt 4 + P Q R 4 + K Q R 2 + K Kt K B 5.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. P Kt 2.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K R 5 K R P, K R 6 K R P.}
 \end{array}$$

MAJOR LEFT ENCEINTE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 195.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Black is obliged to expose either the objective plane or the logistic horizon. Thus is created a strategical weakness of which White can readily avail by lines of operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE.

Properly constructed, this front constitutes a winning superiority in position in all situations in which the objective plane is located on the centre or on the King's wing.

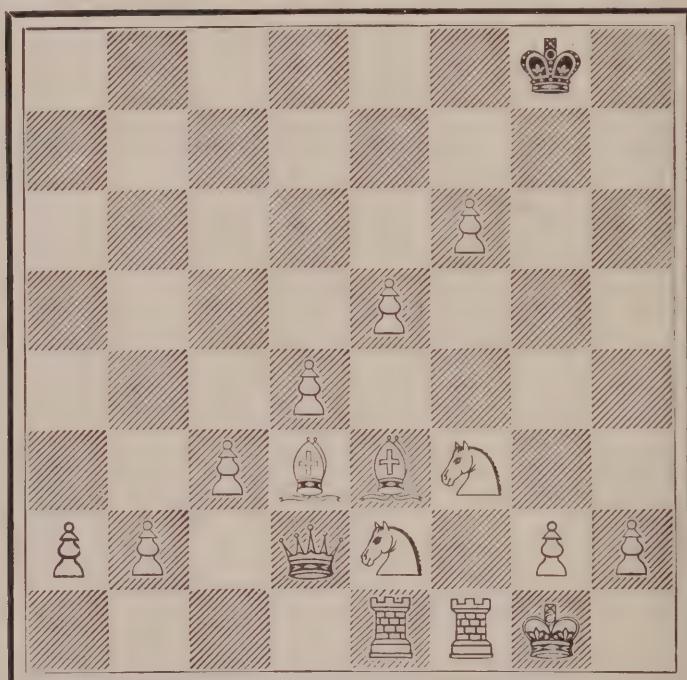
FORMULA No. 106.

G	R	O
O	P	R
M		
<hr/> Major Right Oblique + P K B 6. <hr/>		
$\sqrt{\therefore \text{O.P.}}$		
D		
<hr/> Strategic Line of Operation.		

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 196.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — In this situation the object of White is to maintain a piece at K B 6 and to prevent the disintegration of his front. Consequently the K B P rarely should occupy K B 6, unless supported by a piece in addition to the K P.

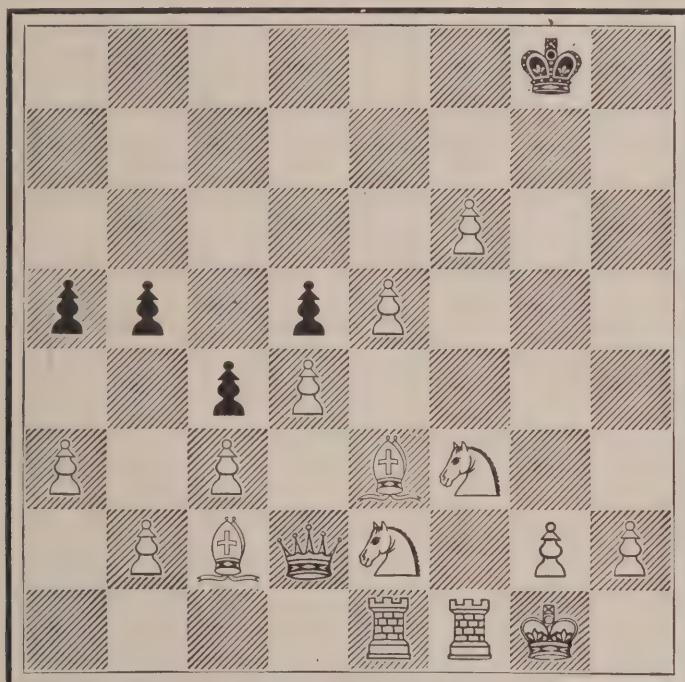
FORMULA No. 107.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G R O K} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{Major Right Oblique} + \text{P K B } 6 + \text{P Q R } 3. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{O P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Strategic Line of Operation.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 197.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — If the grand front is established, it will not be necessary to form the minor crochet. Otherwise, this precaution should not be neglected, whenever the opponent establishes the major left oblique refused and echeloned.

FORMULA No. 108.

G R O J <
 O P L
 M

(Major Right Oblique — R, Q, U) + P K B 6 + P Q Kt 4 + Kt Q B 5.

$\checkmark \therefore O P .$

D

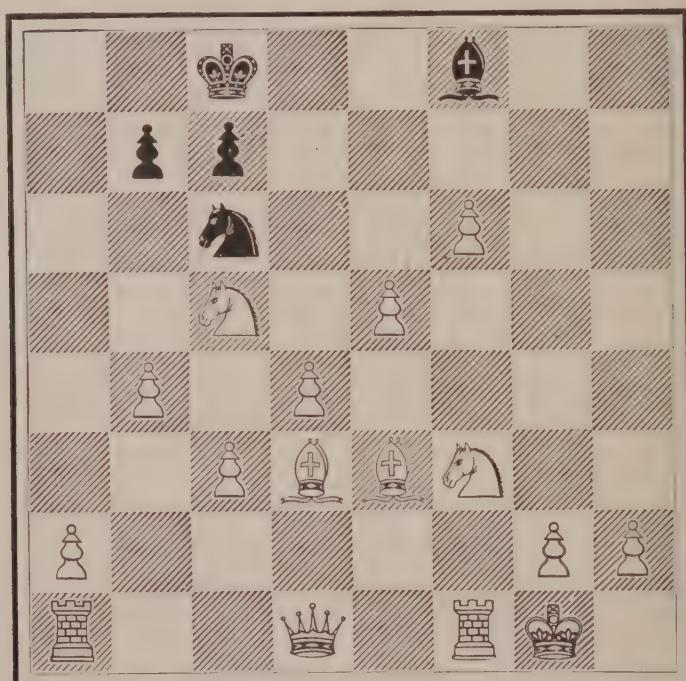
If Strategic Line of Operation then $\therefore Q R 4 Q R P .$

If Logistic Line of Operation then $\therefore K Kt 5 Kt .$

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 198.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White may support the grand front en potence, or exchange the K B P, thus reducing his front to a major front. But in all cases he should form the crochet aligned at once.

FORMULA No. 109.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G R O A W} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \text{---} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Right Oblique - R, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 6 + P K R 3 + K K R 2.

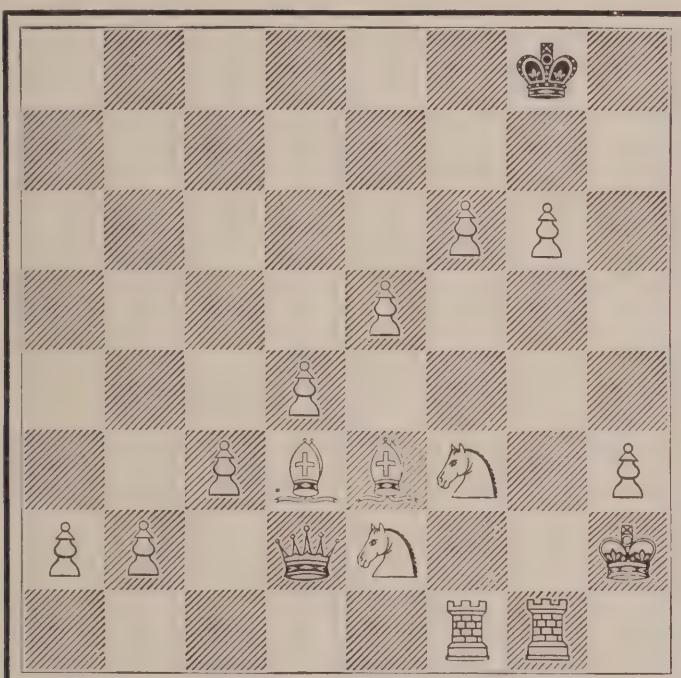
$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{O P.}} \\ \text{D}$$

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 199.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front needs no comment. Black's situation manifestly is hopeless, as the objective plane is open to the attack of the entire White force.

FORMULA No. 110.

$$\frac{G R O P W}{O P R} <$$

M

(Major Right Oblique — R, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 5 + P K R 3 + K K R 2.

 $\sqrt{\therefore O P.}$

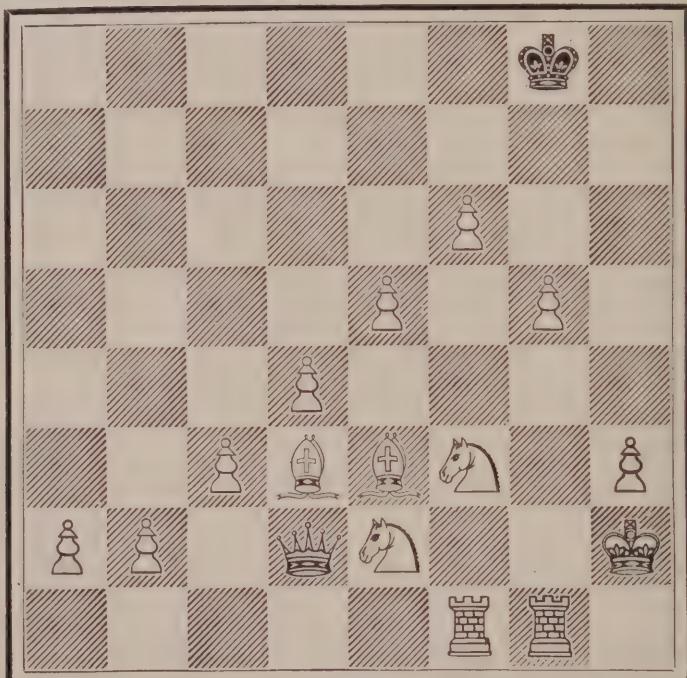
D

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI.

FIG. 200.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This is one of the most powerful of the single fronts. The accumulation of the White force against the Black King obviously cannot be prevented.

FORMULA No. 111.

G R O A W K
 —————
 O P R
 M

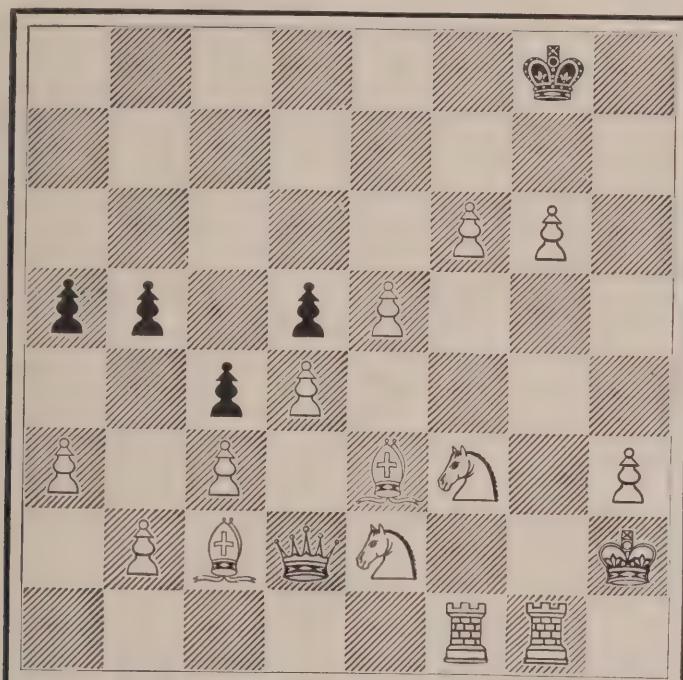
(Major Right Oblique — R, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 6 + P K R 3 + P Q R 3
 + K K R 2.

√ ∵ O P.
 D
 Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 201.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This situation, like all the grand fronts, is an easy winning position for White.

The particular line of strategic operations, however, varies in all, according to the value of the objective plane.

FORMULA No. 112.

$$\frac{\text{G R O P W K}}{\text{O P R}} < \\ \text{M}$$

(Major Right Oblique - R, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 5 + P K R 3
+ P Q R 3 + K K R 2.

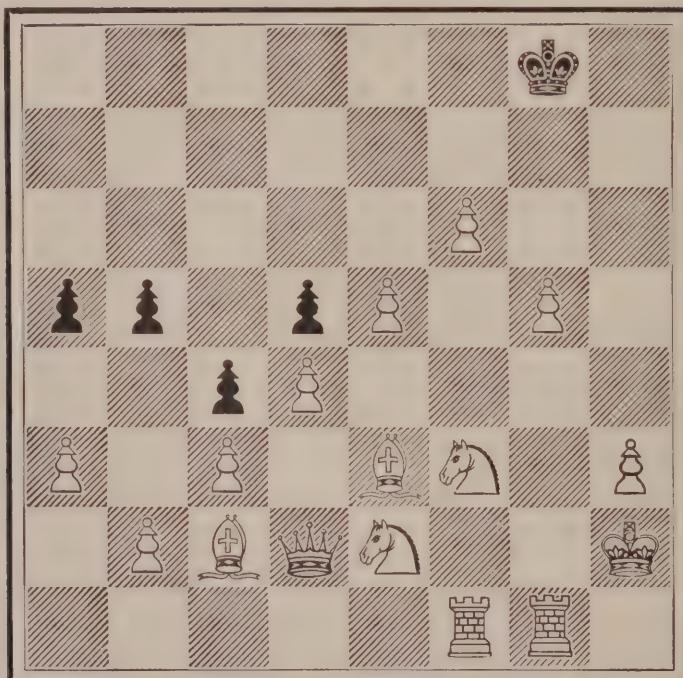
$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{O P.}} \\ \text{D}$$

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 202

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Black has not time even to attempt to attack the White salient, which on this account is well secured, even without the protection of the crochet.

FORMULA No. 113.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G R O A W J} \\ \text{O P L} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Right Oblique — R, Q, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 6 + P K R 3
+ P Q Kt 4 + K K R 2 + Kt Q B 5.

$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{O P.}}$$

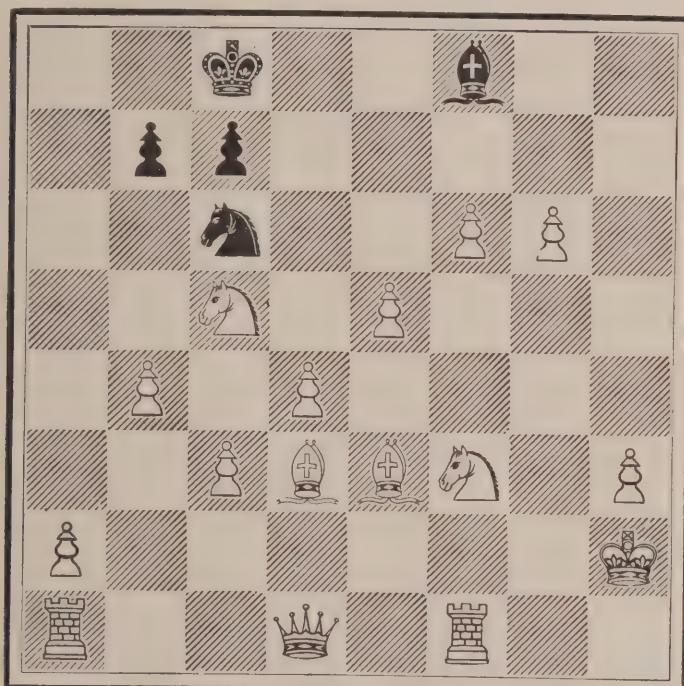
$$\text{D}$$

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 203.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White may attack either by the right or by the left, according to whichever flank presents the most desirable line of operations.

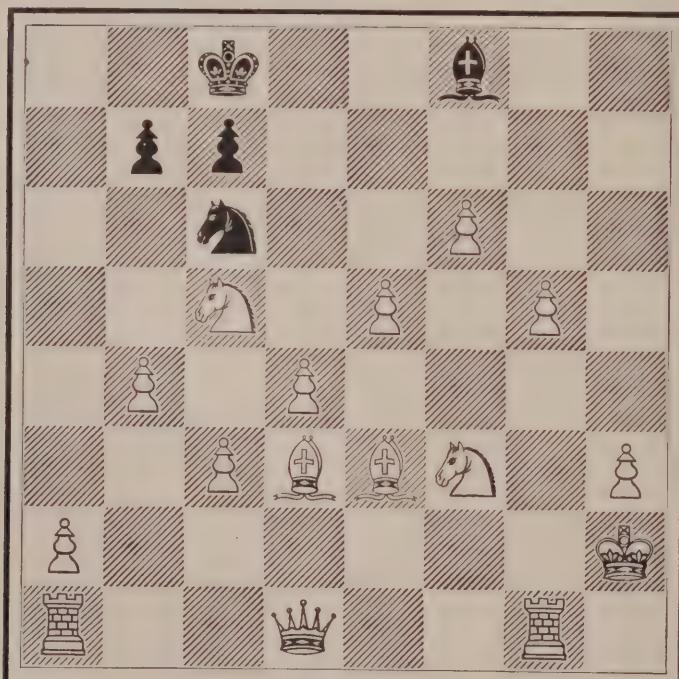
FORMULA No. 114.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G R O P W J} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{Major Right Oblique} - \text{R, Q, U}) + \text{P K B 6} + \text{P K Kt 5} + \text{P K R 3} \\
 + \text{P Q Kt 4} + \text{Kt Q B 5.} \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{O P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Strategic Line of Operation.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 204.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — The attack on the right is merely supplementary to the attack by the crochet aligned.

FORMULA No. 115.

G R O C A
 ——————
 O P L
 M

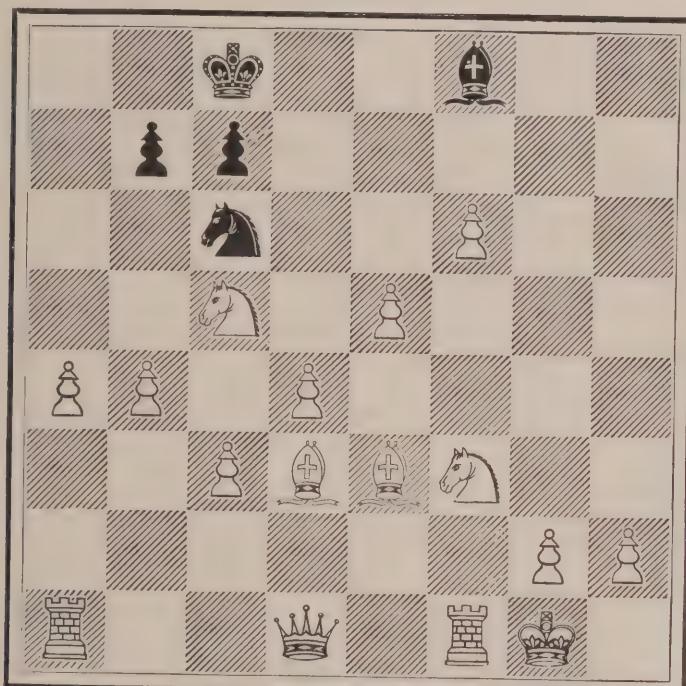
(Major Right Oblique — R, Q, U) + P K B 6 + P Q Kt 4 + P Q R 4
 + Kt Q B 5.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \sqrt{\times \text{ B. Q Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \underline{\text{Q R 5}} \underline{\text{Q R P}} + \underline{\text{Q R 6}} \underline{\text{Q R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 205.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White should remain passive on the right, and attack by the advance of the Q R P to Q R 6.

FORMULA No. 116.

G R O P W C A <
 O P L
 M

(Major Right Oblique — R, Q, U) + P K B 6 + P K Kt 5 + P Q Kt 4
+ P Q R 4 + Kt Q B 5.

\sqrt{X} B. Q Kt P.
 D

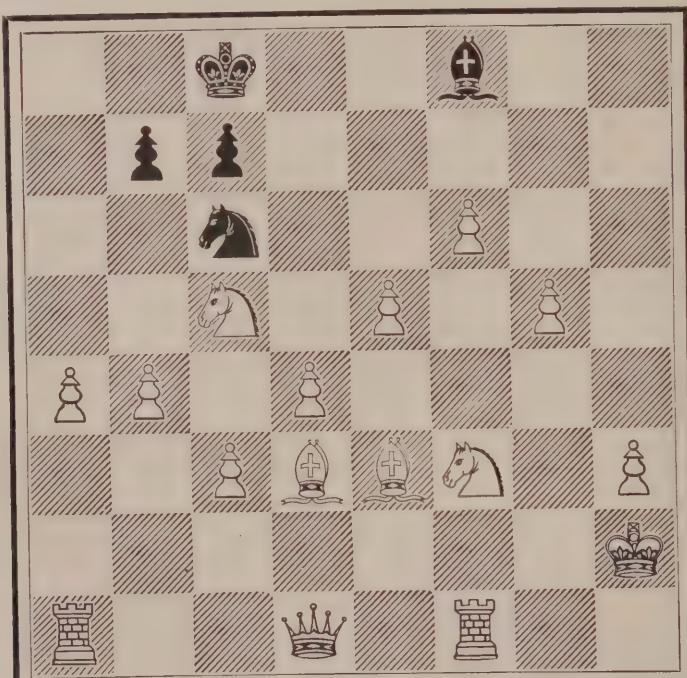
If Strategic Line of Operation then ∴ Q R 5 Q R P, Q R 6 Q R P.

If Logistic Line of Operation then ∴ K Kt 6 K Kt P.

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 206.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — White should merely maintain his position of advantage on the right and attack by the crochet aligned, unless an immediate line of operations is presented, when it always must at once be accepted.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE.

Properly constructed, this front constitutes a winning superiority in position in all situations wherein the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing.

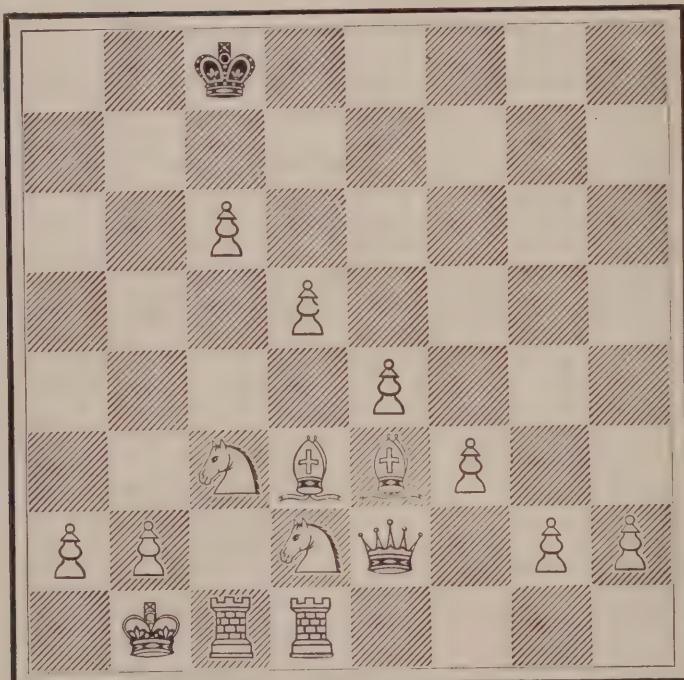
FORMULA No. 117.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{Major Left Oblique + P Q B 6.} \\
 \sqrt{\text{Objective Plane.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Strategic Line of Operation.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE.

FIG. 207.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — What has been said in regard to the grand fronts by the right applies equally to the grand fronts by the left. Support the B P before occupying the point B 6, if that point is defended by adverse pieces.

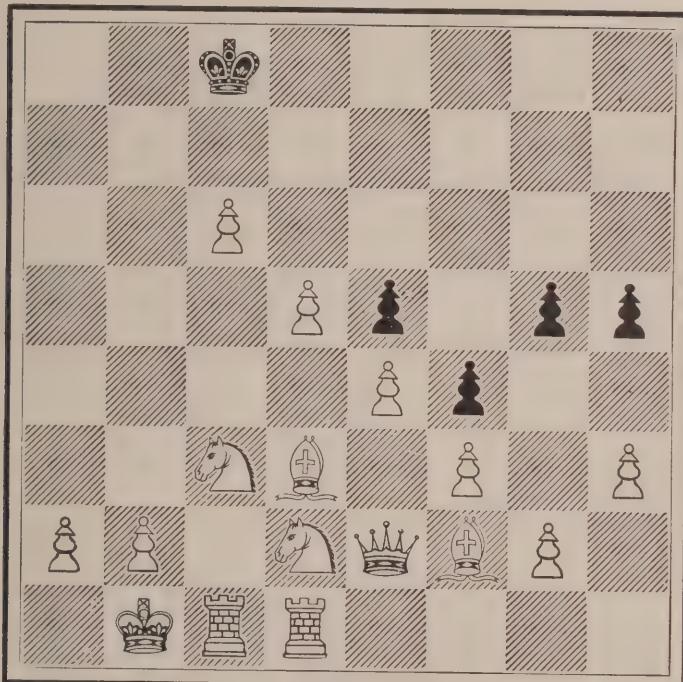
FORMULA No. 118.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O K} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 \text{Major Left Oblique} + \text{P Q B } 6 + \text{P K R } 3. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{Objective Plane.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Strategic Line of Operation.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 208.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — If the minor crochet is formed, so much the better; but it is superfluous after the occupation of the strategic objective.

FORMULA No. 119.

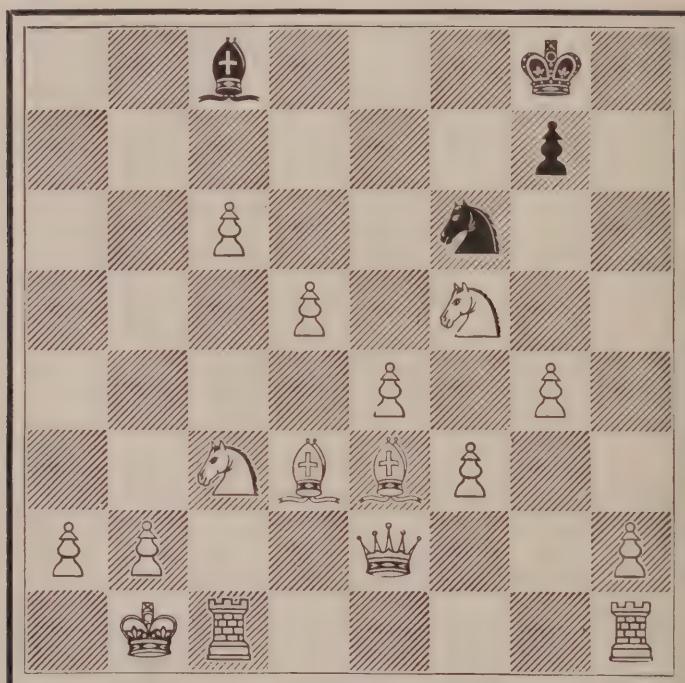
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G L O J} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \hline \text{M} \end{array} <$$

$$\begin{array}{c} (\text{Major Left Oblique} - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 6 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{Kt K B } 5. \\ \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\ \hline \text{D} \\ \therefore \text{K R } 4 \text{ K R P.} \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE WITH MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 209.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Form the crochet aligned and attack with the K R P. Never be deterred from this process unless you can accurately calculate the checkmate of the adverse K, or the decisive gain of material.

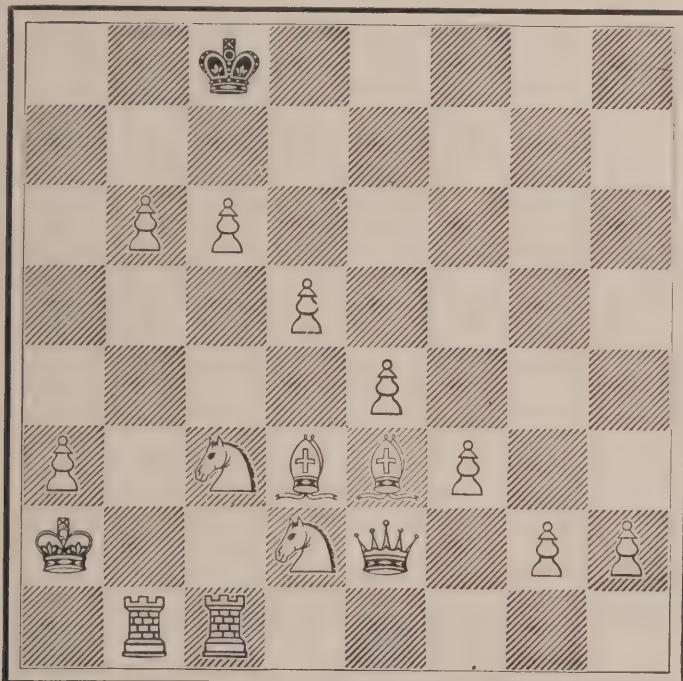
FORMULA No. 120.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O A W} \\
 \text{O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{Major Left Oblique} - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 6 + \text{P Q Kt } 6 + \text{P Q R } 3 \\
 + \text{K R Q B } 1 + \text{Q R Q Kt } 1 + \text{K Q R } 2. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{Objective Plane.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Strategic Line of Operation.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI.

FIG. 210.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Exchange the pawns and open the adverse K to the attack of the White pieces, or hold the position and concentrate upon the objective plane.

FORMULA No. 121.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G L O P W} \\ \text{O P L} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 5 + P Q R 3
+ K R Q B 1 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K Q R 2.

$\sqrt{\therefore}$. Objective Plane.

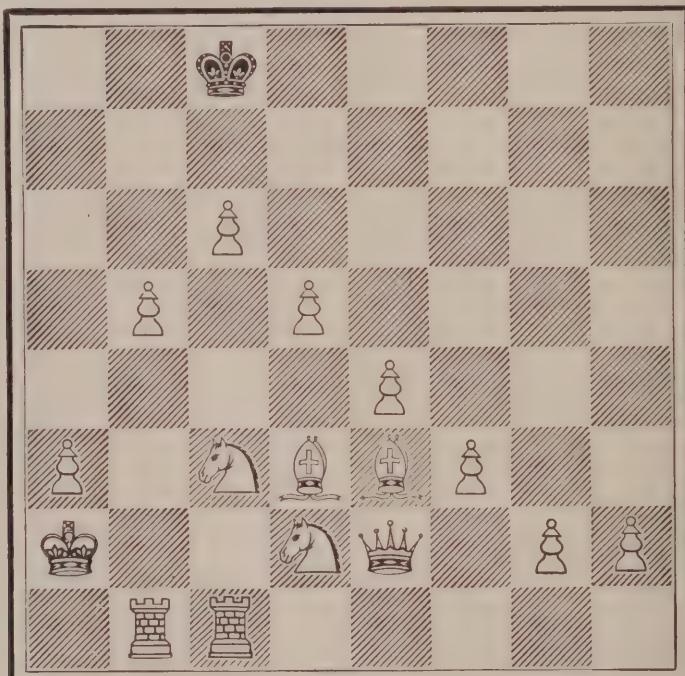
D

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI.

FIG. 211.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This is one of the finest formations known in grand tactics. Black is helpless. This position should be White's model in all lines of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the left.

FORMULA No. 122.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G L O P W K} \\ \hline \text{O P L} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 5 + P Q R 3
+ P K R 3 + K R Q B 1 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K Q R 2.

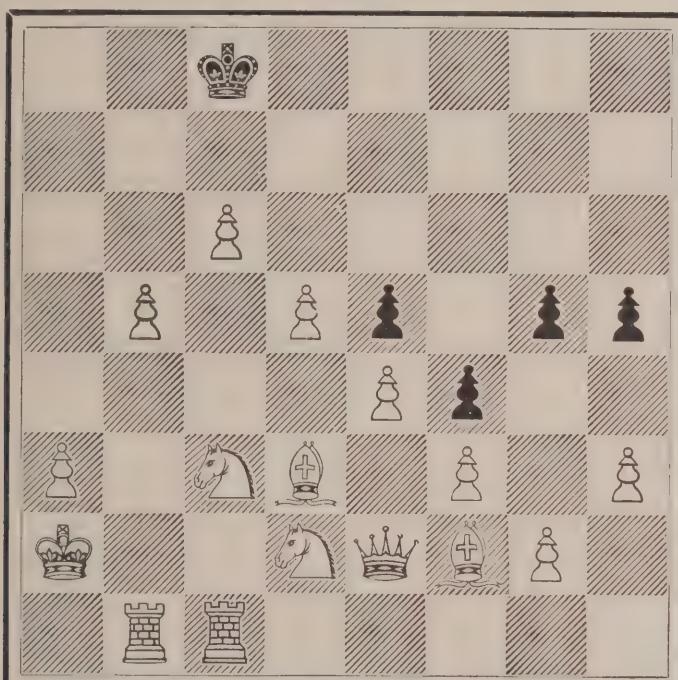
$\sqrt{\text{Objective Plane.}}$

$\begin{array}{c} \text{D} \\ \hline \text{Strategic Line of Operation.} \end{array}$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI
WITH MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 212.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—The crochet is well to have, but is not indispensable in this situation.

All grand fronts which are directed by the right or by the left constitute a winning superiority in position, all else being equal.

FORMULA No. 123.

G L O A W K <
 ——————
 O P L
 M

(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 6 + P Q R 3
 + P K R 3 + K R Q B 1 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K Q R 2.

✓ ∴ Objective Plane.

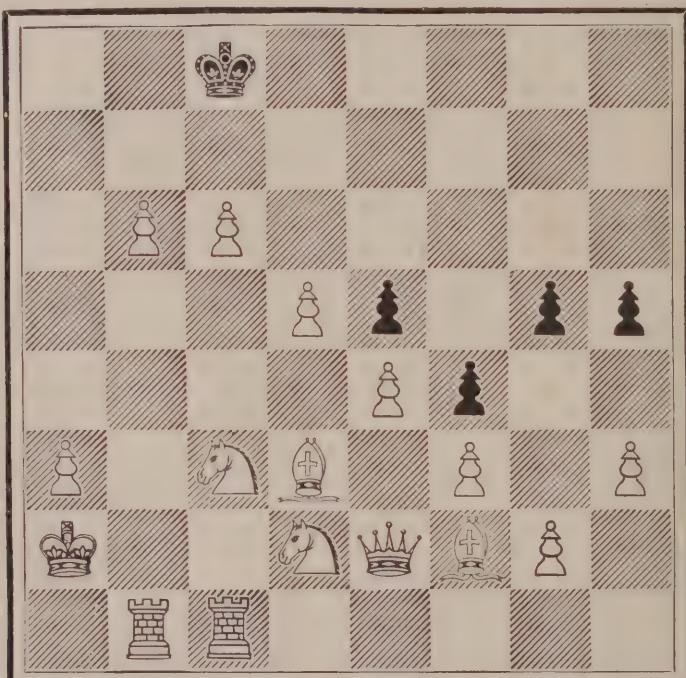
D

Strategic Line of Operation.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MINOR CROCHET.

FIG. 213.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Black can do nothing on the right. Long before he can avail of his occupation of the logistic horizon, the objective plane will be commanded by White.

FORMULA No. 124.

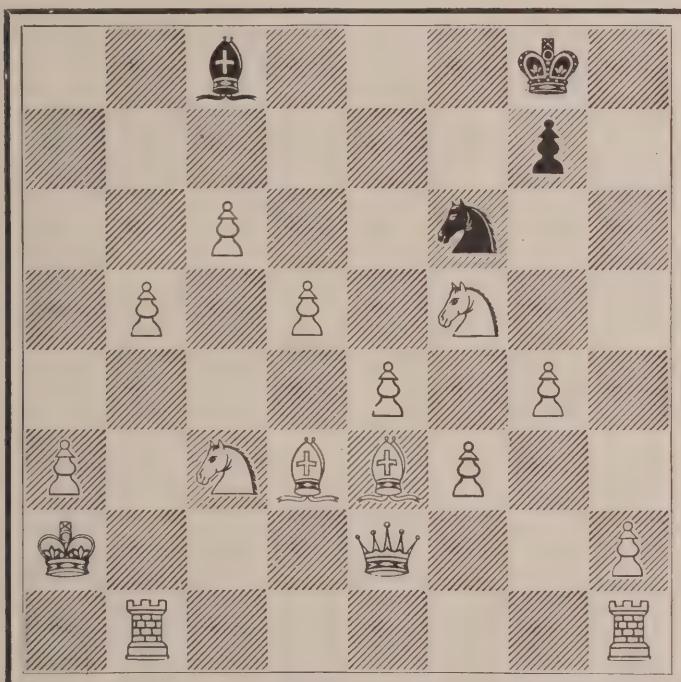
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G L O P W J} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 5 + P Q R 3
+ P K Kt 4 + Kt K B 5 + K Q R 2.

$$\begin{array}{c} \sqrt{\times} \text{ B. K Kt P.} \\ \text{D} \\ \therefore \text{K R 4 K R P.} \end{array}$$
GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 214.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Attack with the crochet aligned P — K R 4 is the move.

FORMULA No. 125.

G L O A W J
 O P L
 M

(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 6 + P Q R 3
 + P K Kt 4 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K Q R 2.

$\checkmark \therefore$ Objective Plane.

D

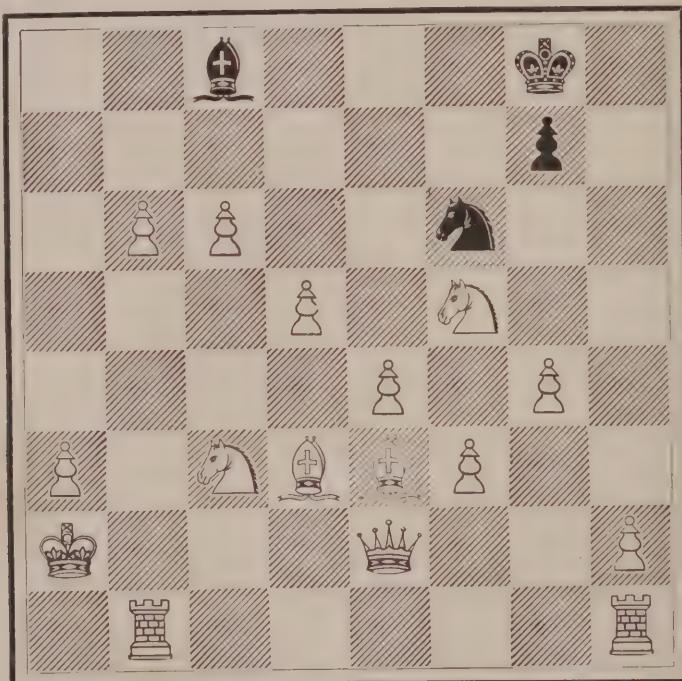
If Strategic Line of Operation then \therefore K R 4 K R P.

If Logistic Line of Operation then \therefore Q B 1 K R.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE ALIGNED EN APPUI WITH
MAJOR CROCHET.

FIG. 215.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Attack by the left, if a line of operations exists; otherwise, form the crochet aligned.

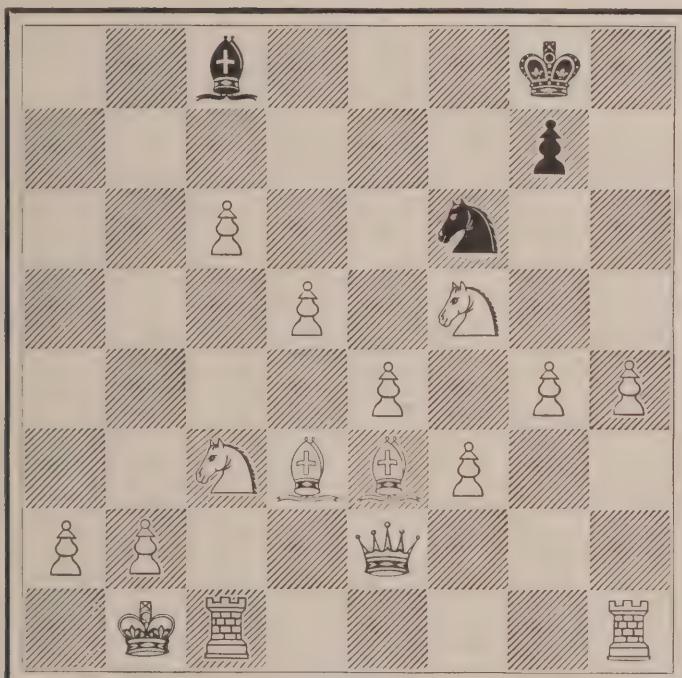
FORMULA No. 126.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O C A} \\
 \text{O P R} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{Major Left Oblique} - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q B } 6 + \text{P K Kt } 4 + \text{P K R } 4 \\
 + \text{Q R Q B } 1 + \text{K Q Kt } 1. \\
 \sqrt{\times \text{B. K Kt P.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \text{K R } 5 \underline{\text{K R P}}, \text{K R } 6 \underline{\text{K R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE WITH CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 216.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—Attack by the advance of the R P to R 6.

FORMULA No. 127.

G L O P W C A <
 O P R
 M

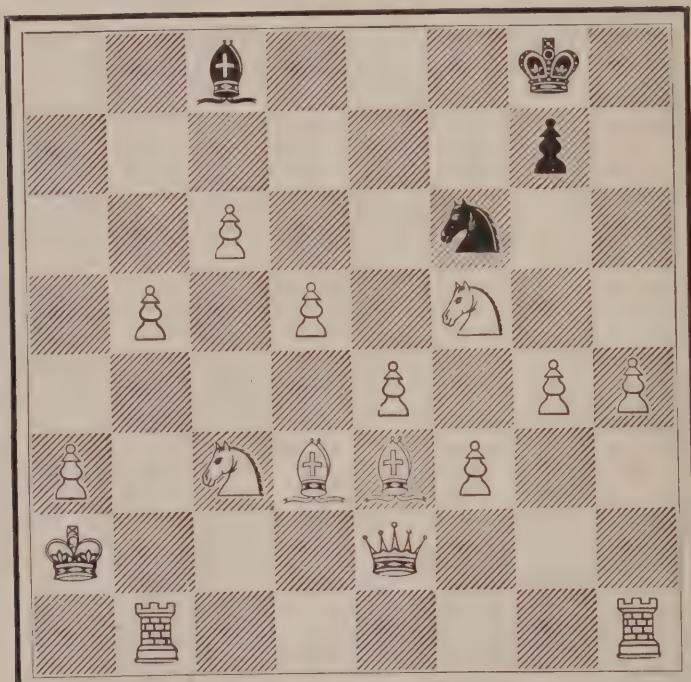
(Major Left Oblique — R, U) + P Q B 6 + P Q Kt 5 + P Q R 3
 + P K Kt 4 + P K R 4 + Q R Q Kt 1 + K Q R 2.

$\sqrt{\times}$ B. K Kt P.
 D
K R P K R 5, K R P K R 6.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE EN POTENCE EN APPUI WITH
CROCHET ALIGNED.

FIG. 217.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — Attack by the advance of the R P to R 6:

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This front, properly constructed, establishes Black with the superiority in position.



FORMULA No. 128.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{G R O R} \\ \text{O P R} \\ \text{M} \end{array} <$$

(Major Right Oblique Refused — R, K, U) + P K Kt 6 + K R K Kt 1
+ Q R K B 1 + K K R 1.

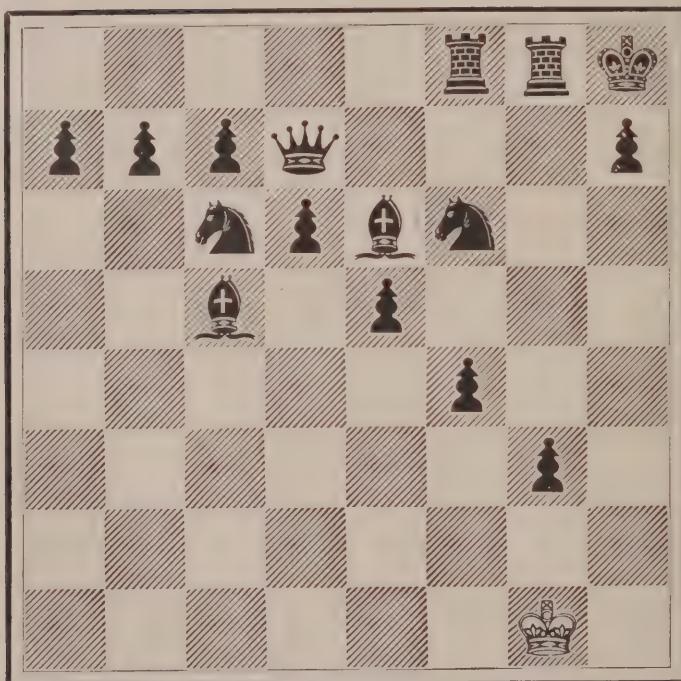
$$\begin{array}{c} \sqrt{\text{G R O A.}} \\ \text{D} \\ \therefore \text{K 5 } \underline{\text{K P}}, \text{K B 6 } \underline{\text{K B P.}} \end{array}$$

GRAND RIGHT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

Black.

FIG. 218.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This is the best front that Black can hope for, and better than he ever can get if White plays properly.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

This front, properly constructed, establishes a winning superiority in position as against the logistic horizon ; but it is inferior to either the grand right or the grand left obliques.

FORMULA No. 129.

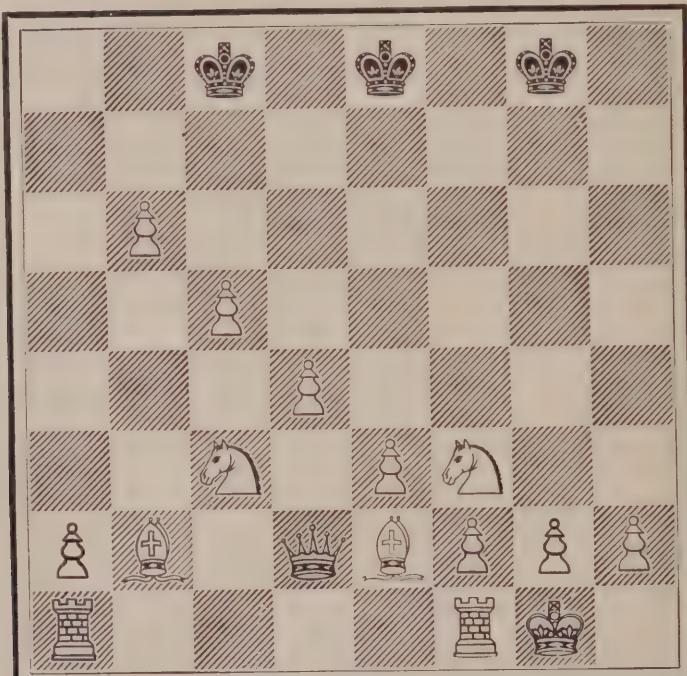
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O R} \\
 \text{O P R, O P C, O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{Major Left Oblique Refused} - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q Kt 6} \\
 \sqrt{\dots \text{G L O R A.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \hline
 \text{Q R 4 Q R P, Q R 5 Q R P, Q R 6 Q R P.}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

White.

FIG. 219.

(Black.)



(White.)

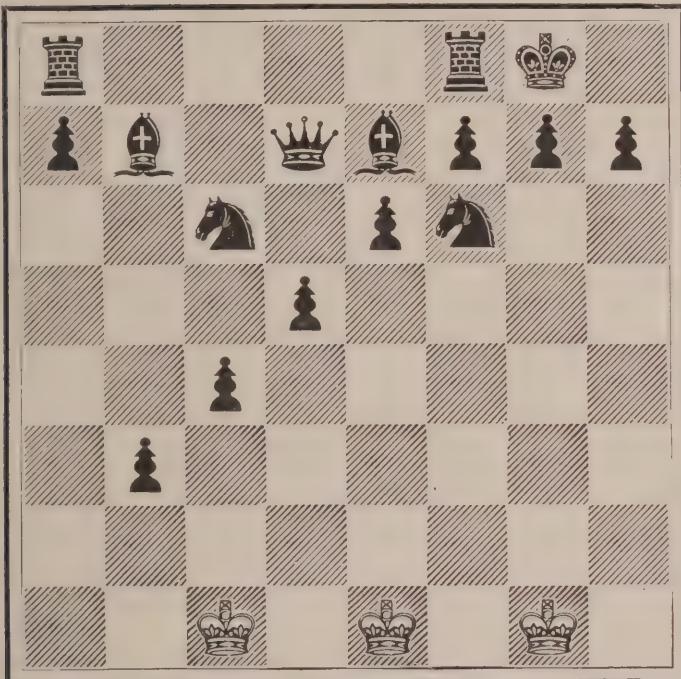
MAXIM.—Black should attack by the major right oblique, and endeavor to obtain command of the objective plane while White is laboriously moving against the logistic horizon.

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED.

Black.

FIG. 220.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front is not desirable, as a rule, unless it can be aligned without difficulty. Consequently it is far better to echelon the major front and proceed by the major left enceinte refused.

FORMULA No. 130.

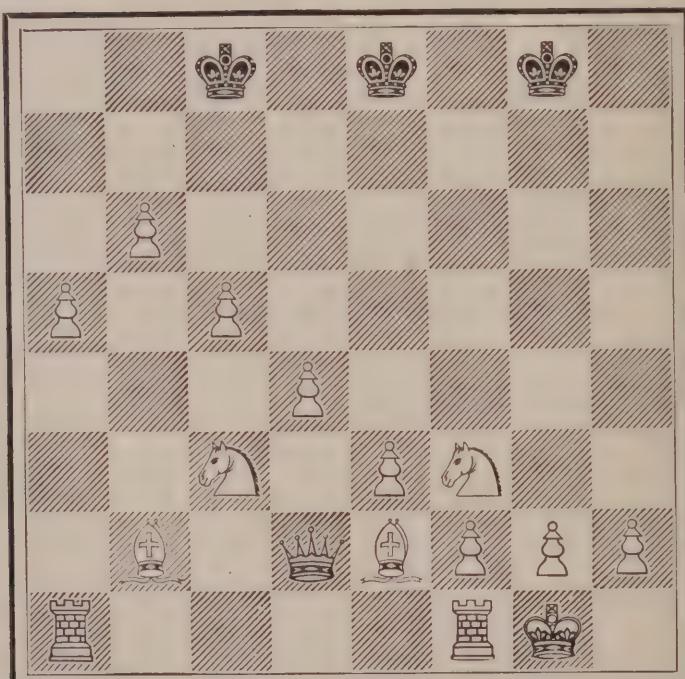
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \text{G L O R P} \\
 \hline
 \text{O P R, O P C, O P L} \\
 \text{M} \\
 \hline
 (\text{Major Left Oblique Refused} - \text{R, U}) + \text{P Q Kt} \, 6 + \text{P Q R} \, 5. \\
 \sqrt{\therefore \text{G L O R A.}} \\
 \text{D} \\
 \therefore \text{Q R} \, 6 \, \underline{\text{Q R P.}}
 \end{array}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN POTENCE.

White.

FIG. 221.

(Black.)



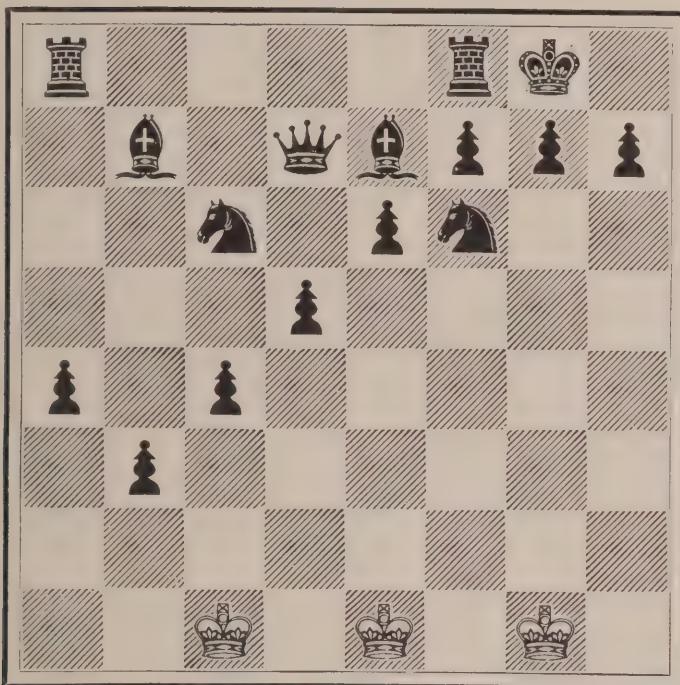
(White.)

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED EN POTENCE.

Black.

FIG. 222.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM.—This front will pierce the adverse wing, but its weakness is that it has not the direction of the objective plane.

FORMULA No. 131.

$$\frac{\text{G L O R A}}{\text{O P R, O P C, O P L}} < \text{M}$$

(Major Left Oblique Refused - R, U) + P Q Kt 6 + P Q R 6.

$$\sqrt{\therefore \text{Logistic Horizon.}}$$

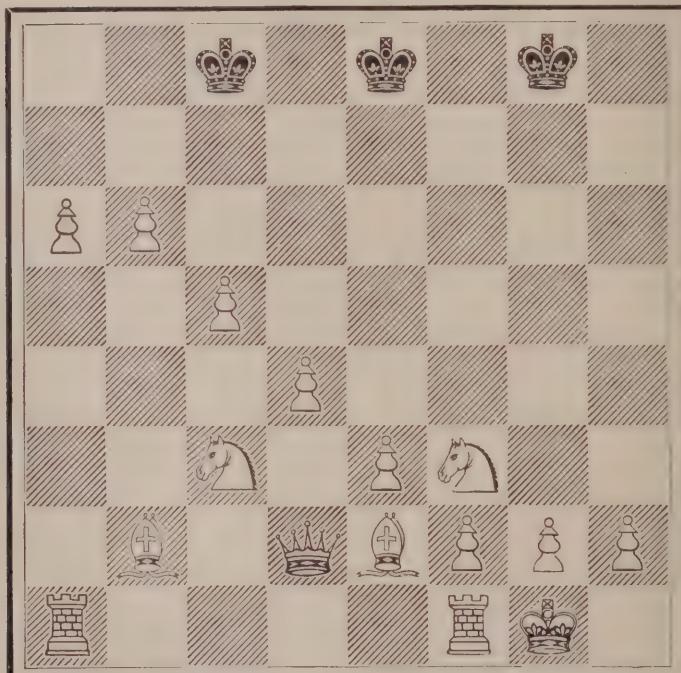
$$\frac{\text{D}}{\text{Logistic Line of Operation.}}$$

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

White.

FIG. 223.

(Black.)



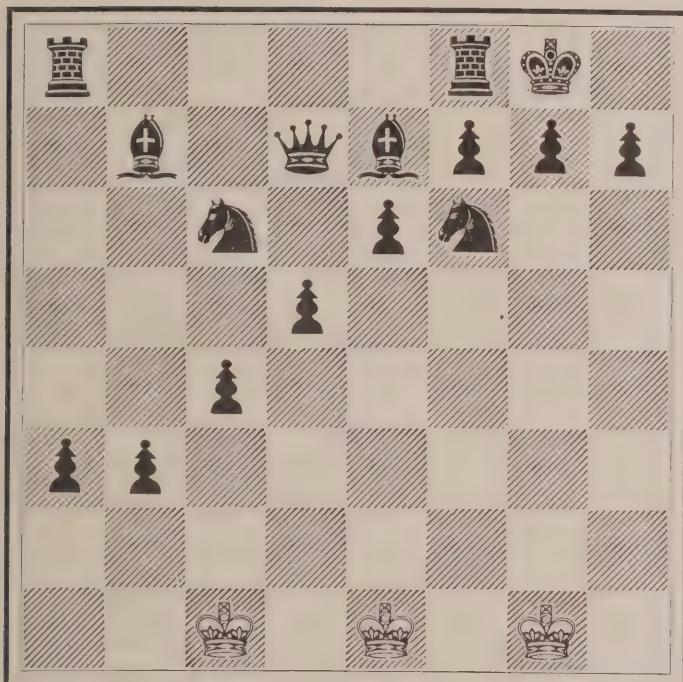
(White.)

GRAND LEFT OBLIQUE REFUSED AND ALIGNED.

Black.

FIG. 224.

(Black.)



(White.)

MAXIM. — This front is much more favorable to Black than to White. It is defective inasmuch as while it is bound to penetrate to the logistic horizon, this event does not of itself win the game.

LESSER LOGISTICS.

Lesser Logistics treats of those movements of forces which are contained in lines of Mobilization and in lines of Development.

LESSER LOGISTICS.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In the construction of a minor oblique, so deploy that each pawn and each piece may reach its proper post in one move, whether the resultant strategic front takes direction either to the right or to the left.

II. In the construction of a major oblique, so deploy that each pawn and each piece may reach its proper post in one move, whether the resultant strategic front takes direction either to the right or to the left, *except*:

In the major right oblique, the K P, K B P, and Q Kt may each be moved twice, and in the major left oblique the Q P, Q B P, and K Kt may be moved twice.

III. In the construction of a grand oblique, so deploy that each pawn and each piece may reach its proper post in one move, whether the resultant strategic front takes direction either to the right or to the left, *except*:

In the grand right oblique the K P and Q Kt may each be moved twice, and the K B P may be moved three times; and in the grand left oblique the Q P and K Kt may each be moved twice, and the K B P may be moved three times.

LOGISTICS OF THE Q R P.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the left, and in all single strategic fronts directed by the right, the Q R P, if deployed, should be posted at Q R 3.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, and in all double strategic fronts directed by the right, the Q R P, if deployed, should be posted at Q R 4.
- III. The Q R P should never be deployed in any strategic front directed by the right refused.

The Q R P is the guardian of the extreme Queen's wing. Its duty is to prevent an adverse piece from occupying Q Kt 3, and especially to prevent the adverse Q R P from occupying the point Q R 1.

But it is not responsible for the preservation of both these points against a simultaneous attack of the hostile Q R P and another adverse piece, and to suffer the Q R P to be thus assailed, is, all else being equal, a serious error.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right, and in which the objective plane is located on the centre or the King's wing, the duties of the Q R P are absolutely confined to the defence of the Q R file, or the points Q Kt 3 and Q Kt 4. For the fulfilment of this duty it is best posted at Q R 2 or at Q R 3, and its removal from these points is an error, entailing loss of time by the wasting of moves which properly should be devoted to developing the main line of offence and of defence.

The only case in which the functions of the Q R P become offensive is when a tactical defect exists in the adverse position, whereby the advance of the Q R P ensures the gain of adverse material. In all such cases, all else being equal, the neglect to at once assume the offensive with the Q R P is an error.

In all strategic fronts of operations directed by the right, and in which the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing, the functions of the Q R P are defensive, only when it is needed to support the occupation of the point Q Kt 3 by a Kt *en route* to Q B 5; in which case the Q R P remains at Q R 2, so that in case an adverse piece captures the Kt *in transitu* at Q Kt 3, the Q R P, by retaking, may strengthen the strategic front, and also open the Q R file for the attack by the R's against the objective plane.

In all other cases the best post for the Q R P is at Q R 5, where it covers the Kt posted at the logistic objective from the attack of the adverse Q Kt P, as, if the latter is advanced, the Q R P at once exchanges, thus opening the Q R file for the action of the R's.

In all fronts of operations not refused and directed by the left, the objective plane being located on the centre or on the King's wing, the functions of the Q R P are absolutely defensive, and its movements are limited to forming the en appui.

In all minor strategic fronts of operation refused and directed by the left, the objective plane being located either upon the centre, the King's wing, or the Queen's wing, the functions of the Q R P are absolutely defensive, and it should not be removed from Q R 2, and such removal is an error.

In all major fronts of operations refused and directed by the left, the objective plane being located either upon

the centre, the King's wing, or the Queen's wing, the functions of the Q R P are absolutely offensive, and it early should be posted at Q R 4.

In all strategic fronts of whatever nature, when the opponent has made a tactical error, by reason of which any manœuvre of the Q R P ensures a gain in material, such manœuvre, all else being equal, is true, and must always and at once be made, and any neglect to make such manœuvre is an error.

Whenever the opponent has established a major front of operations by the left, and is moving on a compound line of manœuvre en echelon or doubly aligned, then, and in this case only, the Q R P should be advanced to Q R 3, and placed en crochet in the minor, major, or grand strategic front directed by the right, for the purpose of covering the logistic horizon.

LOGISTICS OF THE Q Kt P.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the left, and in all double strategic fronts directed by the right, and in all major and grand strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the Q Kt P, if deployed, should be posted at Q Kt 4.

II. The Q Kt P never should be deployed in any single strategic front directed by the right, or by the right refused, or in any minor strategic front directed by the left.

III. In a minor strategic front directed by the left refused, the Q Kt P always should be deployed at Q Kt 3.

The Q Kt P is the prime component part of the Queen's wing. Its duty is to support or to cover the Q B P, and to co-operate at all times with the latter for maintaining the integrity of the strategic front. Its special duty is to prevent the adverse Q Kt P from occupying the point Q Kt 1, to prevent the adverse Q B P from attacking the Q P in the major and grand right obliques, and to sustain the Q B P in all single fronts of operation directed by the right, or by the left, or by the left refused.

Incidentally, it devolves upon the Q Kt P to support the point Q R 3. But while its duties are manifold, it is responsible for the execution of only one at a time, and

to allow the points which it guards to be attacked simultaneously by two or more adverse pieces, is, all else being equal, an error.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the functions of the Q Kt P are absolutely defensive. It is best posted at Q Kt 2, and its removal from that post, unless the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing, is an error entailing loss of time by the wasting of a move which properly should be devoted to developing the main line of offensive or defensive operations, and by seriously, and frequently fatally, weakening the defensive resources of the general position by creating a defect in the strategic front, by thus uncovering the point Q B 3.

But in all cases wherein the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing, the proper post for the Q Kt P is the point Q Kt 4. From thence it protects the Q P from the attack of the adverse Q B P, and is in a situation to retake any adverse piece which may capture the Kt occupying Q B 5. There it establishes an impregnable strategic front, and opens the Q Kt file for the action of the rooks against the objective plane.

In all minor strategic fronts refused and directed by the left, the functions of the Q Kt P are absolutely defensive, and it should be posted at Q Kt 3, in support of the Q B P.

In all major strategic fronts refused and directed by the left, whatever the location of the objective plane, the proper post for the Q Kt P is Q Kt 4, in support of the Q B P.

In all major strategic fronts not refused and directed by the left, with the objective plane located on the centre or on the King's wing, the proper post for the Q Kt P is Q Kt 4, in support of the Q B P.

In all major strategic fronts not refused and directed by the left, the movements of the Q Kt P are limited to the formation of the en echelon.

Errors in tactics by the opponent in any strategic front, whereby the opportunity to gain material is presented, must be availed of by the Q Kt P. But all such opportunities must be cautiously and thoroughly investigated, as the sacrifice of a pawn, and often of a piece, is fully compensated for by the elimination of the support of the Q Kt P from the strategic front.

LOGISTICS OF THE Q B P.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the Q B P always should be deployed at Q B 3.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left and by the left refused, the Q B P always should be deployed at Q B 4.
- III. The Q B P never should be deployed in any strategic front directed by the right refused.

The Q B P is the corner-stone in all strategic fronts not refused which are directed by the right, whatever may be the location of the objective plane, and for purely defensive purposes it is the most important factor in the strategic front.

The duty of the Q B P is to support the Q P after the establishment of the latter at the point Q 4; to cover the point Q Kt 4 from occupation by the hostile Q Kt or K B, and in all situations wherein the objective plane is located on the Queen's wing, to support the Q Kt P after the latter has been advanced to its fourth point. Incidentally it is the province of the Q B P to co-operate with the Q Kt P to cover the left wing of the general position, to prevent the adverse Q or K B from penetrating the centre *via* the King's major diagonal, and to prevent the adverse Q Kt from acting *via* Q 4 or Q Kt 4, upon the point Q B 2, at which point there originally

exists a tactical defect arising from the relative situation of the K and Q R in the normal position.

In all strategic fronts not refused and directed by the right, the objective plane being located either on the centre, on the King's wing, or on the Queen's wing, the proper post for the Q B P is Q B 3.

In all strategic fronts refused and directed by the right, the proper post for the Q B P is Q B 2, and it should not be removed from this post until such time as the Q P has either been advanced to Q 4 or exchanged.

In all minor strategic fronts directed by the left or by the left refused, the Q B P should be posted at Q B 4.

In all major and grand strategic fronts refused and directed by the left, the proper post for the Q B P is Q B 5.

Errors by which the opponent exposes himself to the loss of material must, all else being equal, at once be availed of by the Q B P. But these opportunities must be regarded with the greatest circumspection, as the sacrifice of a pawn, and even of a piece, is frequently justifiable for the purpose of eliminating the support of the Q B P from the strategic front.

LOGISTICS OF THE Q P.

PRINCIPLE.

I. The Q P always should be deployed at Q 4 in all strategic fronts directed by the right, or by the left, or by the left refused.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the Q P always should be deployed at Q 3.

The Q P is the centre of all strategic fronts not refused which are directed by the right. In all such positions the Q P always should be posted at and be maintained at Q 4. Failure to do this is an error, and to advance the Q P from this post, except on a line of operations, or in a change of front from the right oblique to the major or grand left oblique, is usually a fatal error, which should lose the game with correct play on the part of the opponent. This likewise applies to all fronts of operations which are refused and directed by the left.

All else being equal, the Q P may usually be exchanged without detriment, provided it can be replaced by a Kt, and any opportunity to gain material presented to it through tactical errors by the opponent may, under like conditions, be availed of without fear.

In all strategic fronts refused and directed by the right, the proper post for the Q P is the point Q 3.

In all strategic fronts not refused and directed by the left, the proper post for the Q P is Q 5. The neglect to so post the Q P is an error, and its removal from this

post is frequently a fatal error, which, with correct play on the part of the opponent, should lose the game.

In all mobilizations wherein the strategic front is to be directed by the left, the preservation of the Q P is of the highest importance.

LOGISTICS OF THE K P.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. The K P always should be deployed at K 4 in all strategic fronts directed by the right, or by the left, or by the right refused.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the K P should be deployed at K 3.

The logistics of the K P are identical to the logistics of the Q P, as this pawn holds the same relations to the fronts directed by the right as the Q P does to those fronts directed by the left, and to those fronts directed by the left as the Q P does to those fronts directed by the right.

LOGISTICS OF THE K B P.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, or by the right refused, the K B P, if deployed, should be posted at K B 4.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left, the K B P always should be deployed at K B 3.
- III. The K B P never should be deployed in any front directed by the left refused.

The K B P is the complement of the Q B P, and the logistics of one are identical to those of the other.

But the K B P is especially sensitive to strategic conditions, inasmuch as it is a chief factor for the defence of the prime strategic point, whether on the centre or castled K R. Consequently, by its advance, either by one or by two points, the strategic radii are frequently exposed to the attack of the adverse Q or K B with detrimental effect.

This circumstance peculiarly affects the defensive power of the K B P, particularly when the kindred King is located on the centre, and consequently one or more pawns, or even pieces, may properly be sacrificed to eliminate the protection which the K B P affords to the strategic objective in the normal position of the objective plane.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the K B P should be posted at the point K B 4 as soon as possible after the K has castled K R.

LOGISTICS OF THE K Kt P.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, and in all double strategic fronts directed by the left, and in all major and grand strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the K Kt P, if deployed, should be posted at K Kt 4.

II. The K Kt P never should be deployed in any strategic front directed by the left refused, nor in any minor strategic front directed by the right refused.

The logistics of the K Kt P are identical to the logistics of the Q Kt P, and the considerations which govern the Q Kt P apply equally to the K Kt P.

LOGISTICS OF THE K R P.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, and in all single strategic fronts directed by the left, the K R P, if deployed, should be posted at K R 3.
- II. In all double strategic fronts directed by the left, the K R P, if deployed, should be posted at K R 4.
- III. The K R P never should be deployed in any refused front.

The logistics of the K R P are identical with the logistics of the Q R P, and the considerations which govern the latter apply equally to the K R P.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE K Kt.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused or by the left refused, the white K Kt always should be deployed at K B 3.

II. In all strategic fronts directed either by the right or by the left, in which the supporting parallel is completed, the white K Kt should be deployed at K 2; and in all strategic fronts directed by the right or by the left, in which the supporting parallel is incompletely, the white K Kt should be deployed at K B 3.

The white K Kt is best posted at K 2 previous to the advance of the K B P to its fourth in all strategic fronts directed by the left wherein Black has adopted the close defence, *i. e.* has made any other move than 1 P — K 4 in reply to White's initial deployment of the K P two squares. But in all cases wherein Black answers 1 P — K 4 by 1 P — K 4, the best post for the K Kt is at K B 3, and the response of 2 K Kt — B 3 is White's best second move.

The chief functions of the white K Kt when deployed at K B 3 are, to support the advance of the Q P to its fourth, to menace the black K P at K 4, to sustain the points K Kt 5 and K R 4 which are menaced by the hostile Q, and to cover the point K B 2 from any attack by the adverse Q or R's along the K B vertical.

Furthermore, Black is thus compelled on his second move, either directly or indirectly, to protect his P at K 4, and should he commit an error either in strategy or tactics, in so doing the white K Kt is finely posted for quick and vigorous co-operation in a possible strategic or tactical line of operations, by occupying at once either the points K 5, K Kt 5, or K R 4.

Should the strategic front take the form of the major right oblique minus Q P, the proper post for the K Kt is Q 4. Should it take the form of the major left oblique, the K Kt should retire to Q 2—never to K 1—in order to permit the advance of K B P to K B 3.

In the minor right oblique the proper post for the K Kt is at K 5, provided the kindred K P has been exchanged; but so easy is it for Black to render this point untenable to the white K Kt, that such occupation is seldom justifiable previous to the commission of a strategic error by Black. Whenever White opens with the close game, the white K Kt should always, and at once, be deployed at K B 3 to cover the P at K B 2.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK K Kt.

PRINCIPLE.

The black K Kt always should be deployed at K B 3.

The black K Kt never should be deployed at any other point than K B 3. If, however, through an error of the opponent, Black has been enabled to establish the major right or the minor left oblique, then, and in this case only, the black Kt may be deployed at K 2.

For the special province of the black K Kt is to prevent the white Q from occupying the points K Kt 4 and K R 5, and to cover the point K B 2 against any attack *via* the K B vertical. This point K B 3 never can safely be denuded of the presence of a Kt so long as the prime strategetic point is located on the centre or the King's side, and Black has not established a major front of operations by the right.

Consequently it is evident that it is a serious strategic error for Black to exchange his K Kt, or to interrupt in any way its line of communication with the point K B 3, until he has first established his game as fully equal to White's, and has initiated an offensive line of development by the right, so long as his K remains on the centre or has castled K R. Whenever White has adopted a close opening, or Black a close defence, the black K Kt always should be deployed at K B 3.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE Q Kt.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused or by the left refused, the white Q Kt always should be deployed at Q B 3.

II. In all strategic fronts in which the kindred K Kt is deployed at K 2, the white Q Kt always should be deployed at Q 2.

In all the strategic fronts directed by the right, in which the Q P is located at Q 4, the white Q Kt should be deployed at Q 2. But in all such fronts in which the Q P is absent, the Q Kt is best deployed at Q B 3.

Should the strategic front take the direction by the left, the Q Kt always should be deployed at Q B 3; but such deployment usually should not take place previous to the advance of the Q B P to its fourth, if the Q P is on the board.

Consequently it is obvious that the deployment of the Q Kt, while extremely simple, nevertheless requires accurate timing, and that it should be delayed until the permanent location of the objective plane is determined, and until such time as the Kt can be brought in one move to his proper post.

Whenever the opponent has adopted the close defence to the open game, by replying to 1 P — K 4 by any other move than 1 P — K 4, and especially if Black has weakened his centre or Queen's wing by one

or more strategic errors, the Q Kt should be quickly deployed at Q B 3 to co-operate with kindred pieces in preventing Black from eliminating such defects from his strategic front. Thus, if Black plays 1 P—Q 4, or 1 P—K 3, or 1 P—Q B 4, the Q Kt should be deployed at Q B 3; but if Black plays 1 P—Q Kt 3, or 1 P—K B 3, or 1 P—K Kt 3, or 1 K Kt—B 3, or 1 Q Kt—B 3, or 1 P—Q 3, the Q Kt should be deployed at Q 2, unless the white strategic front takes the direction of the left, in which case the white Q Kt is best deployed at Q B 3 after the advance of P to Q B 4.

Whénever White opens with the close game, the white Q Kt always should be deployed at Q B 3, but never before the Q B P has been first deployed to its fourth square.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK Q Kt.

PRINCIPLE.

The black Q Kt always should be deployed at Q B 3.

The black Q Kt always should be deployed at Q B 3, whether in the open or in the close game, but in the latter it never should be deployed previous to the advance of the Q B P to its fourth.

In case, however, the opponent has made such errors as permit Black to establish the minor or major right oblique, then, and in that case only, the black Q Kt may be deployed at Q 2.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE K B.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the white K B is best deployed at Q B 4 if the objective plane is permanently located on the centre, otherwise it is best deployed at Q 3.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the white K B always should be deployed at K 2.
- III. In all strategic fronts directed by the left, the white K B always should be deployed at Q 3.

The K B is the chief bishop in all lines of mobilization which are directed by the right, and it is hardly less valuable than the Q B in all lines of mobilization which are directed by the left. It is a strong piece in every situation, and should not, without due regard, be exchanged for a Kt, the adverse Q B, or even for R. The points at which the K B is properly to be deployed in the open game are Q 3, Q B 4, or Q Kt 5.

Whenever Black has made one or more strategic errors, and has exposed the objective plane to decisive attack by a simple strategic line of operations, then the proper post for the K B is at Q B 4, where he co-operates to the best advantage with the Q at K R 5, and the Kt at K 5, K Kt 5, or K R 4, in the attack of the objective plane.

But in all positions wherein Black has made no error, the correct post for the K B is at Q 3; and this is its proper post whatever the location of the prime strategic point, or whatever the location of the objective plane.

Whenever the objective plane is situated on the centre, and a tactical defect exists in the black position, the white K B can frequently, with much effect, be posted at Q Kt 5.

But in all cases whenever the white K B is forced to retire from either Q Kt 5 or Q B 4, he should always retire to Q 3, unless, on account of a strategic or a tactical error by Black, the command of the black K Kt major diagonal is an essential factor of the line of action.

In the close game the best post for the white K B is always at K 2, as it is his specific duty to defend the K Kt posted at K B 3 against the attack of the hostile Q B posted at Q Kt 2, and its functions are primarily defensive.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK K B.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the black K B always should be deployed at Q B 4.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the black K B always should be deployed at K 2.

The black K B is one of the most important factors in the early operations of Black, and always should be posted as soon as possible at the point Q B 4, and never should be deployed otherwise in all those strategic fronts which result from 1 P — K 4 on the part of Black.

The black K B never should be posted at K 2 or Q 3 in the open game, and as a rule it should be deployed at Q B 4 as soon as may be after the occupation of the point K B 3 by the black Kt, and even before that, if opportunity serves.

The correct point of retreat for the black K B in the open game is the point Q Kt 3, and it is a serious disadvantage to be compelled to retire this piece to K 2.

In the close game the functions of the black K B, like those of the white K B, are defensive in character, and it is best posted at the point K 2 in support of the Kt posted at K B 3.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE Q B.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right or by the left, the white Q B always should be deployed at K 3.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the white Q B always should be deployed at Q Kt 2.

In all the openings which result from 1 P — K 4 by White, the proper deployment of the white Q B is of high importance.

The functions of this piece are entirely defensive, and its only correct post is at K 3; and this is true of the Q B in all strategic fronts of the open game, whether directed by the right or by the left. In case the opponent commits errors in strategy or in tactics, the white Q B may be deployed with much effect at K Kt 5; and if Black replies to 1 P — K 4 by 1 P — Q B 4, the Q B may often be deployed at K B 4 with much effect, especially if by this process the adverse K P can be compelled to advance to its fourth point, thus leaving the adverse Q P at Q 3, which point has been already converted into an uncovered point by the unscientific advance of the black Q B P, and is thus by the forced advance of the K P converted into a strategic defect which, by correct play on the part of White, should properly cost Black the game.

Whenever the Q B is compelled to retreat from the points K B 4 or K Kt 5, his only correct point of retreat

is K 3, unless by reason of other strategic or tactical errors by Black he is most properly manœuvred on the black Queen's major diagonal, in which case he may retire to K R 4.

In the close game the white Q B is correctly posted only at Q Kt 2. His functions are in all such cases primarily offensive. He should be deployed at this point as early as possible, and the student is warned against the fallacious deployment of the white Q B at either K B 4 or at K Kt 5 in the close opening, except when such deployment is dictated by the principles of greater logistics.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK Q B.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the black Q B always should be deployed at K 3.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the black Q B always should be deployed at Q Kt 2.

The functions of the black Q B in the close game, like those of the white Q B, are primarily offensive. This piece is usually best deployed at Q Kt 2, and always so if both Q P and Q B P be not exchanged. But in all cases wherein the Q P and the Q B P are early exchanged, the black Q B is best deployed at Q 2, and thence to K 1. Later, if the black strategic front takes the form of the minor left oblique, the best post for the black Q B is the point K B 2.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE K R.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the white K R should be deployed at K B 1.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left or by the left refused, the white K R should be deployed at Q 1.

In all strategic fronts of operation which are directed by the right, the proper post for the K R is the point K B 1. But in case the prime strategetic point is permanently located on the centre or Queen's wing, the best post for the K R is either K Kt 1 or K R 1. In all cases in which both K P and Q P have been exchanged, the proper post for the K R is the point K 1.

In the close game the best post for the K R is the point Q 1.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK K R.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the black K R should be deployed at K B 1.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the black K R should be deployed at Q 1.

In all defensive situations in the open game, the correct post for the black K R is the point K B 1, as it thus defends the K B P, and supports the advance of the latter to its fourth square, should the opportunity to do so occur.

In the close game the only proper post for the black K R is the point Q 1.

Whenever the offensive has been assumed by Black, the K R may be properly manœuvred on the lines laid down for the manœuvring of the white King's rook.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE Q R.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the white Q R should be deployed at K 1.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left or by the left refused, the white Q R should be deployed at Q B 1.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the proper point at which to deploy the Q R is the point K 1. But if the Q P has been exchanged, or both K P and Q P have been exchanged, the proper point at which to deploy the Q R is the point Q 1.

In all strategic fronts which are directed by the left, the only correct post at which to deploy the Q R is the point Q B 1.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK Q R.

PRINCIPLE.

I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused, the black Q R should be deployed at K 1.

II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left refused, the black Q R should be deployed at Q B 1.

In all strategic fronts of operations directed toward the right, the only correct post for the Q R is the point K 1, and in all strategic fronts which are directed by the left, the only correct post for the black Q R is the point Q B 1.

In all cases, however, in which Black has been able to assume the offensive, the black Q R may be deployed in the same manner as the white Q R.

LOGISTICS OF THE WHITE Q.

PRINCIPLE.

- I. In all strategic fronts directed by the right and by the left refused, the white Q is best deployed at Q 2.
- II. In all strategic fronts directed by the left, the white Q is best deployed at K 2.

In all strategic fronts of operations which are directed by the right, the Q is best deployed on the point Q 2. She may also be deployed at Q B 2, but such deployment is only justified by a strategic or a tactical error of the opponent.

In all strategic fronts directed by the left, the Q is best deployed at K 2; and, in fact, in these situations she may not properly be deployed at any other point.

Whenever the opponent has committed one or more strategic or tactical errors in the early opening, and especially if the objective plane be located either on the centre or on the King's side, the Q may frequently, and with much effect, be deployed at K B 3, at K R 5, or at Q R 4.

It is extremely rare that the Q can be deployed at either Q Kt 3, or at K Kt 4, or at K B 3, to any lasting advantage; and never can she be thus deployed if the defensive measures taken by the opponent have been scientifically correct.

In the close game the Q is only properly deployed at the point Q 2, and the Q is never properly deployed at K 1 or at Q B 1, except when by such deployment one or more strategic or tactical errors on the part of the opponent may be availed of to the most advantage.

LOGISTICS OF THE BLACK Q.

PRINCIPLE.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right refused or by the left refused, the black Q is best deployed at Q 2.

In all strategic fronts directed by the right, the Q is best deployed at Q 2; and in all strategic fronts directed by the left, the Q is best deployed at K 2. The Q is seldom correctly deployed at the points K 2, Q B 2, Q Kt 3, K B 3, almost never at K 1 or Q B 1; and only gross strategic or tactical errors render her deployment at the points Q R 4, K Kt 4, or K R 5 feasible and effective.

Also in the close game the Q is best deployed at the point Q 2.

LINES OF MANŒUVRE.

A Line of Manœuvre is composed of those movements whereby a given force augments itself to the greater force as compared to the opposing force.

Lines of manœuvre are divided into three classes:—

- I. SIMPLE.
- II. COMPOUND.
- III. COMPLEX.

PRINCIPLE.

When not acting on a line of operation, always manœuvre, and never manœuvre otherwise than strategically, *i. e.* against points; and always combine with a manœuvre that deployment or development which properly is in sequence in the given situation.

A *Simple Line of Manœuvre* is composed of those movements whose object is to occupy a given point with a given piece, at a time when such occupation will compel the opponent either to adopt an improper strategic front, or to improperly construct the strategic front adopted.

A simple line of manœuvre never aims at more than a gain in position, and is never based upon a strategic weakness. A simple line of manœuvre always has for its object the proper deployment or development, and the compelling of the opponent to adopt an inferior strategic front, to establish improper piece units, to improperly locate the objective plane, and to establish uncovered points.

PRINCIPLE.

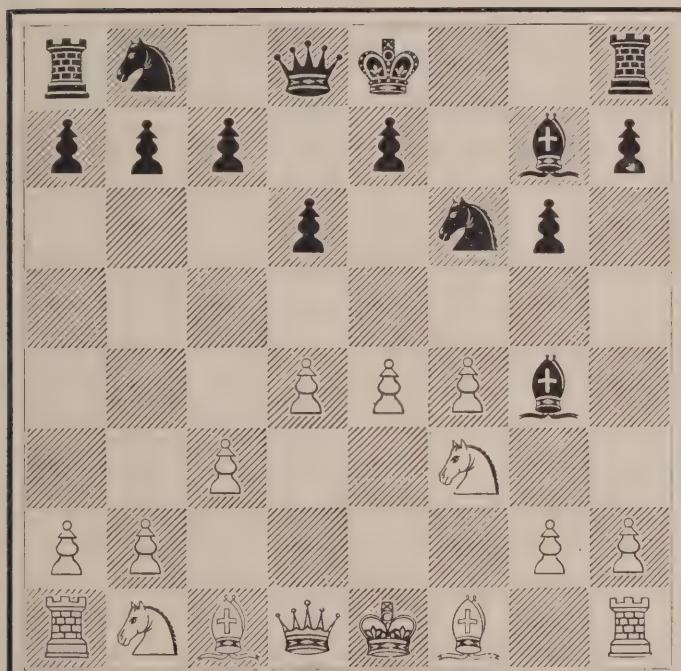
Having the initiative in a single line of manœuvre, always select that move which will establish the strategic front upon the strategical centre and prevent the opponent from doing likewise, or will oppose a full front to the adversary's front refused, or a major front to his minor front, or a grand front to his major front.

SIMPLE LINE OF MANŒUVRE.

FIG. 225.

MR. WARE.

(Black.)



MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P—K 5.	1. Kt—K 5.
2. B—Q 3.	2. P—Q 4.
3. Castles.	3. P—K 3.
4. Q—K 2.	4. B—B 4.
5. B × Kt.	5. B × B.
6. Kt—Kt 5.	6. B—B 4.
7. P—KKt 4.	7. P—KR 3.
8. P × B.	8. P × Kt.
9. P—B 6.	9. B—B 1.
10. P × P.	

And White won.

A *Compound Line of Manœuvre* is composed of those movements whose object is to occupy a given point with a given piece at a time when such occupation will compel the opponent either to adopt an improper strategic front, or to improperly construct the strategic front adopted, and at the same time will menace him either with loss in material, or with the junction of the given determinate force with the kindred hypothetical force.

A compound manœuvre aims at gain in material, either indirectly by destroying a portion of the adverse force, or directly by occupying a point on the logistic horizon and uniting with the kindred hypothetical force.

A compound line of manœuvre always is based upon a strategetic weakness contained either in Class V., VI., or VII.

PRINCIPLE.

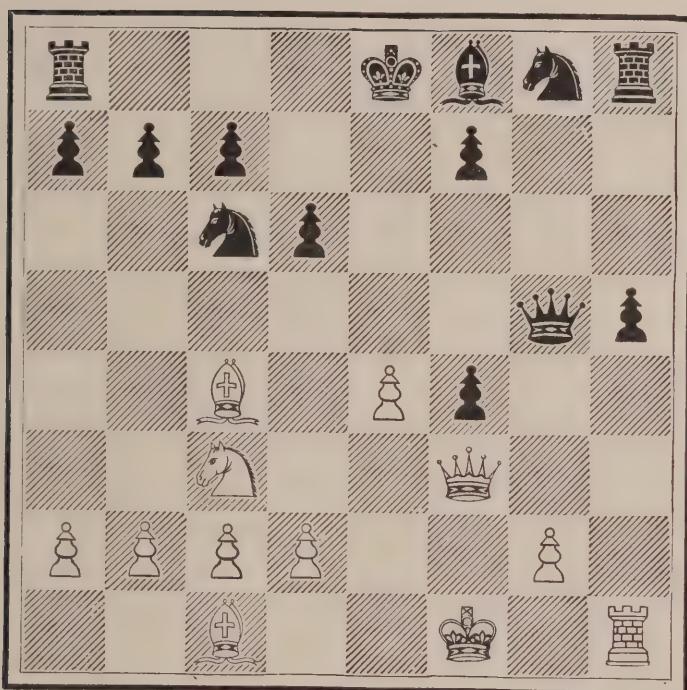
Having the initiative in a compound line of manœuvre, always select that move which unites the proper development of the strategic front, with the greatest possible gain to be derived from menacing the strategetic weakness existing in the adverse position.

COMPOUND LINE OF MANŒUVRE.

FIG. 226.

MR. FISKE.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. Kt — Q 5.
2. P — Q 4.
3. Q — Q B 3.
4. Q — R 5.
5. Q — B 7 (ck).
6. Q B × P.
7. B × Q.
8. Kt × Kt (ck).
9. B × R.

BLACK.

1. Castles (Q R).
2. Kt × P.
3. P — Q B 4.
4. K — Kt 1.
5. K — R 1.
6. Kt — K 3.
7. Kt × Q.
8. K — Kt 1.

And White won.

A *Complex Line of Manœuvre* is composed of those movements whose object is to occupy a given point with a given piece at a time when such occupation will compel the opponent to adopt either an improper strategic front, or to improperly construct the strategic front adopted, and at the same time will menace him with the loss of the prime strategetic point.

A complex line of manœuvre always aims at gaining command of the objective plane, and is based upon a strategetic weakness contained in either Class I., II., III., or IV.

PRINCIPLE.

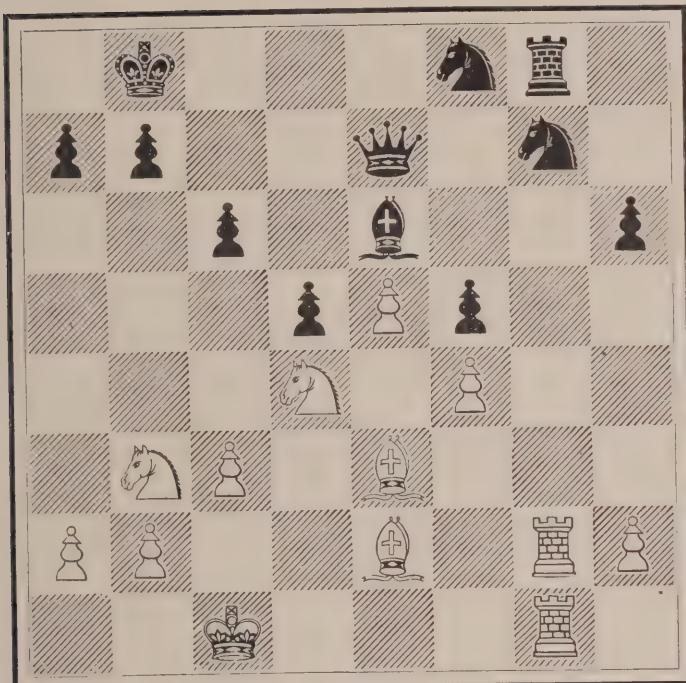
Having the initiative in a complex line of manœuvre, always select that move which unites the proper development of the strategic front with the greatest menace against the objective plane.

COMPLEX LINE OF MANŒUVRE.

FIG. 227.

MR. FELLNAR.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. B—QR 6.
2. Kt—B 6 (ck).
3. Q B × P.
4. B—Q 6 (ck).
5. Kt—B 5.
6. B × B.
7. P—K 6.
8. B—K 5.
9. B—Kt 7 (ck).
10. R × Kt.
11. R × R.

BLACK.

1. P—QB 4.
2. P × Kt.
3. Q—KB 2.
4. K—R 1.
5. B—QB 1.
6. P—QR 4.
7. Q—KB 3.
8. Q—K 2.
9. K—R 2.
10. R × R.
11. Q—KR 5.

White announces mate in nine moves.

LINES OF OPERATION.

A Line of Operation is composed of those movements whereby the greater force overcomes the opposing force.

Lines of operation are divided into three classes :—

- I. STRATEGIC.
- II. TACTICAL.
- III. LOGISTIC.

The object of a line of operation always is either to command the objective plane, to unite a determinate force with the kindred hypothetical force, or to destroy a portion of the adverse force.

A *Strategic Line of Operation* is composed of those processes whereby the greater force acquires possession of the objective plane.

A strategic line of operations always originates in a complex line of manœuvre; it always is directed against a strategic weakness either of Class I. or of Class II., and its value is determined by the coefficient of mobility of the ultimate objective plane.

The validity of any projected strategic line of operations is determined by the mobility of the ultimate objective plane.

PRINCIPLE.

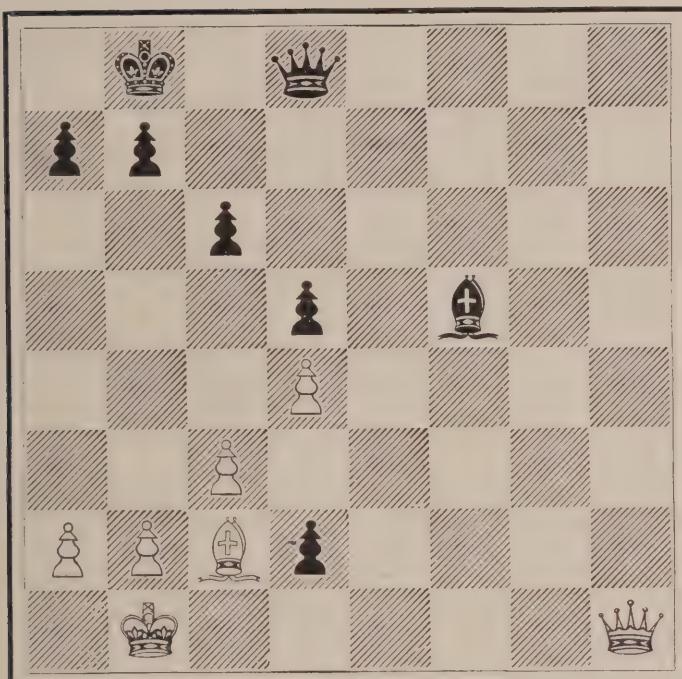
Whenever the net value of the kindred radii of offence is equal to the mobility of the ultimate objective plane, the projected strategic line of operation is valid.

STRATEGIC LINES OF OPERATION.

FIG. 228.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. KELSEY.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

BLACK.

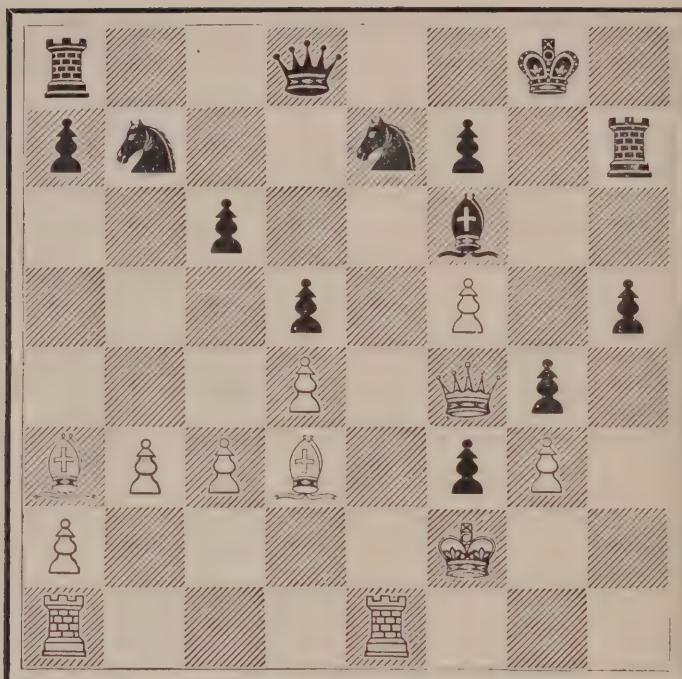
1. Q — K R 5.

Resigns.

FIG. 229.

MR. PANIN.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

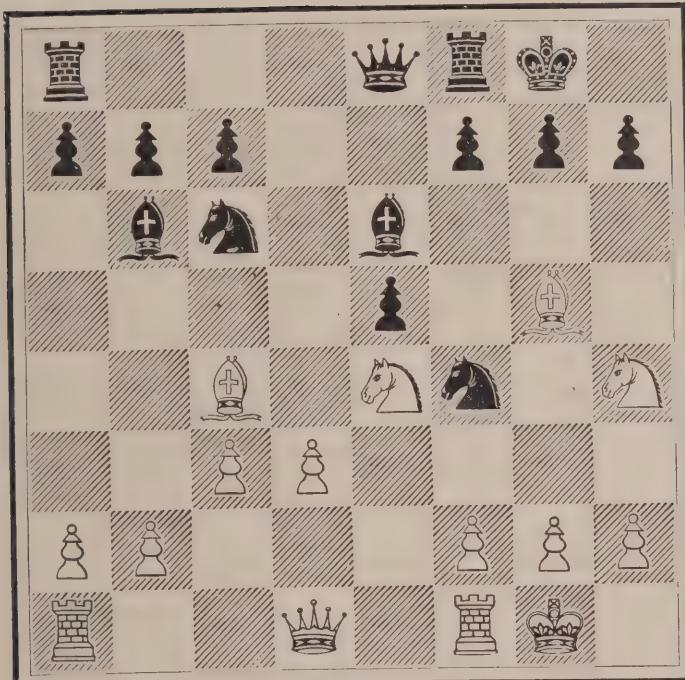
WHITE.	BLACK.
1. B × Kt.	1. B × B.
2. R × B.	2. Q × R.
3. P — B 6.	3. Q — B 1.
4. Q — Kt 5 (ck).	4. K — R 1.
5. B × R.	5. K × B.
6. Q × P (ck).	6. Q — R 3.
7. Q × P (ck).	7. K — R 1.
8. R — K R 1.	8. Q × R.
9. Q — K Kt 7 (ck).	

Checkmate.

FIG. 230.

MR. HILL.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. B — KB 6.
2. Q — Kt 4.
3. Kt — B 5.
4. Kt — R 6 (ck).
5. Q — Kt 5.
6. B × Kt P (ck).
7. Kt — KB 6.
8. Kt — R 5 (ck).
9. Q — KB 6 (ck).

BLACK.

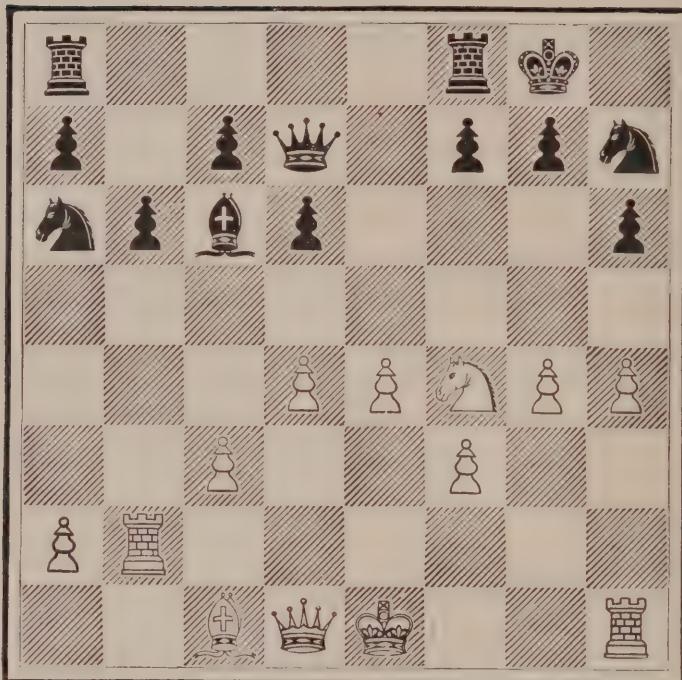
1. B × B.
2. Kt — Kt 3.
3. B — K 3.
4. K — R 1.
5. Kt (B 3) — K 2.
6. K × B.
7. Q — Q 1.
8. K — R 1.

Checkmate.

FIG. 231.

HERR KAUFMANN.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

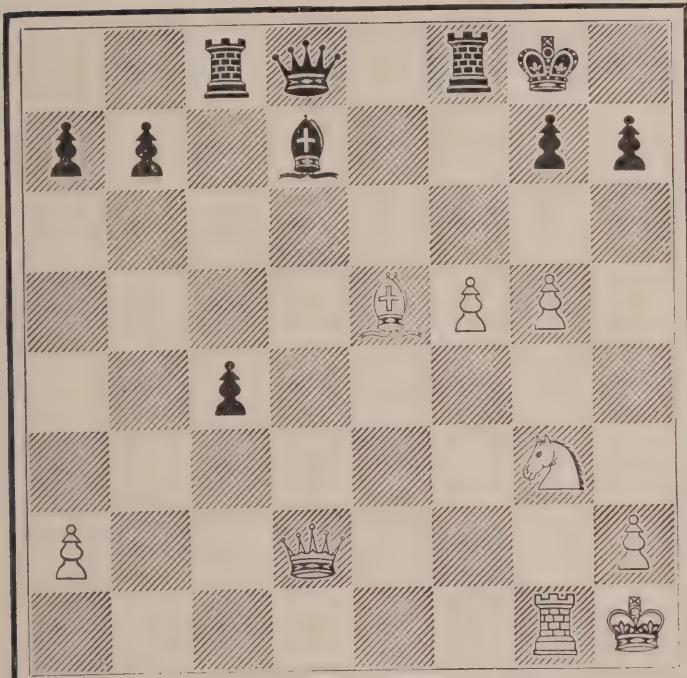
WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P - Kt5.	1. P × P.
2. P × P.	2. Kt × P.
3. Q - Kt3.	3. B - R5.
4. Kt - Kt6.	4. Kt - R2.
5. Q × B.	5. Q × Q.
6. Kt - K 7 (ck).	6. K - R1.
7. R × Kt (ck).	7. K × R.
8. R - K R 2 (ck).	

Checkmate.

FIG. 232.

MR. HARLOW.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. Q—Q 5 (ck).
2. P—Kt 6.
3. P × R (ck).
4. B × P (ck).
5. Kt—K 4 (dis ck).
6. P—B 8 (Q ck).
7. Q—Q 2 (ck).
8. Q—Kt 5 (ck).

BLACK.

1. R—K B 2.
2. B—B 3.
3. K—B 1.
4. K × B.
5. K—R 3.
6. Q × Q (B 8).
7. K—R 4.

Checkmate.

A *Tactical Line of Operation* is composed of those processes whereby an opposing force is reduced to the lesser force by the destruction of one or more of its integers.

A tactical line of operation always originates in a compound line of manœuvre.

A tactical line of operation always is directed against those strategical weaknesses which are contained in Classes III., V., or VI., and its value is determined by the excess of radii of offence over the adverse radii of defence.

The processes which appertain to tactical lines of operation are dominated by the principles of major tactics. These evolutions are treated of *in extenso* in "The Major Tactics of Chess."

The validity of any projected tactical line of operations is determined by the excess of kindred radii of offence over the adverse radii of defence.

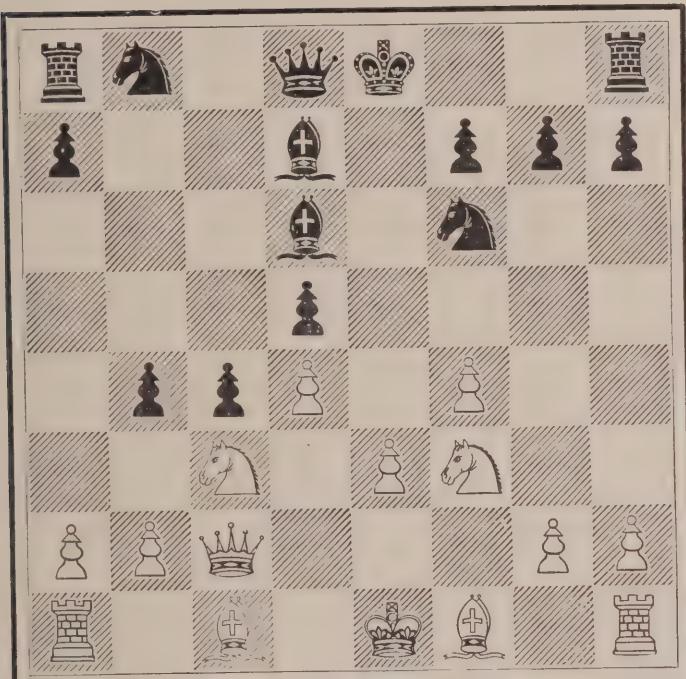
PRINCIPLE.

Whenever the sum total of kindred radii of offence is greater than the sum total of adverse radii of defence, the projected tactical line of operations is valid.

FIG. 233.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. WARE.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

In this situation White played Kt \times Q P, and the game continued:—

WHITE.

2. Q—K 4 (ck).
3. Q \times R.
4. Q \times R P.

BLACK.

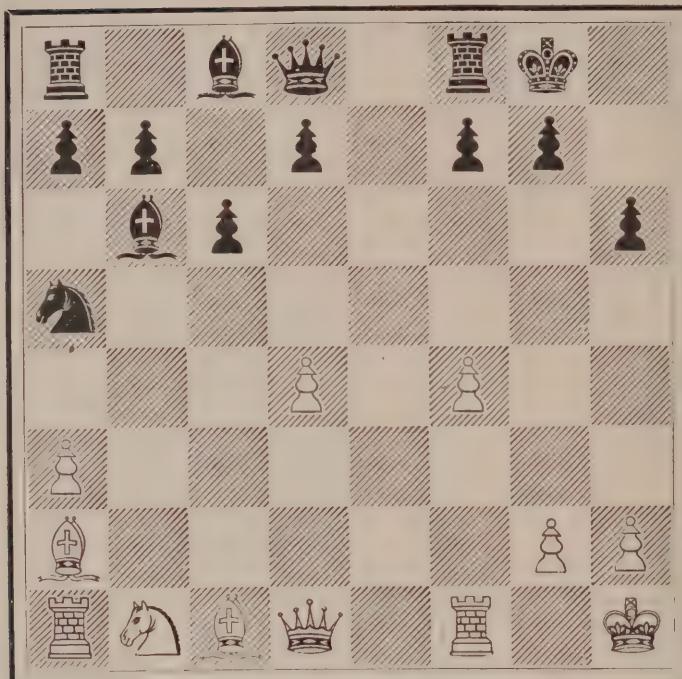
1. Kt \times Kt.
2. Kt—K 2.
3. B—Q B 3.
4. Kt—Q B 1.

And Black won.

FIG. 234.

MESSRS. STONE AND SAULSEN.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

In this situation White played $P - Q 5$, to which Black replied with $Q - K B 3$. White then played $Q - Q B 2$, and Black took the white Q R. The game continued :—

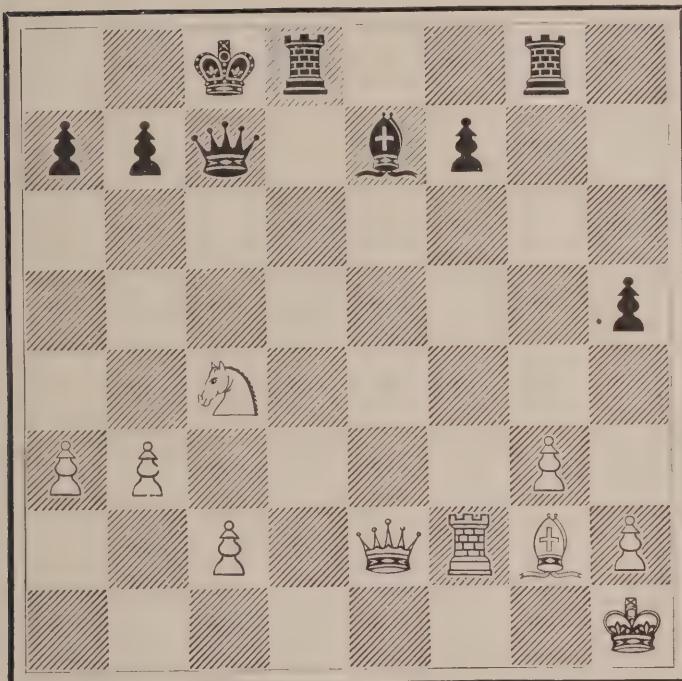
- | WHITE. | BLACK. |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. $Kt - Q B 3.$ | 1. $B - Q 5.$ |
| 2. $B - Q Kt 1.$ | 2. $P - K B 4.$ |
| 3. $B - Q Kt 2.$ | |

And White won.

FIG. 235.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. WARE.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

2. $R \times P.$
3. $R \times B.$
4. $B - KR3$ (ck).
5. $Q - KB1.$

BLACK.

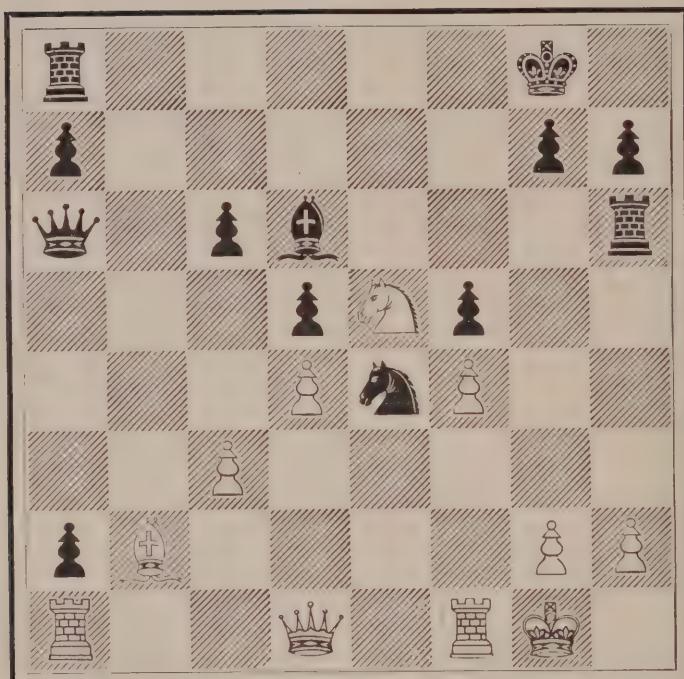
1. $P - KR5.$
2. $P \times P.$
3. $Q \times R.$
4. $K - Kt1.$
5. $Q - KR5.$

And Black won.

FIG. 236.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. HARLOW.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

2. Q — Q B 1.
3. R × P.
4. Q — K 1.
5. R × Q.

BLACK.

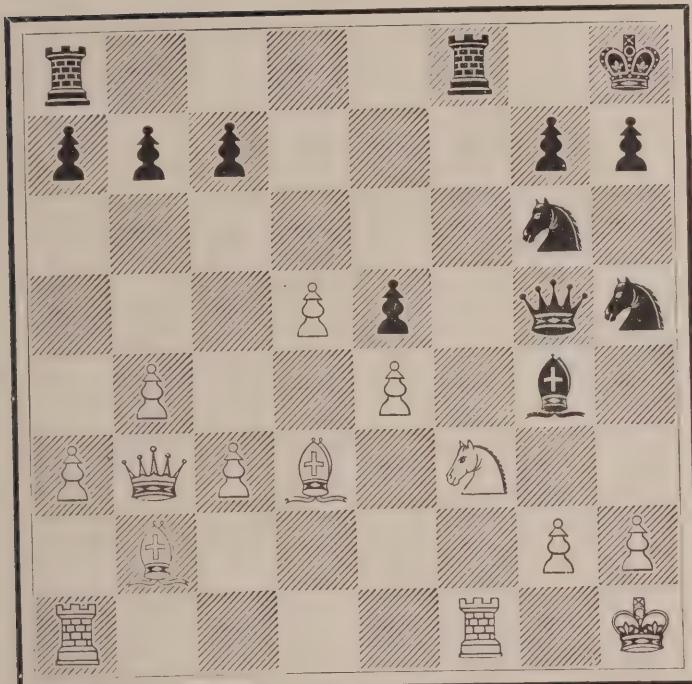
1. R — Q Kt 1.
2. Q — K 7.
3. B × Kt.
4. Q × Q.
5. B × B P.

And Black won.

FIG. 237.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. SARGENT.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

2. Q — Q 1.
3. B — Q B 2.
4. B — Q B 1.
5. Q — Q 3.
6. R × R.
7. B — K 3.
8. K — Kt 1.

BLACK.

1. Q — K 6.
2. Kt (R 4) — B 5.
3. Kt × Kt P.
4. Q — Kt 3.
5. R × Kt.
6. Kt — K 8.
7. B × R (ck).
8. Kt × Q.

And Black won.

A *Logistic Line of Operation* is composed of those processes whereby a given hypothetical force is united to the kindred determinate force.

A logistic line of operation always originates in a compound line of manœuvre, and always is directed against a strategetic weakness contained either in Class IV., V., or VII.

A logistic line of operation always is directed against those strategetic weaknesses which are contained in Classes IV., V., or VII., and its value is determined by the freedom of the pawn altitudes from adverse points of resistance.

The processes incident to logistic lines of operation are treated *in extenso* in "The Major Tactics of Chess."

The validity of any projected logistic line of operations is determined by the absence of adverse points of resistance from the kindred pawn altitude.

PRINCIPLE.

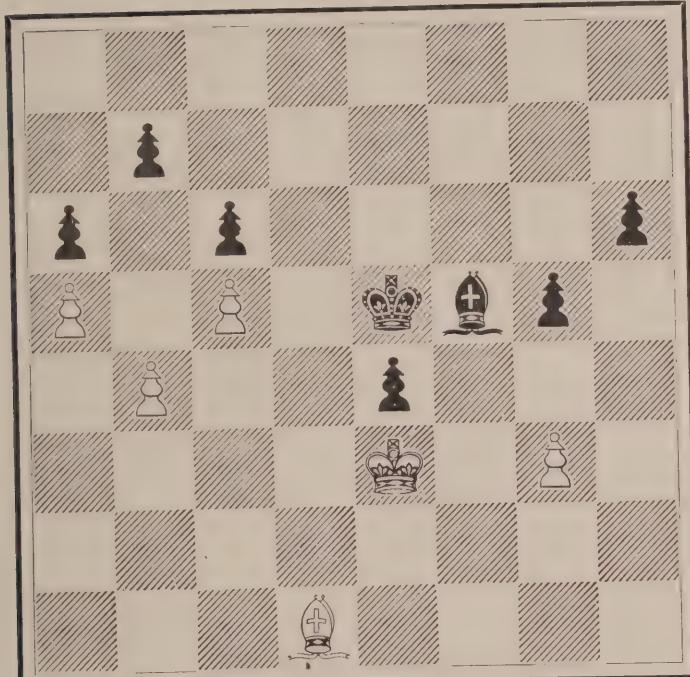
Whenever all adverse points of resistance are or can be eliminated from one or more kindred pawn altitudes, then the projected logistic line of operations is valid.

LOGISTIC LINES OF OPERATION.

FIG. 238.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. WARE.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

2. B — K Kt 4.
3. B — Q B 8.
4. B × P.
5. K — B 2.
6. K × P.

BLACK.

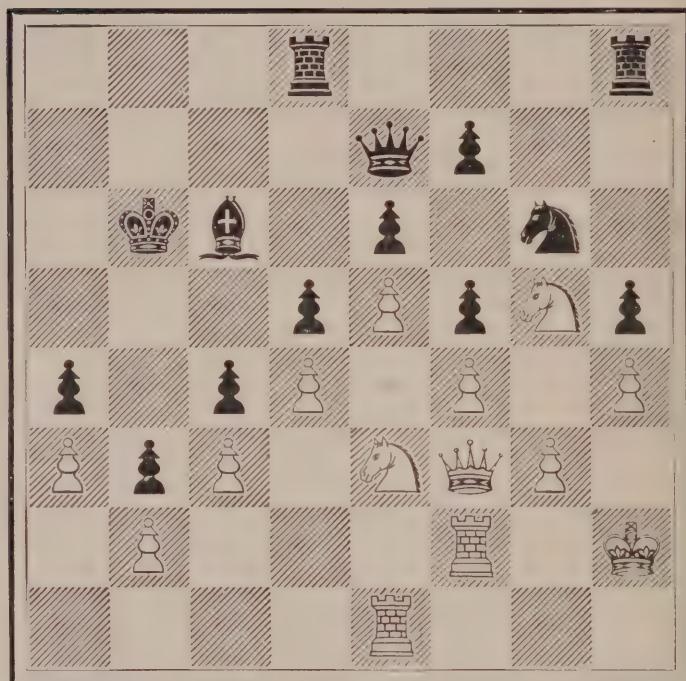
1. B — Kt 3.
2. P — K R 4.
3. P — R 5.
4. P — R 6.
5. P — K 6 (ek).
6. B — K 5.

And Black won.

FIG. 239.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

CAPTAIN MACKENZIE.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

In this situation the game obviously is drawn. Black having to move, played $B - Q\ 2$, leaving his $Q\ P$ apparently inadequately supported. The game continued :

WHITE.

1. $Q \times Q\ P.$
2. $Kt \times Q\ P\ (ck).$
3. $Kt \times Q\ (ck).$
4. $Kt \times B\ P.$
5. $Kt \times K\ R.$

BLACK.

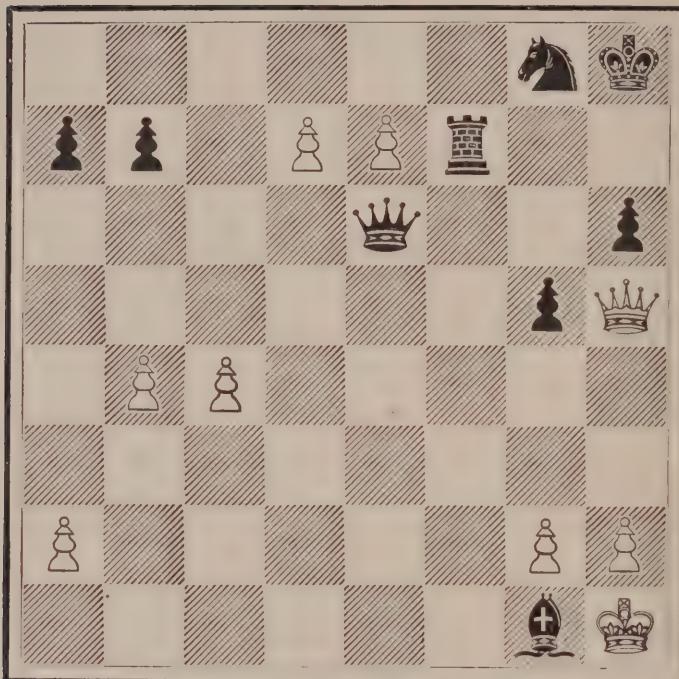
1. $P \times Q.$
2. $K - B\ 3.$
3. $Kt \times Kt.$
4. $B - K\ 3.$
5. $R \times Kt.$

White now did not see fit to sacrifice the Q P by P – Q 5 (ck), but moved R – Q 2, whereupon Black won by blocking the position by K – Q 4 and R *via* K Kt 1 to K Kt 5; then playing Kt to K R 4, withdrawing the R to K Kt 2, and occupying K Kt 5 with the Kt; then bringing the R to Q 2, withdrawing the K to B 3 and posting Q B at K 5 *via* Q 4, followed by K – Q 4 again; then by returning R to K Kt 5, withdrawing the Kt to K R 4, and from thence moving it to Q Kt 4, after which the R was brought in two moves *via* K Kt 2 to Q Kt 2, whereupon Black won at once by Kt × Q R P.

FIG. 240.

MR. ORDE.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. P — K 8 (Q).
2. Q — K 2.
3. Q — Q Kt 2 (ck).
4. Q × Q.
5. Q × Kt (ck).
6. P — Q 8 (Q ck).
7. Q × B.
8. Q — K Kt 1.
9. K × R.
10. K — B 2.
11. K — K 3.

BLACK.

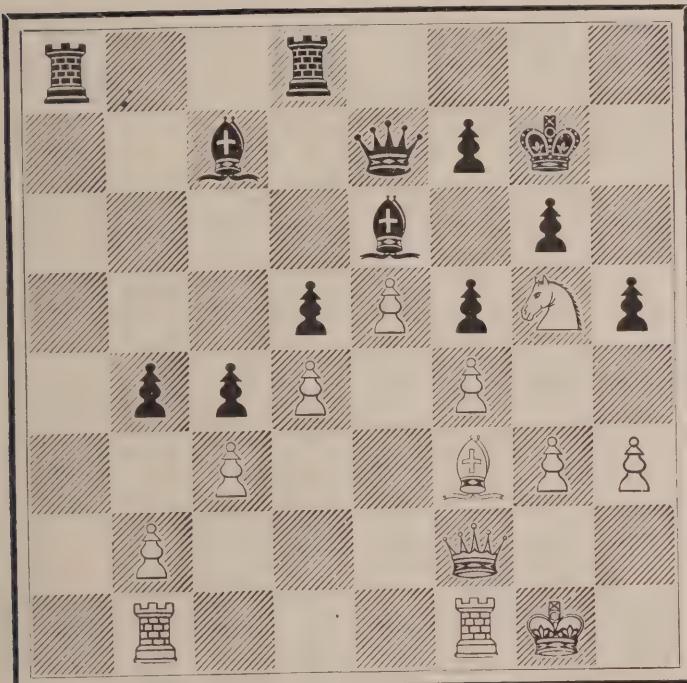
1. R — K B 8.
2. R — Q Kt 8.
3. R × Q.
4. B — Q 5.
5. K × Q.
6. K — B 2.
7. R — Kt 8 (ck).
8. R × Q (ck).
9. K — K 3.
10. K — K 4.

And White won.

FIG. 241.

MR. YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. WARE.

Black to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. $P \times P$.
2. $P \times P$.
3. $Q - K 3$.
4. $Q R - Q B 1$.
5. $R - Q B 2$.
6. $K R - Q B 1$.
7. $B - Q 1$.

BLACK.

1. $P \times P$.
2. $Q - R 6$.
3. $B - R 4$.
4. $R - Q 2$.
5. $R - Q Kt 1$.
6. $R - Kt 7$.
7. $R (Q 2) - Kt 2$.

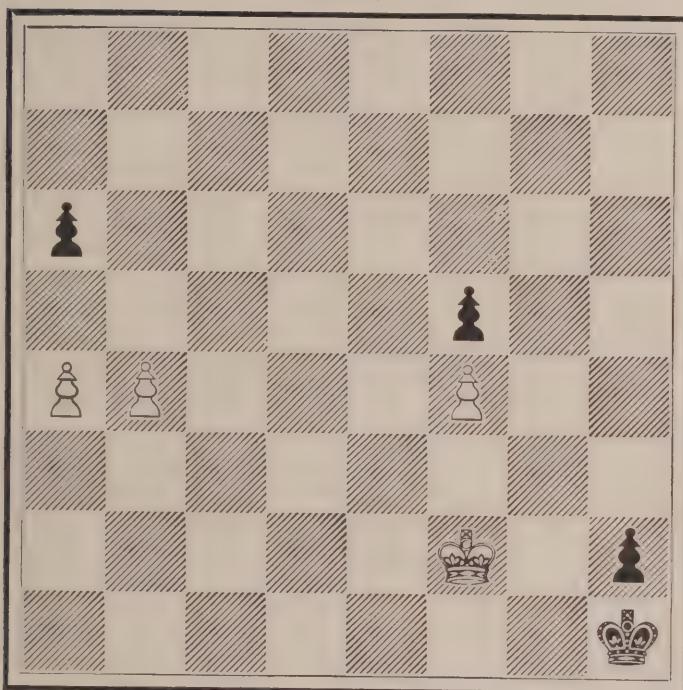
- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 8. Kt — B 3. | 8. R × R. |
| 9. R × R. | 9. R — Kt 8. |
| 10. Q — K 2. | 10. Q — R 8. |
| 11. K — Kt 2. | 11. B × B P. |
| 12. R — Q R 2. | 12. Q × R. |
| 13. Q × Q. | 13. R — Kt 7 (ck). |
| 14. Q × R. | 14. B × Q. |
| 15. B — B 2. | 15. P — K B 3. |
| 16. K — B 2. | 16. P × P. |
| 17. B P × P. | 17. P — K B 5. |
| 18. P × P. | 18. Q B × P. |
| 19. K — Kt 3. | 19. B — Kt 5. |
| 20. Kt — R 4. | 20. P — Kt 4. |
| 21. P × P. | 21. B × Q P. |
| 22. K — B 4. | 22. B — Kt 7. |
| 23. B — B 5. | 23. B — B 8 (ck). |
| 24. K — Kt 3. | 24. B × P. |
| 25. B × B. | 25. B × Kt (ck). |
| 26. K × B. | 26. P × B. |
| 27. K × P. | 27. P — B 6. |

And Black won.

FIG. 242.

MR. SAULSEN.

(Black.)



(White.)

MR. YOUNG.

White to move.

THE PLAY.

WHITE.

1. K - B 1.
2. K - B 2.
3. P - R 5.
4. P - R 6.
5. P - R 7.
6. P Queens (ck).
7. Q - Q R 1 (ck).

BLACK.

1. P - Q R 4.
2. P × P.
3. P - Kt 6.
4. P - Kt 7.
5. P Queens.
6. Q - K 5.

And Black resigns.

GREATER LOGISTICS.

Greater Logisties treats of those movements of forces which are contained in lines of Manceuvre and in lines of Operation.

LOGISTICS OF WHITE'S FIRST MOVE.

If, in a tournament or in a match at chess, and having the white pieces, you should open the deciding game with 1 P — K R 3, to say that you thereby would create a sensation among the onlookers would be putting it mildly.

As a matter of fact your friends would look at you in blank dismay, so to speak, whilst your opponents would hug themselves and murmur gleefully to each other, “Whom the gods seek to destroy, they first make mad,” and other like trite and equally applicable quotations.

If, however, you should blandly ask them to point out the incongruity attaching to your initial play, they all, with one voice, would tell you that “It is a wasted move!” or worse, “It weakens the King’s side, and becomes a mark for attack after castling;” or “You should have opened your game on the centre, of course.”

If now you should ask them how can they tell but that you will be more benefited later in the game by this posting of the pawn, than you will be hurt by the immediate loss of time; and if you should ask them how they know whether you intend to castle or not, and if you have not still the option of castling Q R; and if you should suggest that you could even now proceed as second player, with the advantage of having the K R P at its third to prevent the posting of the adverse Q B or K Kt at your K Kt 4,—you would find that a number would applaud and express admiration for the

soundness and ingenuity of your statement, and that players of the highest rank, and men of good judgment, while far from accepting your fallacy, yet by it are reduced to silence, or to mere vociferation.

For these people have never heard nor read what you yourself here read for the first time : —

PRINCIPLE.

I. Never form the right appui by posting the K R P at K R 3 until the objective plane has been, or must become, located on the King's wing, and the major right oblique has been, or can be, established.

II. Never form the right minor crochet by posting the K R P at K R 3, until the opponent has established the major right oblique refused and echeloned.

Thus you see it obviously is wrong and unscientific for either White or Black to deploy P — K R 3 on the first move ; and so clear and positive is the principle which governs the play of this integer of chess force throughout the game, that with the exercise of ordinary common sense you should never be at loss as to when and when not to play P — K R 3.

Again, suppose that you had on your initial move as White played 1 P — Kt 4. In like fashion you would have brought down about your ears a storm of contumely, and, as before, this from people utterly unable to give a logical and conclusive reason for the faith that is in them. This is no more difficult to formulate than is the preceding.

PRINCIPLE.

I. Never form the right echelon by P — Kt 4 until the major right oblique is established and the objective

plane permanently located on the King's wing. Preferably form the right appui with K at KR2 and KR at KKt1, previous to forming the right echelon by P—KKt4.

II. Never form the right major crochet by P—KKt4 until the left oblique is established and the objective plane permanently located on the King's wing.

This statement seems so clear and direct, that plain common sense would ensure the correct play of the KKtP in all situations.

There are many fine chess players who have a fondness for the initial move for White of 1 P—KB4.

By this move White commits himself to the right oblique, and imposes upon himself the obligation to establish sooner or later the open game by P—K4. He can have no hope of developing by the left in case Black should castle QR, for his point KB3 is devoid of its pawn. Furthermore, his king is exposed, and he has notified the opponent on the first move that he will castle on the King's wing. This, of course, does not lose the game offhand for White, but according to this theory these disadvantages make 1 P—KB4 an inferior initial move, for the reasons above clearly and decidedly stated, added to which is the fact that, taken together, they give Black more security than he by right is entitled to, and more than he possesses if White adopts any one of several other initial moves.

PRINCIPLE.

Never form the right en potence by 1 P—KB4 until the objective plane is or must become permanently located on the King's wing, and until the right oblique is, or can be, established.

Before treating of the K P and the Q P as an initial move for White, let us, as a matter of simplicity, proceed with the consideration of the pawns on the Queen's wing.

The Queen's rook's pawn is readily disposed of, viz. :—

PRINCIPLE.

I. Never form the left appui by P — Q R 3 until the prime strategetic point and the objective plane have both been permanently located on the Queen's wing, and until the major left oblique is, or can be, established.

II. Never form the left minor crochet by P — Q R 3 until the opponent has established the major left oblique refused and echeloned.

The initial move of 1 P — Q Kt 4 is no less unscientific than the preceding, as will readily be seen from the following :—

PRINCIPLE.

I. Never form the left major crochet by P — Q Kt 4 until the objective plane is permanently located on the Queen's wing, and the right oblique is established.

II. Never form the left echelon by P — Q Kt 4 until the prime strategetic point and the objective plane have both become permanently located on the Queen's wing, and the major left oblique is established. Preferably form the left appui with K at Q R 2 and Q R at Q Kt 1, previous to forming the left echelon by P — Q Kt 4.

The initial move of 1 P — Q B 4, while not so objectionable as 1 P — K B 4, inasmuch as the King is not thereby so greatly exposed, is, however, open to similar

criticism. The strategic front is compelled to take direction to the left or to the left refused, for the point Q B 3 is now denuded of its pawn, and in case White attempts to establish the open game by P — K 4, his king must castle Q R. Of course White can continue with the close game when his king may properly castle K R, but in this case he adopts what this theory considers an inferior strategic front, and gives Black more security than he is entitled to, and more than he will possess if the proper initial move is made by White.

PRINCIPLE.

I. Never form the left en potence until the objective plane is permanently located on the left, and until the left oblique is established.

II. Never form the left alignment until the left oblique refused is established.

The initial move of 1 P — Q 4 for White is regarded as a sound opening by all authorities. This theory plainly declares that while the situation resulting equally from 1 P — Q 4 and 1 K Kt — B 3 is so strong and valid when reinforced by the advantage of the first move, that it is properly to be regarded as a legitimate line of mobilization, yet it is far inferior to 1 P — K 4, for the strategic front thus obtained is not established upon the strategetic centre. In most instances it does not take the direction of the objective plane; in no case does it permit of the formation of the crochet aligned; and in all cases the prime strategetic point is permanently located on the refused wing,— all of which is in direct opposition to this theory.

PRINCIPLE.

Never form the left oblique refused by $P - Q\,4$ when it is possible to establish either the right oblique or the left oblique by the initial move of $1\,P - K\,4$.

The initial move of $1\,P - Q\,Kt\,3$ is very bad, and should never be adopted by White.

PRINCIPLE.

Never form the fianchetto except as an accessory to the oblique refused, and then only when the objective plane is, or must become, permanently located on the opposite wing.

The best initial move for White is $1\,P - K\,4$.

PRINCIPLE.

Always deploy so that the right oblique may be readily established in case the objective plane remains upon, or becomes permanently located on, the centre or on the King's wing, or that the left oblique may be readily established if the objective plane becomes permanently located on the Queen's wing, or that the crochet aligned may readily be established if the objective plane becomes permanently located otherwise than at the extremity of the strategic front.

LOGISTICS OF BLACK'S FIRST MOVE.

The principles which govern the White pieces apply equally to those of Black, and for exactly the same reasons that it is best for the first player, so is the move **1 P — K 4** best for the second player.

The second player labors under a great disadvantage from the outset. This disadvantage is not that White is one move ahead, but it is that while White, from the advantage of the initiative, can establish his strategic front on the strategetic centre, Black, from the lack of the initiative, cannot establish his strategic front on the strategetic centre, but must be satisfied with the oblique refused, *i. e.* with the inferior position.

Thus is imposed upon Black the onus of equalizing matters before White can render his advantage decisive.

Now, if you read the great authorities on chess play or on warfare, you will find that none of them have any word of advice, or even of cheer, for Black, *i. e.* for the second or defending player. Everything is devoted to the attack, and to making the attack successful — the other fellow must take care of himself.

The writer, therefore, since nobody else seems to have taken the trouble to do it, has deduced the principles of defence, and formulated them for the benefit of the under dog, viz.:—

PRINCIPLE.

All else being equal, the strategetic defensive always loses.

PRINCIPLE.

Things being unequal, the strategetic defensive may draw.

PRINCIPLE.

Whether things be equal or unequal, the strategetic defensive never can win.

Thus you see that, these principles being true, Black is in bad shape. All writers heretofore have left him in that condition, and have failed to notice that there is one ray of light for the poor fellow in all this, viz.:—

PRINCIPLE.

It is much easier to operate offensively than to manœuvre defensively, but it is much more difficult to manœuvre offensively than to manœuvre defensively.

All this means that against a weaker force it is easy to attack and to win, even by crude and bungling processes, and that for the weaker force to defend successfully, even against such processes, requires the greatest skill and accuracy. But when the forces are equal, things are different. True, it is easy to attack; but to attack scientifically is extremely difficult, while to neutralize an unscientific attack is matter of comparative ease.

Hence the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

The nature of the offensive is constructive, and the nature of the defensive is destructive, and the prime energies of the defence always must be devoted to destroying those formations which the attack labors to erect.

This principle is the polar star of the defending player in all situations.

But this is not all. It is evident that if Black remains Black, that he cannot win, and that if Black wants to win, he must become White. Thus we have:—

PRINCIPLE.

Having originally the strategetic defensive, acquire the strategetic offensive as early as possible, and having acquired the strategetic offensive, mobilize, develop, manœuvre, and operate as though having the strategetic offensive originally.

The following table shows the possible opening moves by White, and the proper responses by Black:—

WHITE.	BLACK.
1 P — K 4 (Best).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K 3 (Inferior).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K B 4 (Inferior).	1 P — Q 4.
1 P — K B 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K Kt 4 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K Kt 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K R 4 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — K R 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q 4 (Inferior).	1 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.

1 P — Q B 4 (Inferior).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q B 3 (Inferior).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q Kt 4 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q Kt 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q R 4 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 P — Q R 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 K Kt — K B 3 (Inferior).	1 P — Q 4.
1 K Kt — K R 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 Q Kt — Q B 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.
1 Q Kt — Q R 3 (Bad).	1 P — K 4.

LOGISTICS OF WHITE'S SECOND MOVE.

The line of defence adopted by Black, of course, materially affects White's second move. But in all cases the latter is governed by the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

I. After 1 P — K 4 always establish the first supporting parallel at the earliest possible moment, but, all else being equal, never offer the exchange of the Q P for the adverse K P unless the objective plane can thereby be permanently located on the centre, or unless the major front can thereby be established and the objective plane permanently located on the King's side; nor for the adverse Q B P, unless the attack can be directed by the left against a compromised adverse left centre, or unless the Q P can be replaced by the Q B P and the attack eventually directed, either by the right or by the left, along a major strategic front.

II. Whenever the first supporting parallel cannot be established on the second move, always deploy 2 K Kt — B 3.

White having opened with 1 P — K 4, the following table shows the correct responses by White to all the lines of defence possible to be adopted by Black:—

BLACK.	WHITE.
1 P — K 4 (Best).	2 Kt — K B 3.
1 P — K 3 (Inferior).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — K B 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — K Kt 4 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — K Kt 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — K R 4 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — K R 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q B 4 (Inferior).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q B 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q Kt 4 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q Kt 3 (Inferior).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q R 4 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 P — Q R 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 Kt — K B 3 (Bad).	2 P — K 5, followed by 3 P — Q 4.
1 Kt — K R 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.
1 Kt — Q B 3 (Inferior).	2 P — Q 4.
1 Kt — Q R 3 (Bad).	2 P — Q 4.

If, after 1 P — K 4, 1 P — K 4, White plays 2 Kt — Q B 3, he thereby is guilty of a strategic error, inasmuch as he commits himself prematurely to the attack by the left, and permits Black to manœuvre as White by 2 Kt — K B 3.

If White plays 2 P — K B 4, he is guilty of a strategic error in prematurely forming the en potence and permitting Black to manœuvre as White by 2 P — Q 4.

If White plays 2 P — Q B 3, he is guilty of a strategic error in committing himself prematurely to the attack by the left, and permitting Black to manœuvre as White by 2 P — Q 4.

If White plays 2 B — Q B 4, he is guilty of a strategic error in permitting Black to operate as White by 2 Kt — K B 3.

Hence we have:—

PRINCIPLE.

Never permit Black to establish those formations which, by the advantage of the initiative, properly belong to White.

LOGISTICS OF BLACK'S SECOND MOVE.

After 1 P — K 4, 1 P — K 4, and 2 Kt — K B 3, the line of manœuvre becomes complicated by the entry of the element of major tactics, *i.e.* the black K P is menaced with capture by the white K Kt. All situations of this kind are dominated by the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

Loss of material, all else being equal, always leads to loss of position, and eventuates in decisive loss in both.

Consequently, unless there be a corresponding gain, Black cannot permit the capture of his K P, and he obviously is restricted in his selection of a second move to one which prevents the threatened loss of material.

The following table shows the various responses possible to Black after White's move 2 Kt — K B 3.

WHITE.	BLACK.
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 Kt — K B 3 (Inferior).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 Kt — Q B 3 (Best).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 P — Q 4 (Inferior).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 P — Q 3 (Inferior).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 P — K B 4 (Inferior).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 P — K B 3 (Bad).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 Q — K 2 (Bad).
2 Kt — K B 3.	2 Q — K B 3 (Bad).

Obviously no other move by Black will maintain the attacked K P, and the consideration of these moves in detail shows:—

The sortie of the Q is bad. At K 2 she is posted, not in accordance with the right oblique refused, which is the strategic front available to Black, and she impedes the deployment of the K B in violation of the laws of lesser logistics. At K B 3 she likewise is herself improperly posted with regard to the strategic front, and she also impedes the deployment of the K Kt at K B 3. This also opens to White a simple line of manoeuvre by 3 P — Q 4, and the time gained for White by the forced retreat of the black Q would permit the black K P to be overwhelmed by the united white Q P and K Kt.

The advance of the black K B P manifestly is in violation of the laws both of strategy and of logistics, and whether the P is played to K B 3 or to K B 4, the resultant exposure of the black prime strategetic point will seriously compromise his game.

The advance of the black Q P to Q 3 is very inferior, from the fact that it impedes the deployment of the black K B at Q B 4, and permits of the establishment of the first supporting parallel by White.

The deployment of the Q P at Q 4 by Black is premature, as the supporting parallel thus formed is inadequately supported, and White's advantage of the move will gain for him the superior position.

2 Kt — Q B 3 is the best second move for Black. This deployment is entirely consistent with strategic principle as laid down in this theory, and is the only second move for Black which fulfils all requirements.

2 Kt — K B 3 is not free from flaws. It is, however, better play than any second move for Black other than

2 Q Kt—B 3. But like 2 P—Q 4, this attempt on the part of Black to assume the offensive and to play as White will fail against the best play and result in the inferior game for Black. The reason of this is that White always, by the advantage of the move, will be able to denude the black King's wing of the K Kt, and compel Black to castle on that side, or else to secure a great advantage in deployment resulting from Black's loss of time on the centre.

PRINCIPLE.

With the prime strategetic point located on the centre or the King's wing, and the strategic front being refused either by the right or by the left, the King's knight and the communications of the King's knight with the kindred point K B 3 must be preserved until such time as the front by the right refused can be aligned, or the K Kt can be replaced at K B 3 by the Q Kt.

LOGISTICS OF WHITE'S THIRD MOVE.

After $1 P - K 4$, $1 P - K 4$; $2 Kt - KB 3$, $2 Kt - QB 3$, the subsequent play of White throughout the opening is dominated by the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

Never permit Black, after he has played $1 P - K 4$, to establish the first supporting parallel, or to deploy his KB at $QB 4$, or to transform his front by the right refused into the minor right oblique, until by so doing he permits White to establish the major right oblique and to dislodge the Black Kt from the Black point $KB 3$; and always, when possible, compel the deployment of the Black QP at $Q 3$ previous to the deployment of the Black KB .

The following table shows the feasible responses of White to Black's deployment of $2 Q Kt - B 3$:—

BLACK.	WHITE.
$2 Q Kt - B 3.$	$3 B - Q Kt 5$ (Best).
$2 Q Kt - B 3.$	$3 B - Q B 4$ (Inferior).
$2 Q Kt - B 3.$	$3 Q Kt - B 3$ (Bad).
$2 Q Kt - B 3.$	$3 P - Q 4$ (Inferior).
$2 Q Kt - B 3.$	$3 P - Q B 3$ (Bad).

3 P — Q B 3, by White, is bad, because it permits Black to establish at once the first supporting parallel by 3 P — Q 4 and subsequently to deploy as White.

3 Q Kt — B 3, by White, is bad, because White is thus committed to the attack by the left, and also permits Black to deploy the K B either at Q B 4 or at Q Kt 5.

3 P — Q 4, by White, is inferior, because it subsequently permits the deployment of the Black K B at Q B 4.

3 B — Q B 4 is inferior, because it permits Black at once to establish his K B at Q B 4.

White's best third move is 3 B — Q Kt 5, because it prevents the deployment of the Black K B at Q B 4 or at Q Kt 5, or of the Q P at Q 4, and limits Black to a deployment on the right oblique refused.

LOGISTICS OF BLACK'S THIRD MOVE.

After $1 P - K 4$, $1 P - K 4$; $2 Kt - KB 3$, $2 Kt - QB 3$; $3 B - Q Kt 5$, Black cannot attempt to deploy his $K B$, nor to establish the first supporting parallel.

The following table shows the feasible responses of Black to White's play of $3 B - Q Kt 5$:

WHITE.	BLACK.
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 Kt - KB 3$ (Best).
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 B - QB 4$ (Bad).
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 P - Q 4$ (Bad).
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 P - Q 3$ (Inferior).
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 P - QR 3$ (Bad).
$3 B - Q Kt 5.$	$3 Kt - Q 5$ (Inferior).

$3 Kt - Q 5$, for Black, is inferior, as by the advantage of the move White will establish the major right oblique aligned, and Black will be obliged to castle on the King's wing in a position wherein he is entirely on the defensive.

$3 P - QR 3$, for Black, is bad, inasmuch as the left minor crochet is of no utility in a minor right oblique refused, nor in a full front unopposed by the major oblique echeloned.

$3 P - Q 3$, for Black, is bad, as the $K B$ is thus prevented from deploying at $QB 4$.

$3 P - Q 4$, for Black in this situation, would be a vio-

lation of the principles of major tactics, *i.e.* a tactical blunder, which in this case would lose him his K P.

3 B — Q B 4, for Black, is bad, as White thereby would be enabled to eventually establish the first supporting parallel by the advantage of the move.

Black's best move is 3 Kt — K B 3. This deployment is entirely in harmony with strategic principle, and Black's position at this point is the best that he can attain against correct play on the part of White.

Black's subsequent play in the opening is governed by the following: —

PRINCIPLE.

Never permit White to establish the first supporting parallel, nor to convert his minor strategic front into a major or a grand strategic front having the direction of the objective plane.

Should White succeed in establishing a major or a grand strategic front, never permanently locate the prime strategic point at the extremity of such adverse strategic front, and in the latter case never permit a white Kt to become posted at B 5 on that wing upon which the prime strategic point is or must become permanently located.

LOGISTICS OF WHITE'S FOURTH MOVE.

White's best fourth move in the opening formed by the foregoing is $4\text{ P-Q}4$, as played by Morphy.

White by this move deploys the proper pawn, forms the first supporting parallel, prevents Black from playing $4\text{ K B-B}4$, or $4\text{ P-Q}4$, or even $4\text{ P-Q}3$. That is, Black cannot deploy, as the situation is one of major tactics and he is menaced with the loss of material.

Black's proper reply, and the further treatment of this and of all other chess openings, will be found in the fourth volume of this series, entitled *Chess Strategetics, Illustrated*.

LOGISTICS OF THE PRIME STRATEGETIC POINT.

The situation of the prime strategetic point with regard to the objective plane is the very essence of this system of chess play, and under all circumstances the movement termed "castling" is dominated by the following principles:—

PRINCIPLE.

Whenever the objective plane is permanently located on the centre, with all speed castle K R, open the King's file, and occupy it with the King's rook.

PRINCIPLE.

Whenever the objective plane is or must become permanently located on the King's wing, and the right oblique is or can be established, and the King's file is open, with all speed castle K R and occupy the King's file with the K R if the black King's wing is denuded of a Kt; but if the K file is closed, or if a black Kt is posted at Black's K B 3, occupy the King's file with the Q R.

PRINCIPLE.

If the strategic front is directed by the right refused or by the left refused, and the opponent has not, and cannot establish a major strategic front, castle K R.

PRINCIPLE.

If the strategic front is established by the left, and the objective plane is or must become permanently located on the right, castle Q R; and if the strategic front is directed by the right, and the objective plane is or must become permanently located on the left, castle K R.

If the objective plane is or must become permanently located on the left, and the left oblique is or may be established, castle Q R.

In all cases wherein the opponent has or can establish a major or a grand strategic front by the right, castle Q R; and in all cases where the opponent has or can establish a major or a grand strategic front by the left, castle K R; but in either case do not castle until the direction of the adverse major or grand strategic front is determined.

PRINCIPLE.

In all situations never castle in such a manner as to locate the prime strategetic point at the extremity of an adverse major or grand strategic front, or on the same side with an adverse crochet aligned if an adverse Kt is or can be posted at the adverse strategetic objective.

LOGISTICS OF OBJECTIVE PLANES.

The location of the King, when regarded as the centre of the objective plane, always is dominated by the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a minor front, and is directed by the right, the opponent may locate the objective plane on the right, provided he can prevent the development of the adverse front into a major or a grand front.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a minor front, and is not directed either by the right or by the left, the opponent should locate the objective plane on the side which is not the extremity of an adverse major or grand front, nor exposed to the attack of the crochet aligned.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a minor front, and is directed by the left, the opponent may locate the objective plane on the left, provided he can prevent the development of the adverse front into the major or grand front.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a major front, and is directed by the right, the opponent must locate the objective plane on the left.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a major front, and is directed by the left, the opponent must locate the objective plane on the right.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a major front, and is directed by the right refused, the opponent should locate the objective plane on the left.

PRINCIPLE.

When the strategic front is a major front, and is directed by the left refused, the opponent should locate the objective plane on the right.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a minor front by the right with a major front, the objective plane being located on the right, the adverse Q P should remain at Q 3. If, however, the Q P is at Q 4, the K B P may be utilized for that purpose.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a minor front by the left into a major front, the objective plane should be located at Q Kt 1, and the Q B P posted at Q B 3.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a minor front by the right refused into a major front refused, the objective plane being located on the right, align the strategic front by P — K B 4.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a minor front by the left refused into a major front refused, the objective plane being located on the left, align the strategic front by P — Q B 4.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a single front directed by the right into a double front by the formation of the crochet aligned, the objective plane being located on the left, maintain the Q P at Q 3, and exchange the adverse knights.

PRINCIPLE.

To prevent the development of a single front directed by the left into a double front by the formation of the crochet aligned, the objective plane being located on the right, exchange the adverse knights.

LOGISTICS OF STRATEGIC FRONTS.

The value of a strategic front is determined by the position of the prime strategic point, the location of the objective plane, and the validity of the opposing pawn line.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor right oblique is a superior strategic front to the minor right oblique refused or the minor left oblique refused, and is properly opposed only by the minor right oblique.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor left oblique is a superior strategic front to the minor right oblique refused or to the minor left oblique refused, and is properly opposed only by the minor left oblique.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor right oblique refused is inferior as a strategic front either to the minor right oblique or to the minor left oblique, but it is superior to the minor left oblique refused.

It properly appertains to Black ; it never should be adopted by White ; and whenever adopted either by White or by Black, it should be aligned at the earliest possible moment.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor left oblique refused is inferior to all strategic fronts directed either by the right or by the left, or by the right refused.

It properly should be opposed by the minor centre enceinte.

PRINCIPLE.

A major front established is superior to a minor front directed either by the right or by the left, or by the right refused or by the left refused.

PRINCIPLE.

A major front established by the right is best opposed by a major or grand front directed by the left refused ; but a tentative front of this kind usually is readily demolished by a minor front directed by the left refused and aligned.

PRINCIPLE.

A major front established by the left is best opposed by a major or grand front directed by the right refused ; but a tentative front of this kind usually is readily demolished by a minor front directed by the right refused and aligned.

PRINCIPLE.

A major front established by the right refused is properly opposed by the right oblique, if the objective plane appertaining to the latter is located on the right. Otherwise it properly should be opposed by the major or grand left oblique.

PRINCIPLE.

A major front established by the left refused is best opposed by the major or grand right oblique. This front should never be met with the left oblique refused.

PRINCIPLE.

All else being equal, a grand front established either by the right or by the left is superior to all other fronts.

PRINCIPLE.

All else being equal, a grand front established by the right refused is superior to all other fronts except the grand right oblique and the grand left oblique.

PRINCIPLE.

All else being equal, a grand front established by the left refused is superior to any major or minor strategic front.

LOGISTICS OF THE STRATEGETIC OBJECTIVE.

The strategetic objective is determined by the location of the objective plane and the direction of the strategic front.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a single front directed by the right is K B 6. This point is properly occupied by any kindred piece.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a single front directed by the left is Q B 6. This point is properly occupied by any kindred piece.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a single front directed by the right refused is K B 5. This point may be occupied by any kindred piece.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a single front directed by the left refused is Q B 5. This point may be occupied by any kindred piece.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a double front directed by the right is Q B 5. This point should be occupied by a kindred knight.

PRINCIPLE.

The strategetic objective of a double front directed by the left is K B 5. This point should be occupied by a kindred knight.

LOGISTICS OF SUPPLEMENTARY FORMATIONS.

PRINCIPLE.

The front aligned is common to all strategic fronts.

PRINCIPLE.

The double alignment appertains only to minor and to major fronts.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor centre enceinte may be established at any time, and applies to all minor fronts except the minor left oblique refused.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor left enceinte refused belongs exclusively to the minor left oblique refused.

PRINCIPLE.

The major right enceinte belongs exclusively to the major right oblique. It should be established only when the objective plane is located at the extremity of the strategic front directed by the right.

PRINCIPLE.

The major left enceinte refused belongs exclusively to the major left oblique refused. It should be established as early as possible whenever this front is adopted.

PRINCIPLE.

The en potence belongs to the major and the grand fronts, and should be formed as speedily as possible, whether the front is directed by the right or by the left, or whatever may be the location of the objective plane.

PRINCIPLE.

The echelon belongs exclusively to the major front. It should be formed only when the objective plane is located at the extremity of the strategic front.

PRINCIPLE.

The appui never should be formed except for the purpose of supporting the formation of the echelon.

PRINCIPLE.

The minor crochet never should be formed except for the purpose of opposing the adverse major front directed either by the right or the left, both being refused and echeloned.

PRINCIPLE.

The major crochet never should be formed except on that side of the board on which the objective plane is located, and then only for the purpose of being converted into the crochet aligned.

PRINCIPLE.

The crochet aligned never should be formed except on that side of the board on which the objective plane is located, and it always should be formed at once whenever the strategic front has not the direction of the objective plane.

LOGISTICS OF OPEN FILES, OF OPEN DIAGONALS, AND OF POINTS OFFENSIVE.

PRINCIPLE.

Never fail to seize the open files of the centre or of that side on which the objective plane is or must become located, and never fail to oppose with the rooks the command of such files by the adverse rooks or queens.

PRINCIPLE.

If the objective plane is located permanently on the centre, seize the open K file with the K R.

PRINCIPLE.

If the objective plane is located on the right, seize the open K file with the Q R.

PRINCIPLE.

If both the K file and the Q file are open, and whatever the location of the objective plane, seize the Q file with Q R and the K file with K R.

PRINCIPLE.

If the Q file is open, and the objective plane is located on the centre or on the King's side, seize the Q file with the Q R.

PRINCIPLE.

If the Q file is open and the objective plane is located on the left, seize the Q file with K R.

PRINCIPLE.

Whenever the K Kt file or the Q Kt is open, or is about to be opened, the objective plane being located at the extremity of a major strategic front, form the en appui, establish the K at R 2, occupy the point Kt 1 with R, and construct the echelon.

PRINCIPLE.

Never fail to seize the central diagonals which extend toward the objective plane, and to oppose a bishop to any adverse bishop or queen which attempts to command such diagonals.

PRINCIPLE.

If the objective plane is located permanently on the centre, the proper post for the K B is on the diagonal R 2. If the objective plane is located on the right or the left, the best post for the K B is Q 3.

PRINCIPLE.

Never permit any adverse piece to penetrate into the primary base, nor to occupy a point offensive either within or upon the perimeter of the primary base.

PRINCIPLE.

In mobilizing the forces, so deploy that all adverse radii of offence are intercepted by the pawns, and that

all portions of the kindred side of the chess-board are covered by the defensive force radiated by the kindred pieces.

PRINCIPLE.

In developing the strategic front, never leave an open point on the perimeter, wherefrom the opponent may operate radii of offence into the interior of the primary base of operations.

PRINCIPLE.

Never permit any intervals to be created in the strategic front through which adverse pieces may enter.

Whenever such intervals are created and can be availed of by the opponent, always occupy or command them by the superior pieces.

LOGISTICS OF LINES OF MOVEMENT.

In a game of chess, whenever you are not *doing* something, you should be *trying* to do something. That is to say, whenever you are not checkmating the adverse king, or queening a pawn, or winning a piece, you should be trying to do one of these things with all vigor, and incidentally you should be perfecting your strategic front at the same time. In other words :—

PRINCIPLE.

Always move on a line of operation whenever a line of operations exists ; otherwise, always move on a line of manœuvre, and combine with such line of manœuvre the proper line of development or of mobilization.

So in any given situation, the first question you ask yourself is : “Can I mathematically demonstrate the checkmate of the adverse king ?”

If you can answer this question in the affirmative, then go ahead and do it, *i.e.* move on a strategic line of operations. If you are compelled to answer this question in the negative, then always abandon any attempt to move on a strategic line of operations ; for remember that although such line of movement may exist, yet unless you yourself can mathematically demonstrate the process, that line of movement does *not* exist,—*for you*.

Now, then, ask yourself the second question: "Can I queen a pawn without losing more than the equivalent of the queen thus gained?" If you can mathematically demonstrate the process, go ahead and do it, *i. e.* move on a logistic line of operations; but if you cannot answer in the affirmative, then always abandon any attempt to move in that direction at that time.

But you still have one chance left, and you must ask yourself the final question: "Can I capture an adverse piece or pawn without losing more than the equivalent of the piece or pawn gained?" If you can answer this question in the affirmative and can mathematically demonstrate the process, then go ahead and do it, *i. e.* move on a tactical line of operations.

But in all cases wherein you are obliged to answer these questions in the negative, abandon the attempt to move on a line of operation; and make no sacrifice of material, take no risks, alter none of your formations, but limit your action to a movement on a line of manœuvre in accordance with the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

Given a chess player and a situation of chess pieces on the chess-board; then, in the given situation, a line of operation does not exist for the given player unless he can accurately calculate a process, as the result of which the winning of the game can be mathematically demonstrated.

A line of manœuvre always combines with itself either a line of mobilization or a line of development. As to which of these should be combined with the line of manœuvre in any given position is determined by the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

Whenever the permanent location of the objective plane is indeterminate, the line of manœuvre always should combine with itself a line of mobilization; but whenever the permanent location of the objective plane is determinate, the line of manœuvre always should combine with itself a line of development.

Thus you see that a movement on a line of manœuvre is a dual process. For the line of manœuvre has a specific purpose, which always is the compromising of the adverse position; and the line of mobilization has a specific purpose, which always is the deployment of the proper piece at its proper post in the strategic front.

Consequently a movement on a line of manœuvre must harmonize and simultaneously execute these two purposes. Hence the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

The objective of a movement on a line of manœuvre combined with a line of mobilization, always is that point whose occupation by a given piece at the given time deploys the given piece at its proper post in the strategic front, and compromises the adverse position as much as is possible at the given time.

The combination of a line of manœuvre and a line of development is equally a dual process; for, in addition to the purpose of the line of manœuvre, there always exists the purpose of the line of development, which always is the proper augmentation of the strategic front. Hence:—

PRINCIPLE.

The objective of a movement on a line of manœuvre combined with a line of development, always is that point whose occupation by a given piece at the given time properly develops the strategic front, and compromises the adverse position as much as is possible at the given time.

You thus readily see that both lines of mobilization and lines of development are absolutely subordinate to lines of manœuvre; that neither is intended to stand separate and alone, but it is as an accessory to the line of manœuvre that each derives its full power and its value as an integral part of the science of chess strategics.

It was on account of your trying to play the game on a line of mobilization alone,—for, of course, you then had no knowledge of lines of development, manœuvre, and operation,—that, after mastering “The Minor Tactics of Chess,” you found difficulty in establishing the “primary bases” therein laid down. But, nevertheless, if your experience was like that of many, you soon found that, by means of the approximations which you were able to obtain, you were winning more games than you previously had been able to do by means of the “give-and-take openings in the books.”

A striking case in point is the following. The article from which it is taken can be found in the *London (Eng.) Spectator* of June, 1895. It is entitled “The Theory of Chess,” and constitutes a page and a half review, at once able and complimentary, of “The Minor Tactics of Chess.”

"The reviewer played for many years with a friend, from whom he usually received odds and a beating. After acquiring the new theory he (the reviewer) has played a series of games with the same friend (to whom this theory was unknown) without taking odds, and has not only won the majority of the games, but made a much better fight in those he lost than he had usually been able to make before becoming acquainted with the theory."

All this is very easy to explain. For the first time you and the gentleman quoted were playing chess in accordance with a system. True, the system was rudimentary, but it gave you a chance to use your brains. Consequently you had a decided advantage over the poor fellow struggling to recall long columns of figures, compiled by an analyst whose sole criterion as to the value of a move lay in the fact that somebody, somewhere and at some time, had played it in a game and won.

Prejudice, force of habit, and the influences of long associations will cause much discussion before this theory, in spite of its clearness, uproots the analytical method.

One player will triumphantly show you how, by breaking up a formation prescribed in this theory, you obviously can win the game; another will tell you that genius scorns rule and precept, and wins by beautiful and brilliant sacrifices of material; and another will call to your notice Loewenthal's well-known dictum: "The judicious violation of general principles especially marks the master-mind."

It is useless to tell these people that this theory also approves of breaking up its own formations when, by so

doing, you can win the game; that genius, so far from scorning rule and precept, is the ability to comprehend the laws upon which rules and precepts are founded; that a "beautiful, brilliant, and sound sacrifice of material" always is the best possible move, and is absolutely devoid of risk; and that Herr Loewenthal would have said something worth remembering had he but told us when and when not to violate general principles.

The only thing you can do is to call their attention to the following. If, after reading it, their vision is no clearer, it is no fault of yours, nor of the theory, viz.:—

When tempted to violate a principle laid down in this theory, or to break up a formation dictated by "Grand Tactics," or whenever you are in doubt as to whether or not you are justified in a sacrifice of material, recall to your mind the following:—

PRINCIPLE.

When acting on a line of operations, all material may be sacrificed, all formations disintegrated, and all the principles of chess strategetics violated, that are not contained in the immediate calculation. But, when acting on a line of manœuvre, never sacrifice material, never disintegrate a formation, and never violate a principle of chess strategetics.

LOGISTICS OF THE STRATEGETIC HORIZON.

Whenever in a leisure moment on the train, at the café, or elsewhere, you take up a periodical and interestedly scrutinize a neat and jaunty proposition that White play and force mate in a couple of moves or so ; or when at the club you regard complacently the, to you, seeming mismanagement of a most artistic situation by a pair of your fellow-members ; or when in a little game of your own you glower at the board and the pieces with but a single thought, “ How can I kill him ? ” — you are doing what, in the technical language of this theory, is termed taking a survey of the *strategic horizon*.

The *Strategic Horizon* is composed of all the *origins*, *i. e.* points occupied by pieces, and of all the points not occupied, but whose possible occupation will establish a given force as the greater force when compared to the opposing force.

There are three great divisions of the strategic horizon : —

- I. TACTICAL PLANES.
- II. LOGISTIC PLANES.
- III. STRATEGIC PLANES.

Tactical Planes are composed of a geometric figure, or of the combination of two or more geometric figures ; of the pieces appertaining to such geometric figures ; and of

the adverse origins situated upon the peripheries of these geometric figures.

Logistic Planes are composed of a given logistic horizon; the adverse pawns; the adverse *pawn altitudes*, *i. e.* the points over which the adverse pawns must pass to queen; and the *points of resistance*, *i. e.* the origins from whence adverse radii of defence are operated against any point contained in a given pawn altitude.

Strategic Planes are composed of a given objective plane, and of the origins occupied by both the attacking and defending pieces.

Whenever a given determinate force has acquired, or is about to acquire, a superior strategic front, as compared with an opposing force, the given force is said, in this theory, to be acting on the *strategic offensive*; and the opposing determinate force is said to be acting on the *strategic defensive*.

Whenever a piece directly operates a radius of offence against any adverse piece, the former is said, in this theory, to be acting on the *tactical offensive*; and whenever a piece directly operates a radius of defence for the support of any kindred piece, the latter is said, in this theory, to be acting on the *tactical defensive*.

Whenever the piece or the pieces acting on either a line of mobilization, a line of development, a line of manœuvre, or a line of operation, constitute a force competent to perform the action which is contemplated by the given line of movement, such a force is termed, in this theory, a *strategic mass*.

In order that the application of this may be clear to the student, his attention is now called to the pieces aligned in the normal position on the surface of the chess-board in readiness to begin a game.

White, having the initiative, *i. e.* the right to move, opens with 1 P – K 4, thereby assuming the strategetic offensive by threatening to establish the minor right oblique aligned, and, if permitted, the major right oblique, against the objective plane located on the centre.

In reply, Black is compelled to play 1 P – K 4, for by any other move he will allow the opponent to establish the superior strategic front.

It also will be observed that no piece is directly attacked by any adverse piece, so neither White nor Black is at any point acting on the tactical offensive.

The tactical offensive may be assumed by any piece, and is governed by the following: —

PRINCIPLE.

Never assume the tactical offensive except with the superior force.

The strategetic offensive and the strategetic defensive are conditions which contemplate the action of all the pieces contained in a determinate force at a given time, and the actions of the determinate force are governed by the following: —

PRINCIPLE.

Never act on the strategetic defensive.

Furthermore, it is obvious that each of the pawns thus deployed is properly posted, and is competent to fulfil its duties in the strategic fronts projected by the opposing players; and consequently each of these pawns, being competent to perform the duties devolving upon it, is, in this situation, a strategetic mass.

The proper treatment of tactical planes and of logistic

planes is described *in extenso* in "The Major Tactics of Chess," and the treatment of strategic planes is found in this volume under the head of Strategic Lines of Operation.

The art of surveying the strategetic horizon ; *i. e.*, of contemplating the various strategic, tactical, and logistic planes which are contained in any given situation ; of deducing from the comparison of these the true relative strength and position of the opposing forces ; of designating the correct line of movement and of determining the process which should be initiated by the player whose turn it is to move,—is the sum and substance of this theory of chess play.

So whenever, in a leisure moment on the train or at the café, you undertake the solution of a two mover ; or when at the club you are asked to give an opinion on some intricate situation ; or if in a game of your own you feel called upon to play at least as well as you know how,—it may be of moment that in other leisure moments you have properly memorized the chapter following.

THE CHESS PLAYER'S EPITOME.

- I. Having the initiative, always assume the strategetic offensive.
- II. To assume the strategetic offensive, always act on a line of operation when it exists.
- III. A line of operation exists only when the kindred tactical units are so disposed upon the origins of the given strategetic horizon as to constitute a strategetic mass.
- IV. A strategic line of operation exists only when the net value of the radii of offence exerted by the kindred strategetic mass is equal to the mobility of the objective plane.
- V. A tactical line of operation exists only when the number of radii of offence operated by the kindred strategetic mass exceeds the net value of the adverse radii of defence.
- VI. A logistic line of operation exists only when the number of pawn altitudes operated by the kindred strategetic mass exceeds the number of adverse points of resistance.
- VII. Whenever two or more lines of operation exist, the strategic line of operation always is to be preferred.
- VIII. Whenever no line of operation exists, always act on a line of manœuvre.
- IX. The aim of a line of manœuvre always is to establish the kindred force as a strategetic mass upon

the origins contained in the given strategic, tactical, or logistic planes.

X. A complex line of manœuvre always is based upon one of the strategetic weaknesses contained in Classes I., II., III., IV., and its aim is to construct a strategetic horizon consisting of a strategic plane in combination with a tactical plane or with a logistic plane, or with both.

XI. A compound line of manœuvre always is based upon one of the strategetic weaknesses contained in Classes V., VI., VII., and its aim is to construct a strategetic horizon consisting of a tactical plane or of a logistic plane, in combination with like planes or with each other.

XII. A simple line of manœuvre always is based upon the initiative, *i.e.* the right to move. Its aim is to unite in the movement of a given piece the deployment or the development next in sequence, together with an evolution that assumes the tactical offensive at a point which prevents the opponent from adopting the proper strategic front, or from properly constructing the strategic front adopted.

XIII. The evolutions first in sequence always are those which appertain to a strategic line of operation.

XIV. The evolutions second in sequence always are those which appertain to that tactical or to that logistic line of operations which is most quickly executed.

XV. The evolutions third in sequence always are those which assume the tactical offensive in such a manner as to prevent the opponent from establishing the first supporting parallel, from adopting any strategic front other than a minor front refused, and from properly constructing the bishop and knight units which belong to the latter.

XVI. The developments first in sequence always are those which establish in the quickest and surest manner the grand strategic front when the objective plane is located on the centre or at the extremity of the kindred strategic front, or the crochet aligned if the objective plane is situated otherwise.

XVII. The developments second in sequence always are those which establish the major strategic front on the strategetic centre in the quickest and surest manner.

XVIII. The developments third in sequence always are those which construct the supplementary formations appertaining to the major front in the quickest and surest manner.

XIX. The deployments first in sequence always are those which establish the first supporting parallel in the quickest and surest manner.

XX. The deployments second in sequence always are those which complete the primary base in the quickest and surest manner.

The player having the move should apply these rules in order to the given situation, beginning with Rule I.; and should continue down the list until he reaches that rule upon which, *in his judgment*, the situation before him is based.

If the process indicated by this rule is one of mobilization, development, manœuvre, or operation, he will be governed in his play by the principles laid down in this volume.

If the process is of the lower order, termed an *evolution*, he will be governed by the demonstrations laid down in "The Major Tactics of Chess."

If the process is of the lowest order, *i. e.* appertaining to the construction of primary bases, he will be governed

by the instructions laid down in "The Minor Tactics of Chess."

In every situation the student, by means of these rules, will be able to apply to the best advantage all the chess capacity that he possesses ; and he should never forget that at all times the ideal move is :—

To create a **Strategic Mass**, having the **Strategic Offensive**, and to direct it along a **Strategic Line of Operations** against the **Objective Plane**.

APPENDIX.

ILLUSTRATIVE GAMES.

GAME 1.

Played at the Boston Press Club, Jan. 13, 1893.

This game illustrates the major right oblique echelon, opposed by the grand left oblique refused and aligned.

White fails to establish the minor crochet and also to support the echelon by the en appui.

FRENCH DEFENCE.

F. K. YOUNG.

HARRY N. PILLSBURY.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 3. |
| 2. P — Q 4. | 2. P — Q 4. |
| 3. Q Kt — B 3. | 3. K Kt — B 3. |
| 4. B — K Kt 5. | 4. B — K 2. |
| 5. P — K 5. | 5. K Kt — Q 2. |
| 6. B × B. | 6. Q × B. |
| 7. Q — Q 2. | 7. P — Q R 3. |
| 8. P — K B 4. | 8. P — Q B 4. |
| 9. Kt — B 3. | 9. Kt — B 3. |
| 10. Kt — K 2. | 10. P — Q Kt 4. |
| 11. P — Q B 3. | 11. B — Kt 2. |
| 12. Kt — Kt 3. | 12. P — K B 4. |
| 13. B — Q 3. | 13. Castles (K R). |
| 14. Castles (K R). | 14. P — Q B 5. |
| 15. B — B 2. | 15. Kt — Kt 3. |
| 16. Kt — K 2. | 16. P — Q R 4. |
| 17. K — R 1. | 17. K — R 1. |
| 18. R — K Kt 1. | 18. R — K Kt 1. |

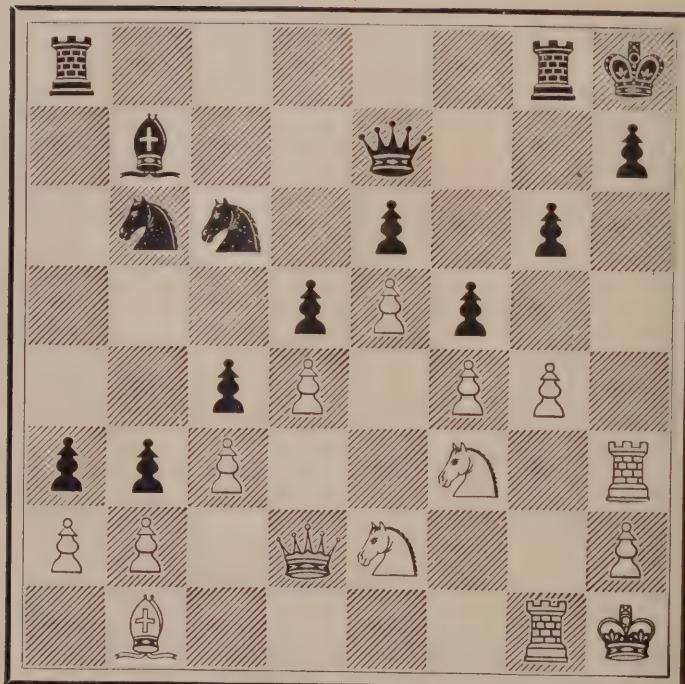
- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 19. P — K Kt 4. | 19. P — K Kt 3. |
| 20. R — Kt 3. | 20. P — Kt 5. |
| 21. Q R — K Kt 1. | 21. P — R 5. |
| 22. R — R 3. | 22. P — Kt 6. |
| 23. B — Kt 1. | 23. P — R 6. |
| 24. Kt — Kt 5. | 24. R — Kt 2. |
| 25. P × K B P. | 25. K P × P. |
| 26. Kt — Kt 3. | 26. P × Q Kt P. |
| 27. R P × P. | 27. P × P. |
| 28. B × P. | 28. P × B. |
| 29. Kt × B P. | 29. R × Kt. |

Position after Black's 23d move.

FIG. 243.

PILLSBURY.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

YOUNG.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 30. P × R. | 30. R — R 8. |
| 31. Q × P. | 31. R × R (ck). |
| 32. K × R. | 32. Q × P (ck). |
| 33. Kt — Kt 3. | 33. Q — K 6 (ck). |
| 34. K — Kt 2. | 34. Kt — B 5. |
| 35. Q — Kt 1. | 35. Q — Q 7 (ck). |
| 36. K — R 1. | 36. Q — QB 7. |
| 37. Q — KB 1. | 37. K — Kt 1. |
| 38. Kt — R 5. | 38. Kt (B 3) × K P. |
| 39. P × Kt. | 39. P — Q 5 (dis ck). |
| 40. K — Kt 1. | 40. Q — K Kt 7 (ck). |
| 41. Q × Q. | 41. B × Q. |
| 42. R — Kt 3 (ck). | 42. K — B 1. |
| 43. R × B. | 43. P × P. |
| 44. R — KB 2 (ck). | 44. K — K 2. |
| 45. Kt — B 4. | 45. P — B 7. |
| 46. R × P. | 46. P × R. |
| 47. Kt — Q 3. | 47. Kt × P. |
| 48. Kt — B 1. | 48. K — Q 3. |
| 49. K — B 2. | 49. K — Q 4. |
| 50. K — K 2. | 50. K — Q 5. |
| 51. K — Q 2. | 51. Kt — B 6 (ck). |
| 52. K × P. | 52. Kt × P. |
| 53. K — Q 2. | 53. K — K 5. |
| 54. Kt — Q 3. | 54. K — B 6. |
| 55. K — K 1. | 55. P — KR 4. |
| 56. Kt — K 5 (ck). | 56. K — B 5. |
| 57. Kt — Kt 6 (ck). | 57. K — Kt 4. |
| 58. Kt — K 5. | 58. P — R 5. |
| 59. Kt — Q 3. | 59. K — Kt 5. |
| 60. K — B 2. | 60. P — R 6. |
| 61. K — Kt 1. | 61. K — Kt 6. |
| 62. K — R 1. | 62. Kt — B 6. |
| 63. Kt — B 1. | 63. Kt — Q 5. |
| 64. Kt — K 2 (ck). | 64. Kt × Kt. |

Drawn.

GAME 2.

Played at the Deschapelles Club, Oct. 8, 1889. Match Game.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an improperly covered objective plane, all of which is opposed by Black with a compound line of manœuvre by the left.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

P. WARE AND H. N. STONE.

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P — K 4.	1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.	2. Kt — QB 3.
3. B — B 4.	3. B — B 4.
4. P — Q Kt 4.	4. B × Kt P.
5. P — Q B 3.	5. B — Q 3.
6. Castles.	6. Kt — KB 3.
7. Kt — Kt 5.	7. Castles.
8. P — KB 4.	8. Q — K 1.
9. P — Q 4.	9. P × Q P.
10. P × P.	10. B — Kt 5.
11. P — K 5.	11. P — Q 4.
12. P × Kt.	12. P × B.
13. P × P.	13. K × P.
14. P — Q 5.	14. B — B 4 (ck).
15. K — R 1.	15. B — Q 5.
16. Q — B 2.	16. P — KB 4.
17. B — Kt 2.	17. B — B 3.
18. P × Kt.	18. Q × P.
19. Kt — Q B 3.	19. P — Q Kt 4.
20. Q R — K 1.	20. P — Kt 5.
21. Kt (B 3) — K 4.	21. P — B 6.
22. Kt — Kt 3.	22. Q — Q 4.
23. Kt — R 5 (ck).	23. K — Kt 3.
24. Kt × B.	24. R × Kt.
25. R — K 7.	25. P — K R 3.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 26. R - B 3. | 26. R - Q 3. |
| 27. P - K R 4. | 27. Q - Q 8 (ck). |
| 28. K - R 2. | 28. Q × Q. |
| 29. P - R 5 (ck). | 29. K × P. |
| 30. R - R 3 (ck). | 30. K - Kt 3. |
| 31. R - R 7. | 31. Q × P (ck). |
| 32. K × Q. | 32. B - Kt 2 (ck). |
| 33. K - B 1. | 33. R - Q 8 (ck). |
| 34. K - B 2. | 34. R - Q 7 (ck). |
| 35. K - Kt 1. | 35. R - Q 8 (ck). |
| 36. K - B 2. | 36. R - Q 7 (ck). |
| 37. K - Kt 1. | 37. R - Q 8 (ck). |
| 38. K - B 2. | 38. R - Q 7 (ck). |

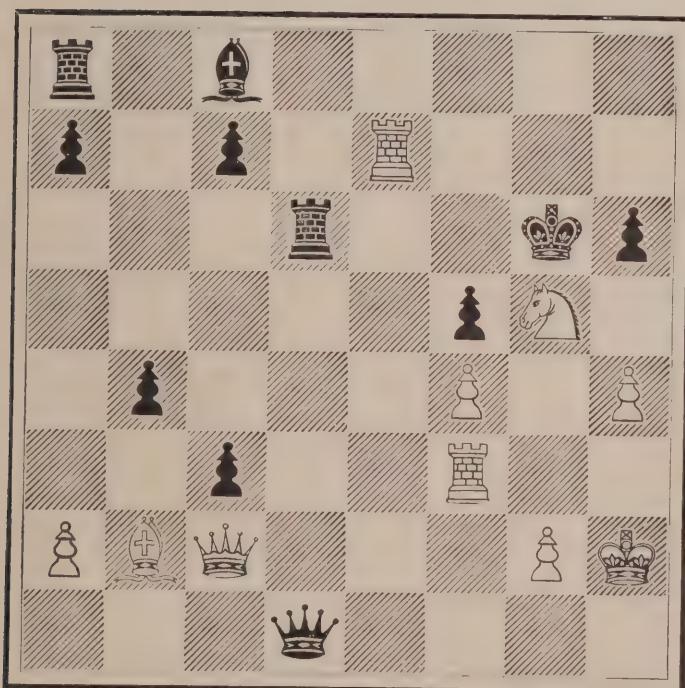
Drawn.

Position after White's 28th move.

FIG. 244.

WARE AND STONE.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 3.

Played at the Boston Press Club, Feb. 12, 1895.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre, whereby the black K Kt is dislodged from Black's K B 3, the advance of the black right wing pawns compelled, and the command of the objective plane obtained.

KING'S GAMBIT EVADED.

F. K. YOUNG.

H. L. LOWE.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. P—K 4. | 1. P—K 4. |
| 2. P—K B 4. | 2. B—B 4. |
| 3. Kt—K B 3. | 3. P—Q 3. |
| 4. B—B 4. | 4. Kt—K B 3. |
| 5. P—Q Kt 4. | 5. B × Kt P. |
| 6. Castles. | 6. B—B 4 (ck). |
| 7. P—Q 4. | 7. P × P. — D |
| 8. Kt—Kt 5. | 8. Castles. |
| 9. P—K 5. | 9. P—Q 6 (dis ck). |
| 10. K—R 1. | 10. Kt—Kt 5. |
| 11. Q × Q P. | 11. P—K Kt 3. |
| 12. P—K B 5. | 12. Kt × K P. |
| 13. Q—K R 3. | 13. P—K R 4. |
| 14. Kt—K 4. | 14. Kt × B. |
| 15. Q—K Kt 3. | 15. P—K R 5. |
| 16. Q—K R 3. | 16. B—Q 5. |
| 17. B—K Kt 5. | 17. P—K B 3. |
| 18. Q × P. | 18. P × B. |
| 19. Kt × P. | 19. Q—K 2. |
| 20. Kt—Q B 3. | 20. R × P. |

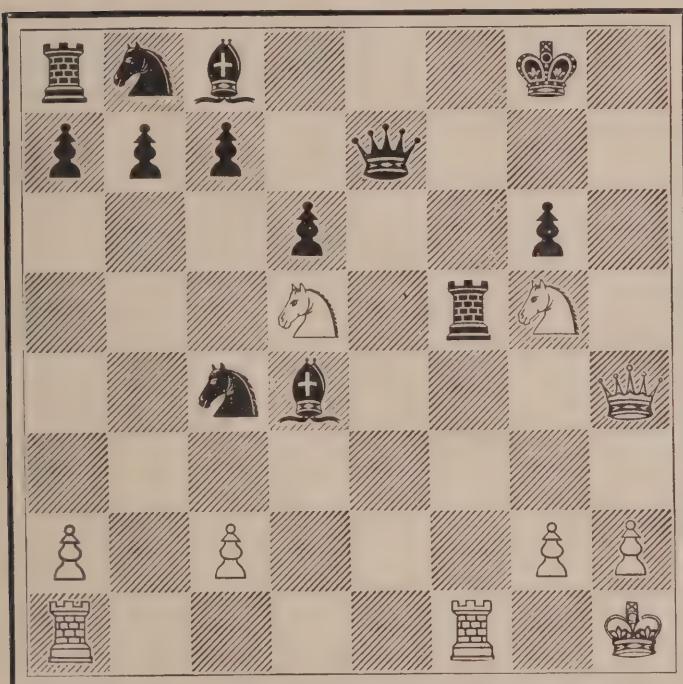
21. Kt—Q 5. 21. R × Q Kt.
 22. Q R—K 1. 22. Kt—Q 6. *K*, *Q*
 23. R × Kt. 23. B × R.
 24. R—K B 8 (ck). 24. K × R.
 25. Q—R 8 (ck).

Mate.

Position after White's 21st move.

FIG. 245.

(Black.)



(White.)

GAME 4.

*Played at the Royal Pagoda Ostuh Tserte, in the fifth moon of the first cycle of the reign of Awer, Senior Mandarin of the Order of the Yellow Button.**

This game illustrates a line of mobilization, combined with a complex line of manœuvre by the right refused, against an objective plane located, in violation of strategic principle, on the refused wing of a minor left oblique aligned.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

MANDARIN Nswo.

MANDARIN OYNUG.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 4. |
| 2. Kt — KB 3. | 2. Kt — QB 3. |
| 3. B — B 4. | 3. B — B 4. |
| 4. P — Q Kt 4. | 4. B × Kt P. |
| 5. P — QB 3. | 5. B — Q 3. |
| 6. Castles. | 6. P — KR 3. |
| 7. P — Q 4. | 7. Q — KB 3. |
| 8. R — K 1. | 8. P — KKt 4. |
| 9. Kt — R 3. | 9. P — Q Kt 3. |
| 10. Kt — Q Kt 5. | 10. B — Kt 2. |
| 11. B — Q 5. | 11. K Kt — K 2. |
| 12. P — KKt 3. | 12. Castles (Q R). |
| 13. P — QR 4. | 13. QR — KKt 1. |
| 14. P — R 5. | 14. P — KR 4. |
| 15. P × P. | 15. RP × P. |
| 16. Kt × B (ek). | 16. P × Kt. |
| 17. B — R 3. | 17. P — R 5. |

* The Order of Mandarins of the Yellow Button was a chess coterie of Boston. It consisted of Messrs. C. F. Burille, F. H. Harlow, Dr. E. M. Harris, C. F. Howard, Major O. E. Michaelis, Gen. W. C. Paine, Dr. H. Richardson, C. B. Snow, H. N. Stone, P. Ware, Jr., and F. K. Young.

These men were amateurs who had won their game on even terms against a professional international champion.

The members of this coterie made it a practice to meet for play on Saturday afternoons, and to dine together in the evening. This coterie was the nucleus of the famous Deschapelles Club.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 18. P — Kt 4. | 18. P — R 6. |
| 19. R — K 3. | 19. P × Q P. |
| 20. P × P. | 20. R — R 5. |
| 21. Kt × R. | 21. P × Kt. |
| 22. P — KB 3. | 22. Q — KB 5. |
| 23. R — Q 3. | 23. Kt × B. |
| 24. P × Kt. | 24. Kt × Q P. |
| 25. R × Kt. | 25. R × P (ck). |
| 26. P × R. | 26. Q — K 6 (ck). |
| 27. K — R 1. | 27. B × Q P (ck). |
| 28. R × B. | 28. Q — K 5 (ck). |
| 29. K — Kt 1. | 29. Q — Kt 7 (ck). |

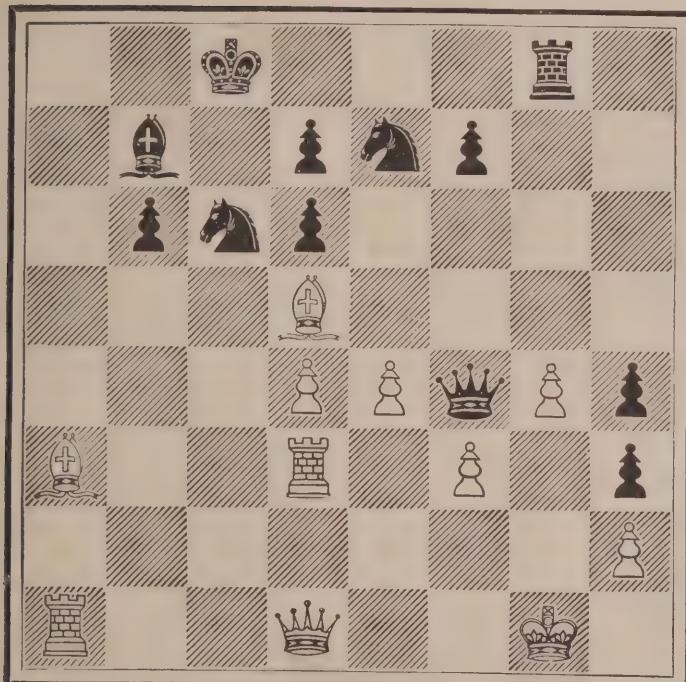
Mate.

Position after White's 23d move.

FIG. 246.

MANDARIN OYNUG.

(Black.)



(White.)

MANDARIN NSWO.

GAME 5.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, June 13, 1888.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against a prematurely formed right oblique aligned, with the objective plane located on the centre, and lacking the K Kt at K B 3.

VIENNA OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG AND C. F. BURILLE. P. WARE AND C. B. SNOW.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. P — K B 4.
4. B — B 4.
5. P — K B 5.
6. Kt — K B 3.
7. Q P × B.
8. Castles.
9. K — R 1.
10. B × Q P.
11. R × Kt.
12. B × K B P (ck).
13. Kt × P (ck).
14. B — Kt 5.
15. Q — Q 6.
16. R — Q 1.
17. Q — B 7.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — K B 3.
3. B — Kt 5.
4. P — Q 3.
5. P — Q B 3.
6. B × Kt.
7. Kt × P.
8. Q — Kt 3 (ck).
9. P — Q 4.
10. Kt — B 7 (ck).
11. Q × R.
12. K × B.
13. K — K 1.
14. Kt — Q 2.
15. Kt — B 3.
16. B × P.
17. R — K B 1.

18. Kt — Q B 4. 18. B — Q 2.
 19. Q × B (ek). 19. Kt × Q.
 20. Kt — Q 6 (ek).

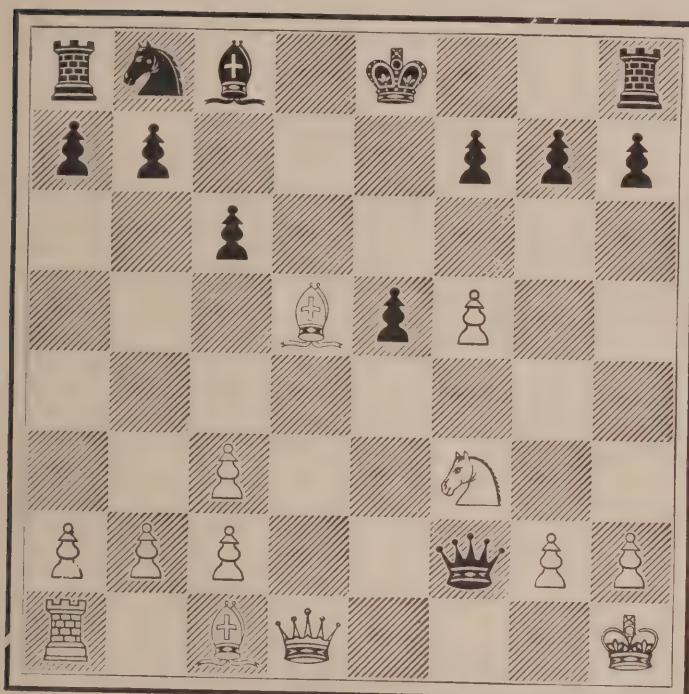
Mate.

Position after Black's 11th move.

FIG. 247.

WARE AND SNOW.

(Black.)



(White.)

BURILLE AND YOUNG.

GAME 6.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, May 14, 1885.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and not covered by a salient nor by a Kt at KB3.

MUZIO GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

G. W. SANFORD.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 4. |
| 2. P — KB 4. | 2. P × P. |
| 3. Kt — KB 3. | 3. P — KKt 4. |
| 4. B — B 4. | 4. P — Kt 5. |
| 5. Castles. | 5. P × Kt. |
| 6. B × P (ck). | 6. K × B. |
| 7. Q × P. | 7. Q — B 3. |
| 8. Kt — QB 3. | 8. P — Q 3. |
| 9. P — Q 4. | 9. Q × P (ck). |
| 10. B — K 3. | 10. Q — B 3. |
| 11. Q — R 5 (ck). | 11. Q — Kt 3. |
| 12. R × P (ck). | 12. Kt — KB 3. |
| 13. R × Kt (ck). | 13. K × R. |
| 14. Q — R 4 (ck). | 14. K — B 2. |
| 15. R — KB 1 (ck). | 15. K — K 1. |
| 16. Kt — Q 5. | 16. Kt — QR 3. |
| 17. R — B 6. | 17. Q — Kt 5. |
| 18. R × B (ck). | 18. K — Q 2. |
| 19. Q × Q (ck). | 19. K — B 3. |

20. Kt—K 7 (ck). 20. K—Kt 4.
 21. Q—K 2 (ck). 21. K—R 4.
 22. R × R.

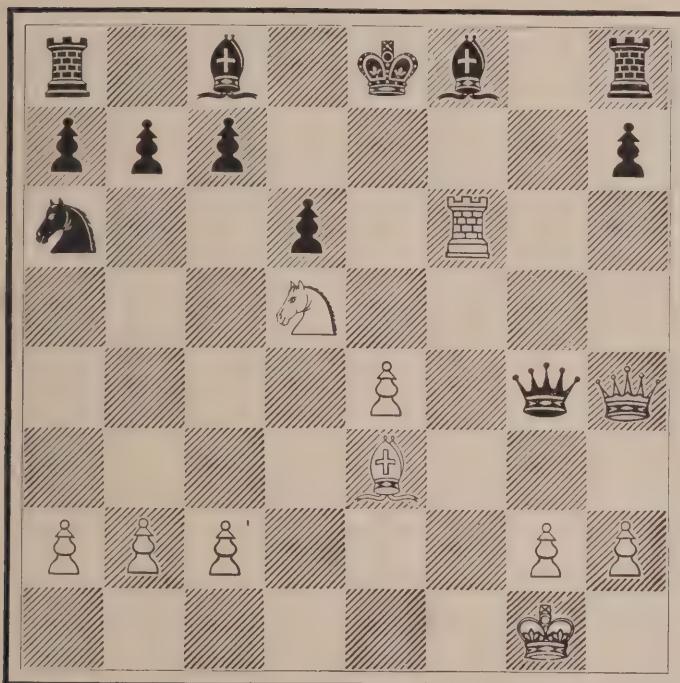
And Black resigns.

Position after Black's 17th move.

FIG. 248.

SANFORD.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 7.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, June 11, 1886.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and lacking a strategic front.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.
3. KB — B 4.
4. P — Q Kt 4.
5. P — Q B 3.
6. P — Q 4.
7. Castles.
8. Q — Kt 3.
9. P — K 5.
10. Kt × P.
11. B — R 3.
12. Kt × P.
13. Q — R 4.
14. Kt — Q 6 (ck).
15. P × P.
16. K R — K 1 (ck).
17. R × B (ck).
18. Q × Kt.
19. P × Kt (ck).
20. Q — B 7.
21. Kt — K 5.

CHARLES B. SNOW.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. KB — B 4.
4. B × Kt P.
5. B — R 4.
6. P × P.
7. P × P.
8. Q — B 3.
9. Q — Kt 3.
10. K Kt — K 2.
11. P — Q Kt 4.
12. R — Q Kt 1.
13. P — Q R 3.
14. P × Kt.
15. Kt — K B 4.
16. B × R.
17. K — B 1.
18. Kt — K 2.
19. K — K 1.
20. Q — Kt 3.
21. P — Q 4.

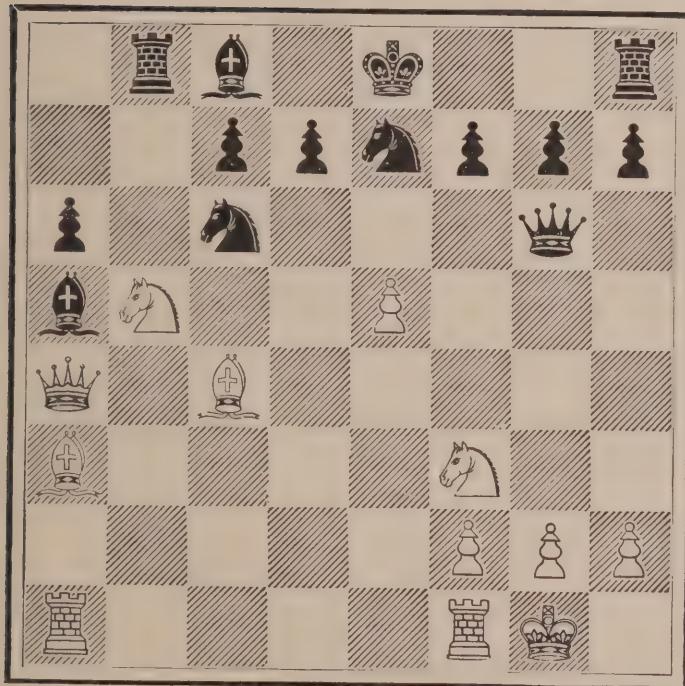
22. B × P. 22. B — K 3.
 23. Q — Q 7 (ck). 23. B × Q.
 24. B × B P (ck).
 Mate.

Position after Black's 13th move.

FIG. 249.

SNOW.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 8.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, July 12, 1877.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and improperly covered and supported by an unmobilized kindred force.

KING'S GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

D. RICHARDSON.

Remove White's Q Kt.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. P — KB 4.
3. Kt — KB 3.
4. B — B 4.
5. P — Q 4.
6. P — KR 4.
7. QB × P.
8. Q × P.
9. R — Q 1.
10. P — QB 3.
11. P — K 5.
12. P — K 6.
13. Q — R 5 (ck).
14. B — QB 7.
15. Castles (ck).
16. Q — B 7 (ck).
17. B — Q 3 (ck).
18. R × Kt.

BLACK

1. P — K 4.
2. P × P.
3. P — K Kt 4.
4. B — Kt 2.
5. P — KR 3.
6. P — Kt 5.
7. P × Kt.
8. KB × P.
9. P — QB 4.
10. B — Kt 2.
11. Kt — K 2.
12. BP × P.
13. K — B 1.
14. Q × B.
15. K — Kt 1.
16. K — R 2.
17. Kt — B 4.
18. R — K Kt 1.

19. R — K R 5 (dis ck). 19. K — R 1.
 20. R × P (ck). 20. B × R.
 21. Q — R 7 (ck).

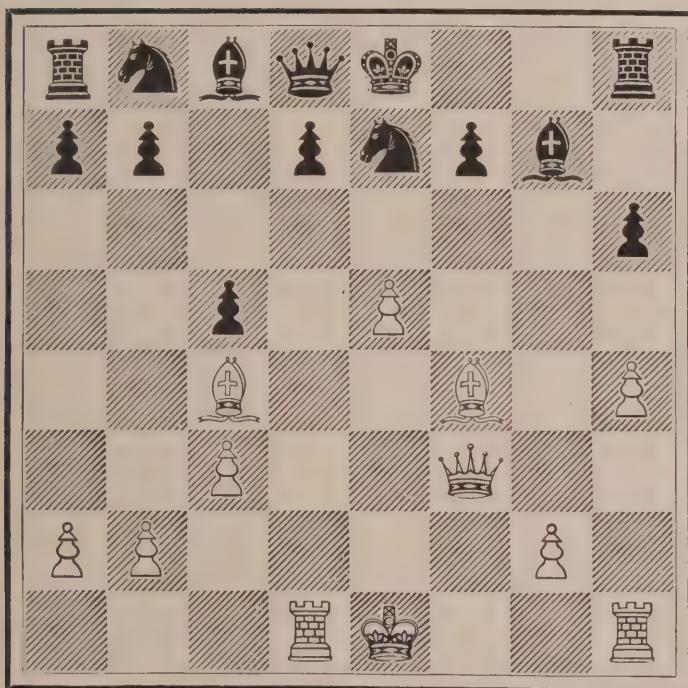
Mate. —

Position after Black's 11th move.

FIG. 250.

RICHARDSON.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 9.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Aug. 2, 1885.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre, and exposed to attack *via* open files and diagonals not guarded by proper deployments.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.
3. KB — B 4.
4. P — Q Kt 4.
5. P — Q B 3.
6. P — Q 4.
7. Castles.
8. B — R 3.
9. Q — Kt 3.
10. R — K 1.
11. R × Kt (ck).
12. B × P (ck).
13. Q Kt — Q 2.
14. B — K R 5.
15. Kt — Kt 5.
16. Kt — Q B 4.
17. Kt × Kt.
18. Kt (K 5) — B 7 (ck).
19. B — K Kt 4.
20. Kt — K 5 (ck).

CHARLES B. SNOW.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. KB — B 4.
4. B × Kt P.
5. B — R 4.
6. P × P.
7. Kt — KB 3.
8. Kt × K P.
9. Q — B 3.
10. Q — KB 5.
11. Q × R.
12. K — Q 1.
13. Q — Q 6.
14. P × P.
15. Kt — K 4.
16. P — Q 3.
17. Q — B 4.
18. K — Q 2.
19. Q × B.
20. P × Kt.

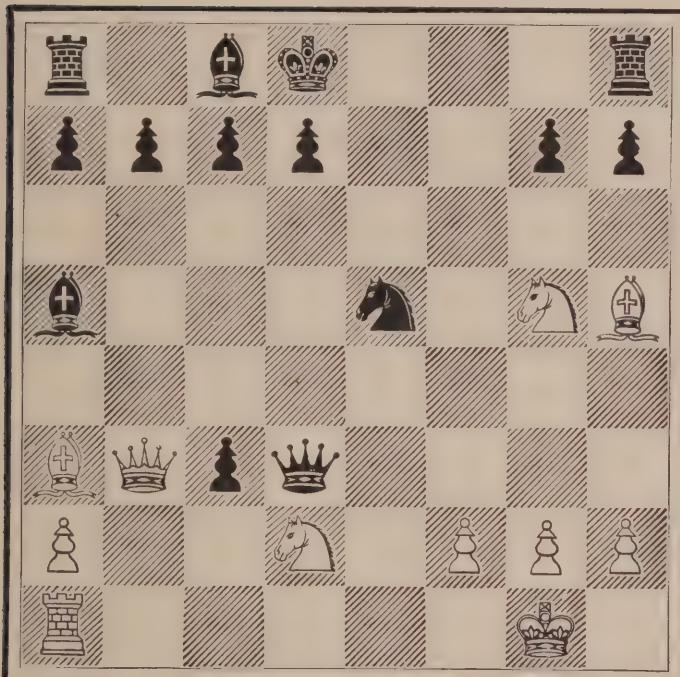
21. Q — Q 5 (ck). 21. K — K 1.
 22. Q — B 7 (ek). 22. K — Q 1.
 23. Q — K 7 (ek).
 Mate.

Position after Black's 15th move.

FIG. 251.

SNOW.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 10.

Played at the Boston Press Club, Nov. 8, 1892.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and compromised by the formation of the minor left oblique.

DANISH GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

L. DORÉ.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 4. |
| 2. P — Q 4. | 2. P × P. |
| 3. P — Q B 3. | 3. P × P. |
| 4. K B — B 4. | 4. Kt — K B 3. |
| 5. Kt — K B 3. | 5. Kt × P. |
| 6. Castles. | 6. Kt — Q 3. |
| 7. Kt × P. | 7. Kt × B. |
| 8. R — K 1 (ck). | 8. B — K 2. |
| 9. Kt — Q 5. | 9. Kt — Q B 3. |
| 10. B — Kt 5. | 10. P — K B 3. |
| 11. R — Q B 1. | 11. P — Q Kt 4. |
| 12. R × Kt. | 12. P × R. |
| 13. Kt — K 5. | 13. P × B. |
| 14. Q — R 5 (ck). | 14. P — Kt 3. |
| 15. Kt — B 6 (ck). | 15. B × Kt. |
| 16. Kt × Kt P (dis ck). | 16. Q — K 2. |
| 17. R × Q (ck). | 17. B × R. |
| 18. Kt — K 5 (dis ck). | 18. K — Q 1. |
| 19. Kt — B 7 (ck). | 19. K — K 1. |

20. Kt — Q 6 (dle ck). 20. K — Q 1.
 21. Q — K 8 (ck). 21. R × Q.
 22. Kt — B 7 (ck).

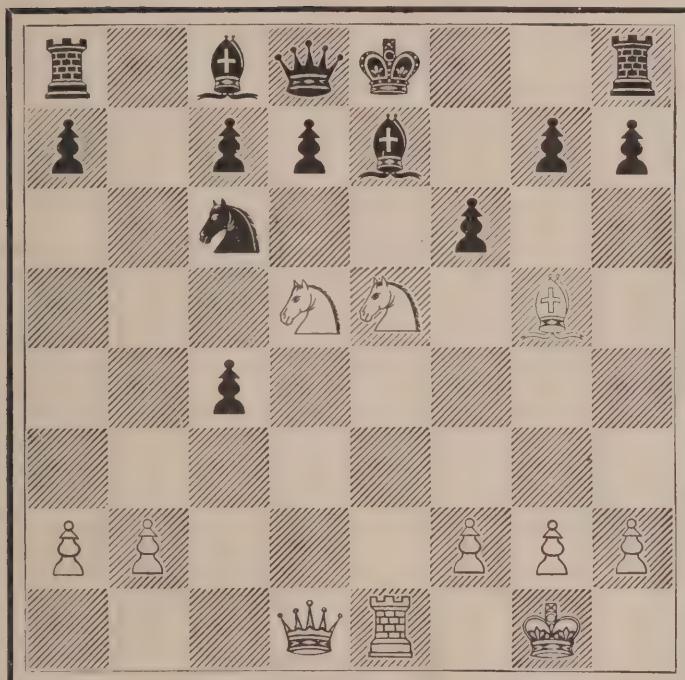
Mate.

Position after White's 13th move.

FIG. 252.

DORR.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 11.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, June 15, 1893.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right oblique refused, by White; opposed by a complex line of manœuvre by Black, against an objective plane located on the right and not properly covered nor supported.

CUNNINGHAM COUNTER GAMBIT.

CHARLES B. SNOW.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

BLACK.

1. P—K 4.	1. P—K 4.
2. P—KB 4.	2. P × P.
3. Kt—KB 3.	3. B—K 2.
4. B—B 4.	4. P—Q Kt 4.
5. B—Kt 3.	5. B—R 5 (ck).
6. P—Kt 3.	6. P × P.
7. Castles.	7. P × P (ck).
8. K—R 1.	8. B—Kt 2.
9. B × P (ck).	9. K × B.
10. Kt × B (dis ck).	10. Kt—KB 3.
11. Q—R 5 (ck).	11. P—Kt 3.
12. Q—B 3.	12. Kt—QB 3.
13. P—Q 3.	13. K—Kt 2.
14. B—Kt 5.	14. R—KB 1.
15. Kt—QB 3.	15. Kt—Q 5.
16. Q—B 2.	16. Kt—K 3.
17. B × Kt.	17. Q × B.
18. Q × Q.	18. R × Q.
19. R × R.	19. K × R.
20. Kt × Q Kt P.	20. P—Q 4.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 21. R - K B 1 (ck). | 21. K - K 4. |
| 22. Kt - B 3 (ck). | 22. K - B 5. |
| 23. K Kt - Q 4 (dis ck). | 23. K - Kt 6. |
| 24. Kt x Kt. | 24. P x P. |
| 25. Kt - B 5. | 25. P - K 6 (dis ck). |
| 26. Kt x B. | 26. P - K 7. |
| 27. R - K 1. | 27. R - K B 1. |

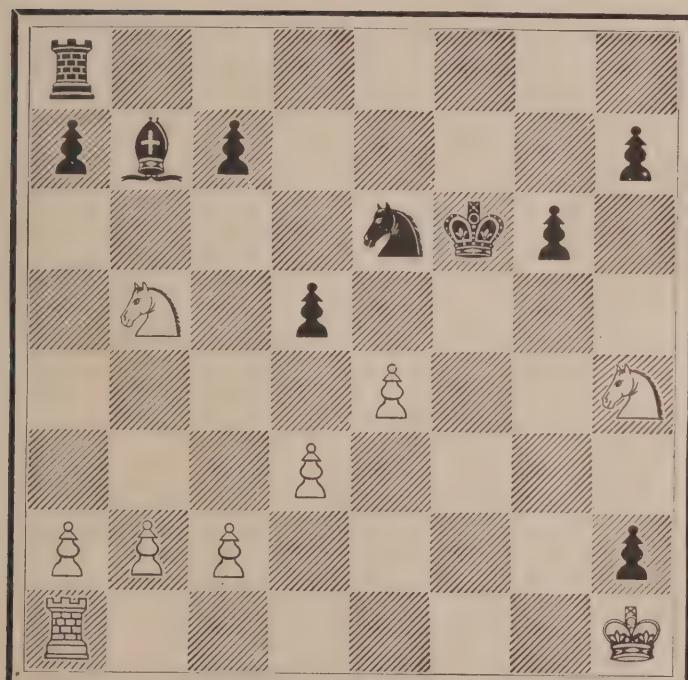
And White resigns.

Position after Black's 20th move.

FIG. 253.

YOUNG.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

SNOW.

GAME 12.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Sept: 9, 1877.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a compound line of manœuvre against a premature counter attack by the right refused, by Black.

KING'S GAMBIT EVADED.

F. K. YOUNG.

PRENTISS CUMMINGS.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 4. |
| 2. P — K B 4. | 2. B — B 4. |
| 3. Kt — Q B 3. | 3. Kt — K B 3. |
| 4. Kt — K B 3. | 4. P — Q 3. |
| 5. B — B 4. | 5. Kt — Kt 5. |
| 6. P — Q 4. | 6. P × P. |
| 7. Kt × Q P. | 7. Q — R 5 (ck). |
| 8. P — Kt 3. | 8. Q — R 6. |
| 9. B — B 1. | 9. Q — R 3. |
| 10. Kt — Q 5. | 10. B — Kt 3. |
| 11. P — K B 5. | 11. Q — R 4. |
| 12. P — K R 3. | 12. B × Kt. |
| 13. Q × B. | 13. Castles. |
| 14. B — K 2. | 14. Kt — Q B 3. |
| 15. Kt — K 7 (ck). | 15. K — R 1. |
| 16. Kt × Kt. | 16. P — K B 3. |
| 17. B × Kt. | 17. Q — K 1. |
| 18. Kt — Q R 5. | |

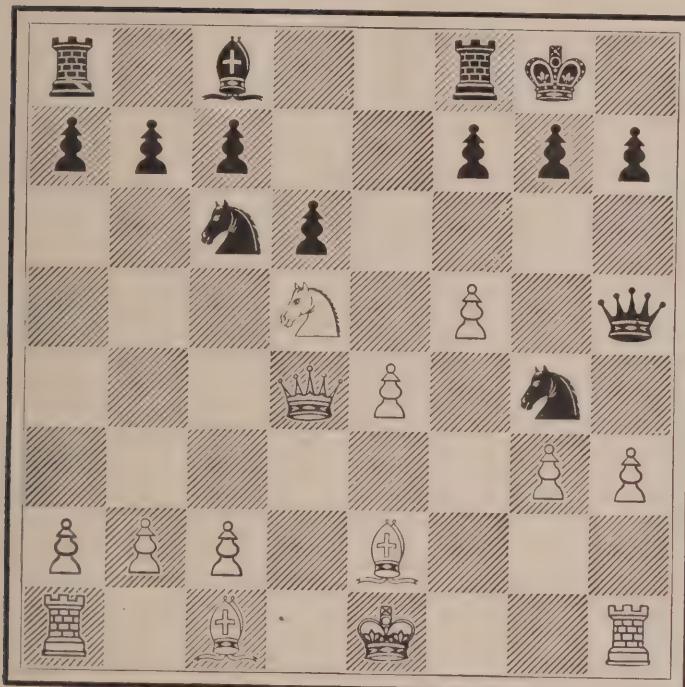
And White wins.

Position after Black's 14th move.

FIG. 254.

CUMMINGS.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 13.

Played at the Deschapelles Club, Oct. 8, 1889.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the right, the black K Kt being dislodged from the point black K B 3.

RUY LOPEZ.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — K B 3.
3. B — Kt 5.
4. P — Q 4.
5. P × P.
6. Castles.
7. Kt — Q B 3.
8. Kt — Q 5.
9. P — Q B 3.
10. B — Q 3.
11. P — Q Kt 4
12. P — Q B 4.
13. P — Kt 5.
14. B — Kt 2.
15. Q — Q 2.
16. Q R — K 1.
17. B — R 1.
18. Kt — Q B 3.
19. Kt — K 4.
20. Kt — Q 6.
21. Kt — Q 4.
22. P × B.
23. Kt — B 5.
24. P — K B 4.
25. Kt — R 6 (ck).

C. F. BURILLE.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. Kt — B 3.
4. Kt × K P.
5. Kt — Q B 4.
6. Kt — K 3.
7. B — K 2.
8. Castles.
9. P — Q R 3.
10. B — B 4.
11. B — R 2.
12. P — Q R 4.
13. Kt — K 2.
14. Kt — Kt 3.
15. P — R 5.
16. P — R 6.
17. P — Q B 3.
18. B — B 4.
19. B — K 2.
20. P — Q Kt 3.
21. B × Kt.
22. P — Q B 4.
23. P — K B 3.
24. R — B 2.
25. P × Kt.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 26. P - B 5. | 26. Kt (Kt 3) - B 1. |
| 27. P × Kt. | 27. P × P. |
| 28. Q × P. | 28. P - K 4. |
| 29. R × K P. | 29. P × R. |
| 30. R × R. | 30. K × R. |
| 31. B × K P. | 31. B - K 3. |
| 32. Q - R 5 (ck). | 32. K Kt 1. |
| 33. B × P (ck). | 33. Kt × B. |
| 34. Q - Kt 6 (ck). | 34. K - B 1. |
| 35. B - Kt 7 (ck). | 35. K - Kt 1. |
| 36. B - R 6 (dis ck). | 36. K - R 1. |
| 37. Q - Kt 7 (ck). | |

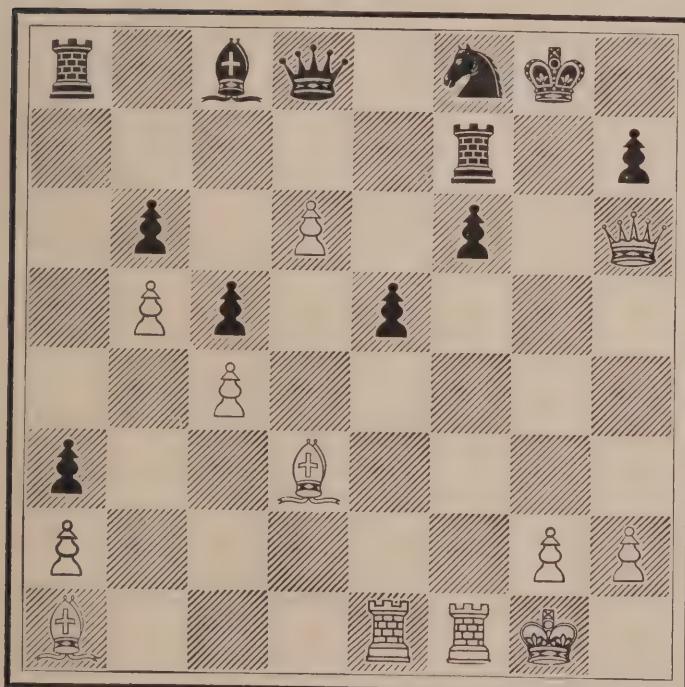
Mate.

Position after Black's 28th move.

FIG. 255.

BURILLE.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 14.

Played at the Deschapelles Club, March 14, 1889.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and improperly covered and supported.

EVANS' GAMBIT.

F. K. YOUNG.

- WHITE.
- 1. P — K 4.
- 2. Kt — K B 3.
- 3. K B — B 4.
- 4. P — Q Kt 4.
- 5. P — Q B 3.
- 6. Castles.
- 7. P — Q 4.
- 8. P × P.
- 9. Kt — Q B 3.
- 10. Q — R 4.
- 11. Q — Kt 3.
- 12. B × P (ck).
- 13. Q — B 2.
- 14. P — K 5.
- 15. P — Q 5.
- 16. P — K 6 (ck).
- 17. P × B (ck).
- 18. Q — K Kt 6.
- 19. B — R 3.
- 20. Kt — K 5.
- 21. Q R — K 1.
- 22. Kt — B 7 (dis ck).
- 23. Q — B 5 (ck).
- 24. Kt — K 5 (ck).
- 25. R × R.

MAJOR O. E. MICHAELIS.

- BLACK.
- 1. P — K 4.
- 2. Kt — Q B 3.
- 3. K B — B 4.
- 4. B × Kt P.
- 5. B — B 4.
- 6. P — Q 3.
- 7. P × P.
- 8. B — Kt 3.
- 9. B — Kt 5.
- 10. B — Q 2.
- 11. Kt — Q R 4.
- 12. K — B 1.
- 13. K × B.
- 14. P — K R 3.
- 15. Kt — K B 3.
- 16. B × K P.
- 17. K × P.
- 18. Q — K B 1.
- 19. R — K 1.
- 20. B — Q 5.
- 21. B × Q Kt.
- 22. K — Q 2.
- 23. K — B 3.
- 24. R × Kt.
- 25. Kt — K 1.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------|
| 26. Q - B 2. | 26. K - Q 2. |
| 27. Q × B. | 27. Kt - B 3. |
| 28. Q - K R 3 (ck). | 28. K - Q 1. |
| 29. R - K 6. | 29. Q - B 2. |
| 30. K R - K 1. | 30. Kt - K 4. |
| 31. P - K B 4. | 31. Q × P. |
| 32. R (K 1) × Kt. | 32. P × R. |
| 33. B - K 7 (ck). | 33. K - Q 2. |
| 34. R × P (dis ck). | 34. K - B 3. |
| 35. R - Q B 5 (ck). | 35. K - Kt 3. |
| 36. Q - Q Kt 3 (ck). | |

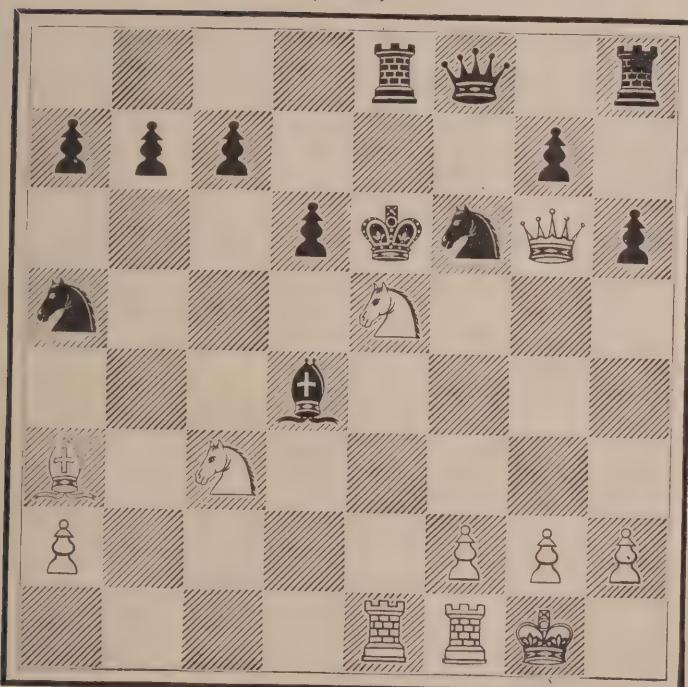
And Black resigns.

Position after White's 21st move.

FIG. 256.

MICHAELIS.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 15.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Dec. 25, 1877.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane not covered by a Kt at KB 3, and weakened by the premature formation of the en appui.

PHILIDOR'S DEFENCE.

F. K. YOUNG.

RUFUS SAWYER.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. P — K 4. | 1. P — K 4. |
| 2. Kt — KB 3. | 2. P — Q 3. |
| 3. P — Q 4. | 3. P × P. |
| 4. Q × P. | 4. B — Q 2. |
| 5. B — K 3. | 5. Kt — QB 3. |
| 6. Q — Q 2. | 6. B — K 2. |
| 7. B — QB 4. | 7. Kt — KB 3. |
| 8. Kt — QB 3. | 8. Castles. |
| 9. Castles (KR). | 9. P — KR 3. |
| 10. P — KR 3. | 10. P — QR 3. |
| 11. Kt — R 2. | 11. R — Q Kt 1. |
| 12. P — KB 4. | 12. P — Q Kt 4. |
| 13. B — Q 3. | 13. Kt — Q Kt 5. |
| 14. R — KB 3. | 14. P — QB 4. |
| 15. P — K 5. | 15. P × P. |
| 16. P × P. | 16. Kt (B 3) — Q 4. |
| 17. Kt × Kt. | 17. Kt × Kt. |
| 18. B × KR P. | 18. P — QB 5. |
| 19. B × Kt P. | 19. B — K Kt 4. |
| 20. R — Kt 3. | 20. Q — Kt 3 (ck). |
| 21. K — R 1. | 21. P — KB 3. |
| 22. R × B. | 22. P × KB. |
| 23. B × P (dis ck). | 23. K — B 2. |

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 24. R — Kt 7 (ck). | 24. K — K 1. |
| 25. Q × P. | 25. B — K 3. |
| 26. Q — Kt 6 (ck). | 26. B — B 2. |
| 27. R × B. | 27. R × R. |
| 28. Q — Kt 8 (ck). | 28. R — K B 1. |
| 29. Q × Kt. | 29. R — Q B 1. |
| 30. P — K 6. | 30. R × B. |
| 31. Q — Q 7 (ck). | 31. K — B 1. |
| 32. P — K 7 (ck). | |

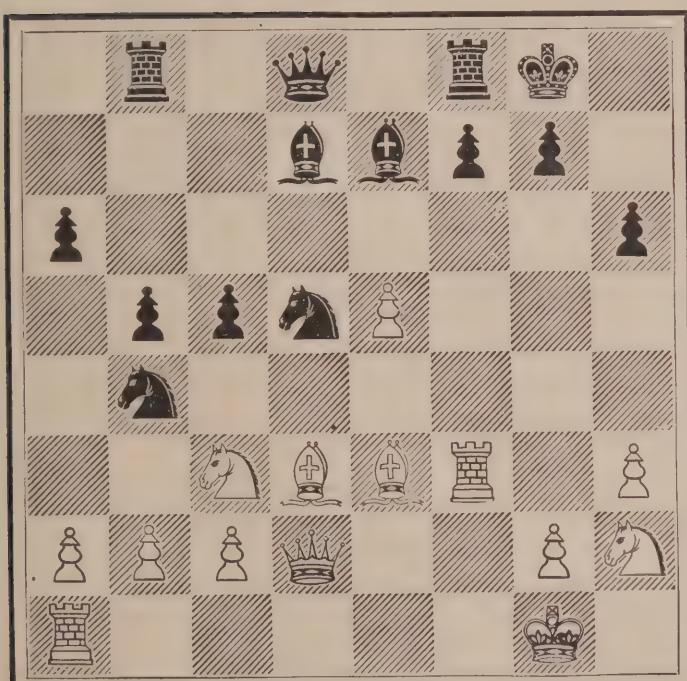
And Black resigns.

Position after Black's 16th move.

FIG. 257.

SAWYER.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

GAME 16.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Sept. 7, 1885. Match Game.

This game illustrates, first, a line of mobilization by the left refused, afterwards converted into a line of development by the right, and combined with a compound line of manœuvre against a strategetic weakness on Black's left flank. Secondly, the combining of the development by the right with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane not covered by a Kt at KB3, and weakened by the improper establishment of the right major crochet and the en appui.

ENGLISH OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P—QB4.
2. Kt—QB3.
3. P—K3.
4. P—Q4.
5. B×P.
6. Kt—B3.
7. P—K4.
8. Q—Q3.
9. P—QR3.
10. Castles.
11. B—R2.
12. P—K5.
13. Kt×Kt.
14. R—K1.
15. B—Q2.
16. B—Kt3.

P. WARE.

BLACK.

1. P—QB3.
2. P—K3.
3. P—Q4.
4. P×P.
5. B—Q3.
6. Kt—B3.
7. B—Kt5.
8. P—KR3.
9. B—K2.
10. P—QKt4.
11. P—Kt5.
12. Kt—Q4.
13. KP×Kt.
14. B—K3.
15. P—QR4.
16. P×P.

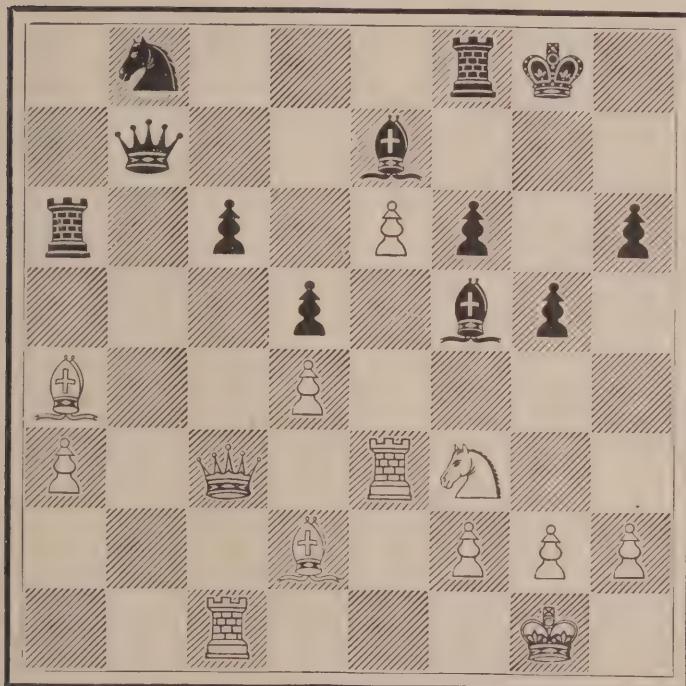
- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 17. P × P. | 17. P — K Kt 3. |
| 18. B — R 4. | 18. Q — B 1. |
| 19. Q R — Q B 1. | 19. Q B — B 4. |
| 20. Q — B 3. | 20. P — K Kt 4. |
| 21. P — K 6. | 21. P — K B 3. |
| 22. R — K 3. | 22. R — R 3. |
| 23. B — Kt 5. | 23. R — Kt 3. |
| 24. Q × R P. | 24. Q — Kt 2. |
| 25. B — R 4. | 25. Castles. |
| 26. Q — B 3. | 26. R — R 3. |

Position after Black's 26th move.

FIG. 258.

WARE.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 27. B — B 2. | 27. R × P. |
| 28. B × B. | 28. R × Q. |
| 29. R (K 3) × R. | 29. R — Q B 1. |
| 30. P — K R 4. | 30. B — Q 3. |
| 31. P — K Kt 3. | 31. Q — K 2. |
| 32. K — Kt 2. | 32. P — B 4. |
| 33. Q P × P. | 33. R × P. |
| 34. P × P. | 34. R P × P. |
| 35. R — K R 1. | 35. R × R. |
| 36. B × R. | 36. Kt — Q B 3. |
| 37. Kt × P. | 37. P — Q 5. |
| 38. Kt — B 7. | 38. Q — B 2. |
| 39. R — R 8 (ck). | 39. K — Kt 2. |
| 40. B — Q 2. | 40. Q × Kt. |
| 41. R — R 7 (ck). | 41. K — Kt 1. |
| 42. P × Q (ck). | 42. K — B 1. |
| 43. B — R 6 (ck). | 43. K — K 2. |
| 44. P — B 8 (Q dle ck). | |

Mate.

GAME 17.

Played at the Boston Press Club, Aug. 19, 1895.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the left refused, afterwards converted into a line of development by the right refused, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the refused wing of a minor left oblique refused.

Black opposes this, first, by the minor left oblique, then by the major left oblique aligned, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against the logistic horizon and an objective plane not properly covered nor supported.

QUEEN'S OPENING.

C. F. BURILLE.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

BLACK.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. P — Q 4. | 1. P — Q 4. |
| 2. Kt — K B 3. | 2. P — Q B 4. |
| 3. P — K 3. | 3. Kt — Q B 3. |
| 4. P — Q Kt 3. | 4. P — K 3. |
| 5. B — Kt 2. | 5. Kt — K B 3. |
| 6. Q Kt — Q 2. | 6. P — Q Kt 3. |
| 7. B — Kt 5. | 7. B — Kt 2. |
| 8. Kt — K 5. | 8. R — Q B 1. |
| 9. Kt × Kt. | 9. B × Kt. |
| 10. B — Q 3. | 10. B — K 2. |
| 11. Castles. | 11. Castles. |
| 12. Q — K 2. | 12. Q — Q 2. |
| 13. P — K B 3. | 13. K R — Q 1. |
| 14. Q R — Q 1. | 14. Kt — K R 4. |
| 15. P — K B 4. | 15. Kt — K B 3. |

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 16. P — K B 5. | 16. Kt — K 5. |
| 17. B × Kt. | 17. P × B. |
| 18. P — Q 5. | 18. K P × Q P. |
| 19. Kt × K P. | 19. P — K B 3. |
| 20. Q — Kt 4. | 20. K — R 1. |
| 21. R — K B 3. | 21. Q — K 1. |
| 22. Kt — B 2. | 22. P — Q 5. |
| 23. P — K 4. | 23. B — Q 3. |
| 24. R — K R 3. | 24. R — Q B 2. |
| 25. Q R — Q 3. | 25. R — K 2. |
| 26. R — R 4. | 26. B — Q 2. |
| 27. B — Q B 1. | 27. P — K Kt 4. |
| 28. R — R 6. | 28. B — K 4. |
| 29. Q R — R 3. | 29. R — Kt 2. |
| 30. Q R — R 5. | 30. Q — B 2. |
| 31. P — K R 4. | 31. P × P. |
| 32. Q × P. | 32. Q R — K Kt 1. |
| 33. Kt — Kt 4. | 33. B — K 1. |
| 34. B — Kt 5. | 34. P × B. |
| 35. Q — K R 1. | 35. Q — K 2. |
| 36. R — R 3. | 36. P — Q 6. |
| 37. Kt × B. | 37. P × P. |
| 38. Kt — Q 3. | 38. P — Kt 5. |
| 39. R (R 3) — R 4. | 39. R — K B 1. |
| 40. K — B 2. | 40. P — Q B 5. |
| 41. P × P. | 41. B — Kt 3. |
| 42. P — Kt 3. | 42. B × P. |
| 43. P × B. | 43. R × P (ck). |
| 44. Kt — B 4. | 44. R × Kt (ck). |
| 45. P × R. | 45. P — Kt 6 (ck). |
| 46. K — B 3. | 46. P — Kt 7. |
| 47. Q — K Kt 1. | 47. Q — R 6 (ck). |
| 48. K — K 2. | 48. P — B 8 (Kt ck). |

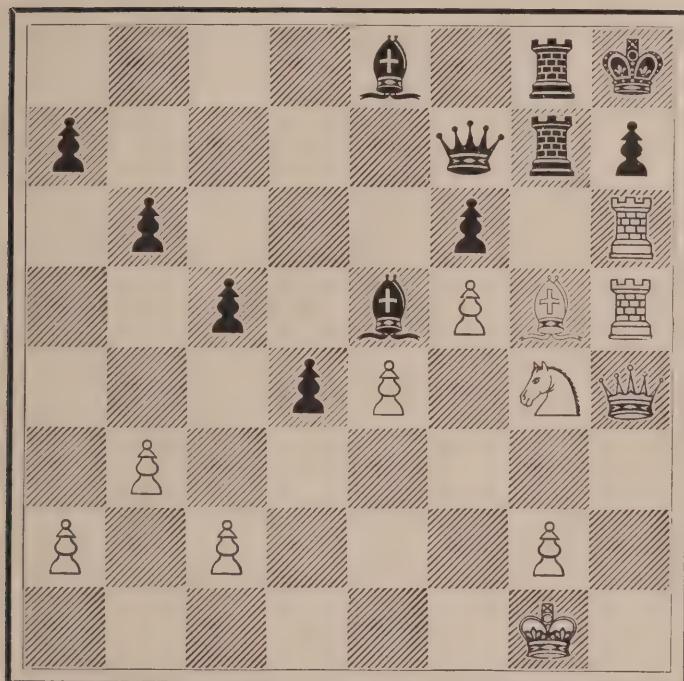
Resigns.

Position after White's 34th move.

FIG. 259.

YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

BURILLE.

GAME 18.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Sept. 7, 1886. Exhibition Game.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization originally directed by the left refused, converted into a line of development by the right, and combined with a complex line of manœuvre against a premature counter attack by the right refused, by Black, and an objective plane weakened by the improper establishment of the echelon and en appui.

QUEEN'S OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — Q 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.
3. P — K 3.
4. P — Q Kt 3.
5. P × P.
6. B — Q Kt 2.
7. B — Q 3.
8. Q Kt — Q 2.
9. Q — K 2.
10. Castles K R.
11. Kt — K 5.
12. P — KB 4.
13. R — KB 3.
14. Q R — KB 1.
15. R — KR 3.
16. Kt (Q 2) — B 3.
17. Kt — KR 4.
18. R (B 1) — KB 3.
19. P × P.
20. R (B 3) — Kt 3.

DR. H. RICHARDSON.

BLACK.

1. P — Q 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.
3. P — K 3.
4. P — QB 4.
5. B × P.
6. P — Q Kt 3.
7. B — Kt 2.
8. Castles.
9. Kt — K 5.
10. P — KB 4.
11. Q — KKt 4.
12. Q — R 3.
13. Q — KR 5.
14. Q — K 2.
15. R — KB 3.
16. P — KR 3.
17. Q — K 1.
18. P — KKt 4.
19. Kt × P.
20. K — B 1.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 21. R × Kt. | 21. P × R. |
| 22. Kt (R 4) — Kt 6 (ck). | 22. R × Kt. |
| 23. Q — K R 5. | 23. R — K Kt 1. |
| 24. Q — R 6 (ck). | 24. K — K 2. |
| 25. Q — R 7 (ck). | 25. K — Q 3. |
| 26. Q × B. | 26. Kt — Q 2. |
| 27. Kt × Kt. | 27. Q × Kt. |
| 28. B — K 5 (ck). | |

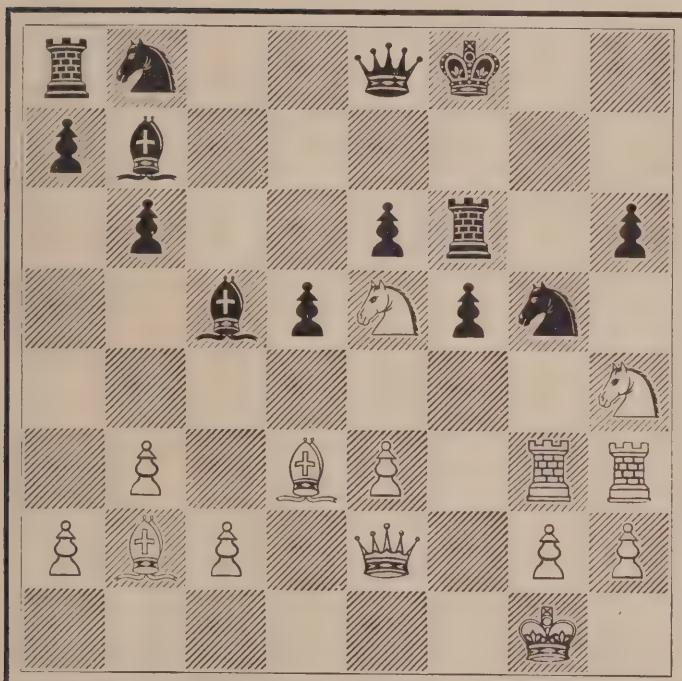
And Black resigns.

Position after Black's 20th move.

FIG. 260.

RICHARDSON.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

YOUNG.

GAME 19.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, June 7, 1885. Match Game.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the left, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against the logistic horizon.

ENGLISH OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P—Q B 4.
2. P—Q R 3.
3. Kt—Q B 3.
4. P—K 3.
5. P—Q 4.
6. P × P.
7. B—K 2.
8. Kt—K B 3.
9. Castles.
10. P—Q Kt 4.
11. Kt—K R 4.
12. P—K B 4.
13. P—Q B 5.
14. Kt × Kt.
15. P—Q 5.
16. P × Kt.
17. B—Q B 4.
18. P—K B 5.
19. R—Q R 3.
20. P—K Kt 4.
21. R—K 3.
22. B—Kt 3.
23. B—R 3.
24. B × P.
25. Q—K 2.
26. K × R.

P. WARE.

BLACK.

1. P—K 4.
2. Kt—Q B 3.
3. P—Q 3.
4. Kt—K B 3.
5. P × P.
6. B—K 2.
7. B—K B 4.
8. P—K R 3.
9. Castles.
10. P—Q R 3.
11. B—K R 2.
12. P—Q 4.
13. Kt—K 5.
14. P × Kt.
15. Kt × P.
16. B × Kt.
17. K—R 1.
18. B—B 3.
19. Q—Q 2.
20. K R—K 1.
21. P—Q Kt 4.
22. P—Q R 4.
23. P × P.
24. R—Q R 8.
25. R × R (ck).
26. P—Kt 3.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 27. P — B 6. | 27. Q — B 1. |
| 28. Q × P. | 28. P × P. |
| 29. P — Q 6. | 29. P × Q P. |
| 30. B × K B P. | 30. R — B 1. |
| 31. Q — Kt 7. | 31. B — K 4. |
| 32. B × Q P. | 32. B — Kt 2. |
| 33. B × R. | 33. Q × B. |
| 34. P — B 7. | 34. Q × B. |
| 35. P — B 8 (Q ck). | 35. Q — Kt 1. |
| 36. R — Q R 3. | 36. B — B 1. |
| 37. R — R 7. | |

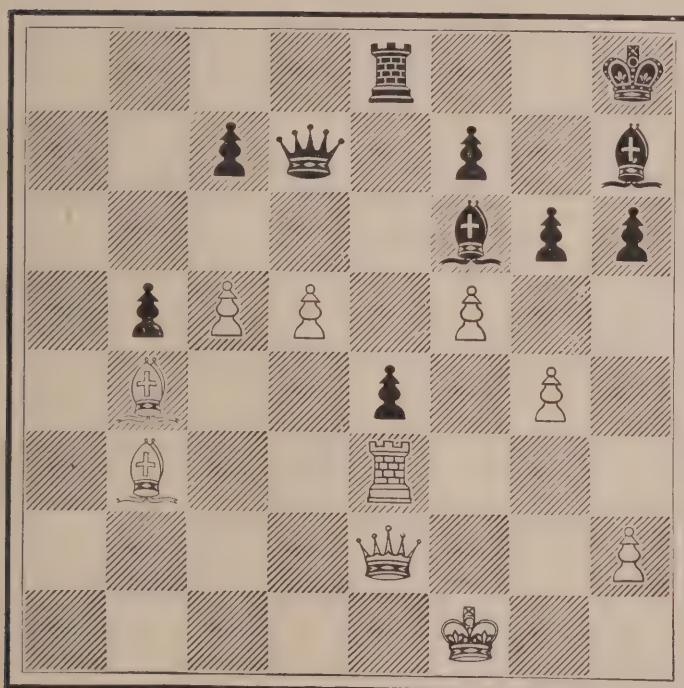
And Black resigns.

Position after Black's 26th move.

FIG. 261.

WARE.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

YOUNG.

GAME 20.

Played at the Deschapelles Club, Feb. 19, 1889. Tournament Game.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, afterwards converted into a line of mobilization by the left refused, combined with a line of development by the right; then a compound line of manœuvre by the left, afterward converted into a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the refused wing of the minor left oblique.

STONEWALL OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG AND P. WARE.

- WHITE.
1. P — Q 4.
 2. P — KB 4.
 3. P — K 3.
 4. P — QB 3.
 5. Kt — KB 3.
 6. B — Q 3.
 7. Castles.
 8. B — Q 2.
 9. B — K 1.
 10. Kt × P.
 11. Kt — Q 2.
 12. B — KR 4.
 13. Kt × Kt.
 14. Q — B 2.
 15. P — K 4.
 16. P — KB 5.
 17. P — QB 4.
 18. B × Kt.
 19. Kt — B 3.
 20. Q — Q 2.
 21. P — QR 3.
 22. P — K Kt 4.
 23. QR — QB 1.
 24. R — QB 2.

C. F. BURILLE.

- BLACK.
1. P — Q 4.
 2. P — K 3.
 3. P — QB 4.
 4. Kt — KB 3.
 5. Kt — QB 3.
 6. B — Q 3.
 7. Castles.
 8. P — Q Kt 3.
 9. P × P.
 10. B — Kt 2.
 11. R — QB 1.
 12. R — K 1.
 13. B × Kt.
 14. P — KR 3.
 15. P — K 4.
 16. P — Q 5.
 17. B — K 2.
 18. B × B.
 19. Q — Q 3.
 20. B — K 2.
 21. B — Kt 2.
 22. R — B 2.
 23. B — R 3.
 24. KR — QB 1.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 25. K R — Q B 1. | 25. R — B 3. |
| 26. P — K R 4. | 26. Q — B 2. |
| 27. P — Kt 5. | 27. R — K 1. |
| 28. P — Q Kt 4. | 28. B — Q B 1. |
| 29. P — Q Kt 5. | 29. R — Q 3. |
| 30. P — Q B 5. | 30. R (Q 3) — Q 1. |
| 31. P × Kt P. | 31. Q × P. |
| 32. R — B 6. | 32. Q — Kt 1. |
| 33. P × P. | 33. R — Q 3. |
| 34. R × R. | 34. Q × R. |
| 35. R — B 6. | 35. Q × Q R P. |
| 36. P × P. | 36. P — K B 3. |
| 37. Kt × K P. | |

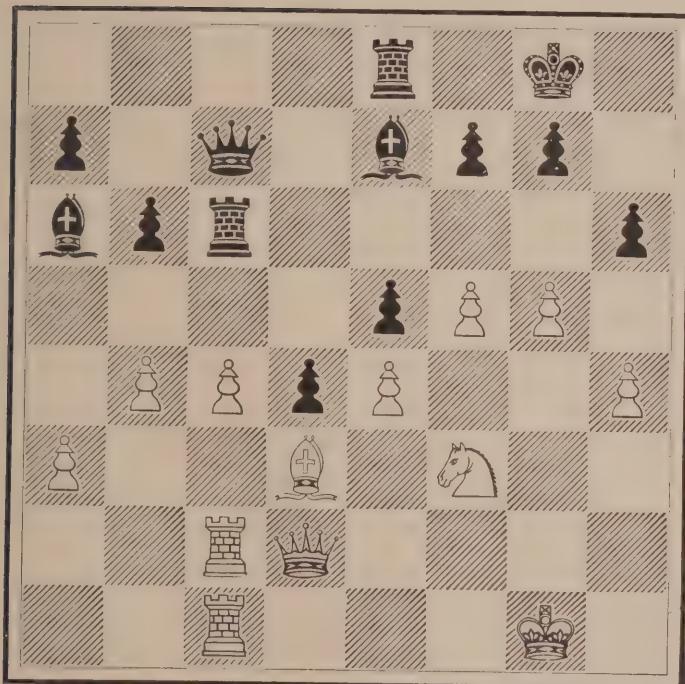
And Black resigns.

Position after White's 28th move.

FIG. 262.

BURILLE.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG AND WARE.

GAME 21.

Played at the Deschapelles Club, March 2, 1889. Tournament Game.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the left refused, afterward converted into a line of development by the major right oblique, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located at the extremity of a major adverse front.

QUEEN'S OPENING.

F. K. YOUNG AND H. N. STONE.

C. F. BURILLE.

WHITE.

1. P — Q 4.
2. P — K 3.
3. Kt — KB 3.
4. P — Q Kt 3.
5. B — Kt 2.
6. B — K 2.
7. Castles.
8. P — Q B 4.
9. Kt — Q B 3.
10. Q — Q 2.
11. K R — Q 1.
12. Kt — K Kt 5.
13. B — K B 3.
14. Kt × B.
15. P — Q 5..
16. Kt — K Kt 5.
17. Kt — K 6.
18. Q — B 2.
19. Kt — K 2.
20. Kt (K 2) — B 4.
21. Kt × Kt.
22. P — K B 3.
23. Q — K B 2.
24. P × P.
25. Q — Kt 3.
26. Q × Q P.
27. Kt × B.
28. Q — Kt 3.

BLACK.

1. P — KB 4.
2. Kt — KB 3.
3. P — K 3.
4. B — K 2.
5. Castles.
6. P — Q Kt 3.
7. B — Kt 2.
8. P — Q B 4.
9. P — Q R 3.
10. Q — B 2.
11. P — Q 3.
12. Q — B 1.
13. B × B.
14. R — R 2.
15. P — K 4.
16. Q Kt — Q 2.
17. R — K 1.
18. P — K 5.
19. Kt — B 1.
20. Kt — Kt 3.
21. P × Kt.
22. B — Q 1.
23. P × P.
24. Kt — R 2.
25. P — K Kt 4.
26. Kt — B 1.
27. R × Kt.
28. P — Kt 5.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 29. P - K 4. | 29. P × B P. |
| 30. P - K 5. | 30. Q R - Q 2. |
| 31. R - K B 1. | 31. Q - Kt 2. |
| 32. R × P. | 32. P - Q Kt 4. |
| 33. B - B 3. | 33. P - Kt 5. |
| 34. B - Kt 2. | 34. P - R 4. |
| 35. Q R - K B 1. | 35. P - R 5. |
| 36. R × P. | 36. P - R 6. |
| 37. B - R 1. | 37. Kt - K 3. |
| 38. P × Kt. | 38. R - Q 8. |
| 39. Q - K B 3. | 39. R × R (ck). |
| 40. K × R. | 40. R - Q 8 (ck). |
| 41. K - K 2. | |

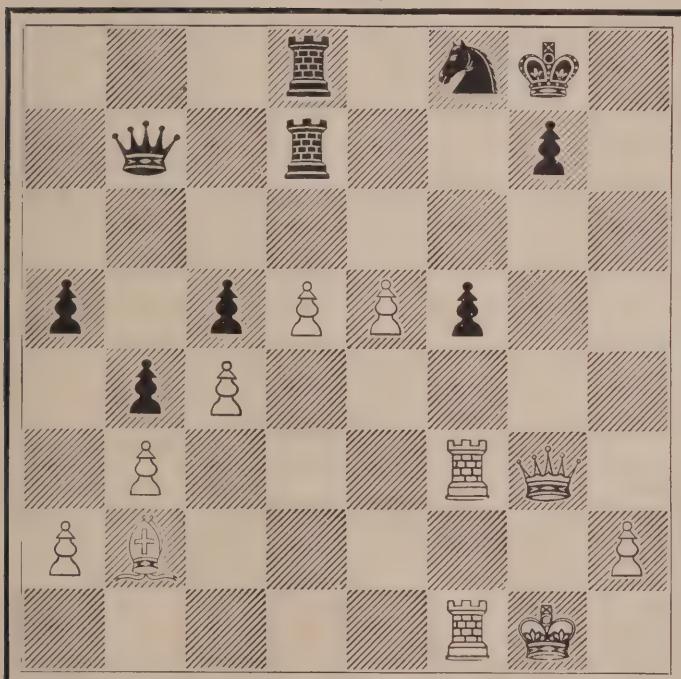
And Black resigned.

Position after White's 35th move.

FIG. 263.

BURILLE.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

YOUNG AND STONE.

GAME 22.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, June 16, 1884.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the left refused and a premature attack by White, followed by the counter attack of Black by a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane not covered by a Kt at KB 3, and weakened by the formation of the appui.

QUEEN'S OPENING.

CAPT. G. H. MACKENZIE.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P — Q 4.	1. P — KB 4.
2. P — QB 4.	2. P — K 3.
3. Kt — QB 3.	3. Kt — KB 3.
4. P — K 3.	4. B — K 2.
5. Kt — KB 3.	5. Castles.
6. B — Q 3.	6. P — Q Kt 3.
7. Castles.	7. B — Kt 2.
8. P — Q Kt 3.	8. P — KR 3.
9. B — Kt 2.	9. P — Q 3.
10. Q — K 2.	10. Q Kt — Q 2.
11. P — Q 5.	11. P × P.
12. B × P.	12. P × P.
13. B — K 6 (ck).	13. K — R 1.
14. Kt — KR 4.	14. Q — K 1.
15. Q — B 2.	15. Kt — K 4.
16. QR — Q 1.	16. Kt (B 3) — Kt 5.
17. B × Kt.	17. B × Kt.
18. B — K 2.	18. Kt — Q 6.
19. B × Kt.	19. P × B.
20. Q × P.	20. Q — KR 4.
21. Kt — K 4.	21. B × Kt.
22. Q × B.	22. B × P (ck).
23. K — R 1.	23. QR — K 1.
24. Q — Q 4.	24. R — K 4.
25. P — KR 3.	25. R — K Kt 4.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 26. Q — K 4. | 26. P — Q 4. |
| 27. Q — K 6. | 27. R — K 1. |
| 28. Q — Q 7. | 28. R × K P. |
| 29. R × P. | 29. R × R P (ck). |
| 30. Q × R. | 30. R × R. |
| 31. R × B. | 31. Q — Q 8 (ck). |
| 32. K — R 2. | 32. R — K R 4. |

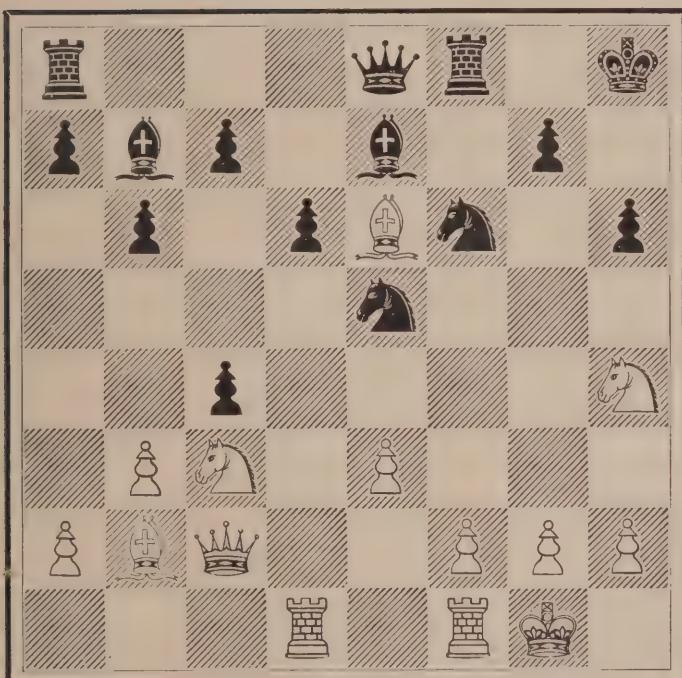
And White resigns.

Position after White's 16th move.

FIG. 264.

YOUNG.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

MACKENZIE.

GAME 23.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Jan. 17, 1884.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the right and not covered nor supported by the improperly mobilized kindred force. The miscalling, by the teller, of White's twentieth move gave Black a complex line of manœuvre, and the play that ensued led the *British Chess Magazine* to say: "This game is one of the most interesting we ever played over."

EVANS' GAMBIT.

P. WARE AND F. K. YOUNG. DR. J. H. ZUKERTORT.

WHITE.	BLACK.
1. P — K 4.	1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — K B 3.	2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. K B — B 4.	3. K B — B 4.
4. P — Q Kt 4.	4. B × Kt P.
5. P — Q B 3.	5. B — R 4.
6. P — Q 4.	6. P × P.
7. Castles.	7. P × P.
8. Q — Kt 3.	8. Q — K B 3.
9. P — K 5.	9. Q — Kt 3.
10. Kt × P.	10. K Kt — K 2.
11. B — Q R 3.	11. Castles.
12. Q R — Q 1.	12. P — Q Kt 4.
13. B — Q 3.	13. Q — K Kt 5.
14. P — K R 3.	14. Q — K 3.
15. B × R P (ck).	15. K — R 1.
16. Kt — Q 5.	16. P — Kt 5.
17. Kt — Kt 5.	17. Kt × Kt.
18. Kt × Q.	18. B P × Kt.

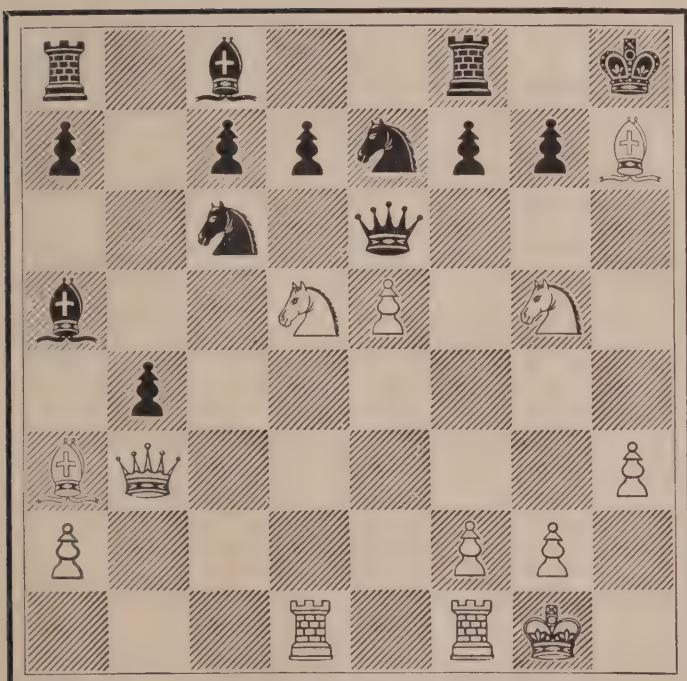
- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 19. B - Q Kt 1. | 19. P × B. |
| 20. Q - Q 3.* | 20. R - K B 4. |
| 21. P - K Kt 4. | 21. Kt × K P. |
| 22. Q - K 4. | 22. Kt - B 6 (ck). |
| 23. K - R 1. | 23. Kt - Kt 4. |
| 24. Q - Kt 2. | 24. R - K B 6. |
| 25. R × Kt. | 25. P × R. |
| 26. K R - Q 1. | 26. R × R P (ck). |

Position after White's 17th move.

FIG. 265.

ZUKERTORT.

(Black.)



(White.)

WARE AND YOUNG.

* Miscalled by teller for 20. Q - B 2.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 27. K — Kt 1. | 27. Kt — B 6 (ck). |
| 28. K — B 1. | 28. B — R 3 (ck). |
| 29. B — Q 3. | 29. Kt — R 7 (ck). |
| 30. K — Kt 1. | 30. R × B. |
| 31. R × R. | 31. B × R. |
| 32. Q × Q P. | 32. R — K B 1. |
| 33. K × Kt. | 33. R × P (ck). |
| 34. K — Kt 3. | 34. B — Kt 3. |
| 35. Q × B. | 35. R × R P. |
| 36. Q × Q P. | 36. R — K B 7. |
| 37. Q — K 8 (ck). | 37. K — R 2. |
| 38. Q — K R 5 (ck). | 38. K — Kt 1. |
| 39. P — Kt 5. | 39. K — B 1. |
| 40. P — Kt 6. | 40. P — R 7. |
| 41. Q — R 8 (ck). | 41. K — K 2. |
| 42. Q × P (ck). | 42. K — Q 3. |
| 43. Q — Q B 3. | 43. K — K 3. |
| 44. Q — R 8. | 44. R — K B 3. |
| 45. P — Kt 7. | 45. R — K Kt 3 (ck). |
| 46. K — R 3. | 46. K — Q 2. |
| 47. Q — R 7. | 47. R — K R 3 (ck). |
| 48. Q × R. | 48. P — R 8 (Q). |
| 49. Q — Q 2 (ck). | 49. K — K 2. |
| 50. P — Kt 8 (Q). | 50. Q — K R 8 (ck). |
| 51. Q — K R 2. | 51. Q — B 6 (ck). |
| 52. Q (R 2) — Kt 3. | 52. Q — R 8 (ck). |
| 53. K — Kt 4. | 53. Q — Q 8 (ck). |
| 54. K — Kt 5. | 54. Q — Q B 8 (ck). |
| 55. K — R 5. | 55. Q — Q 8 (ck). |
| 56. Q (Kt 8) — Kt 4. | |

And Black resigns.

GAME 24.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, July 9, 1886.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right and the exposure of the prime strategetic point by the advance of the K B P before castling, and then leaving the point K B 3 uncovered by a Kt.

SALVIO COUNTER GAMBIT.

WILHELM STEINITZ.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. P — K B 4.
3. Kt — K B 3.
4. K B — B 4.
5. Kt — K 5.
6. K — B 1.
7. P — Q 4.
8. Kt — Q B 3.
9. K × P.
10. K — Kt 1.
11. K B — B 1.
12. B — K B 4.
13. B — Kt 3.
14. Kt — Q B 4.
15. B — B 2.
16. Kt — Q 5.
17. Kt × B P.
18. P — Q B 3.
19. P × P.
20. Q — Q 2.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. P × P.
3. P — K Kt 4.
4. P — Kt 5.
5. Q — K R 5 (ck).
6. Kt — K R 3.
7. P — K B 6.
8. P × P (ck).
9. Q — R 6 (ck).
10. Kt — Q B 3.
11. Q — K R 5.
12. P — Q 3.
13. Q — K Kt 4.
14. B — Kt 2.
15. P — K B 4.
16. Castles.
17. R — Q Kt 1.
18. P — Kt 6.
19. Kt — K Kt 5.
20. P — K B 5.

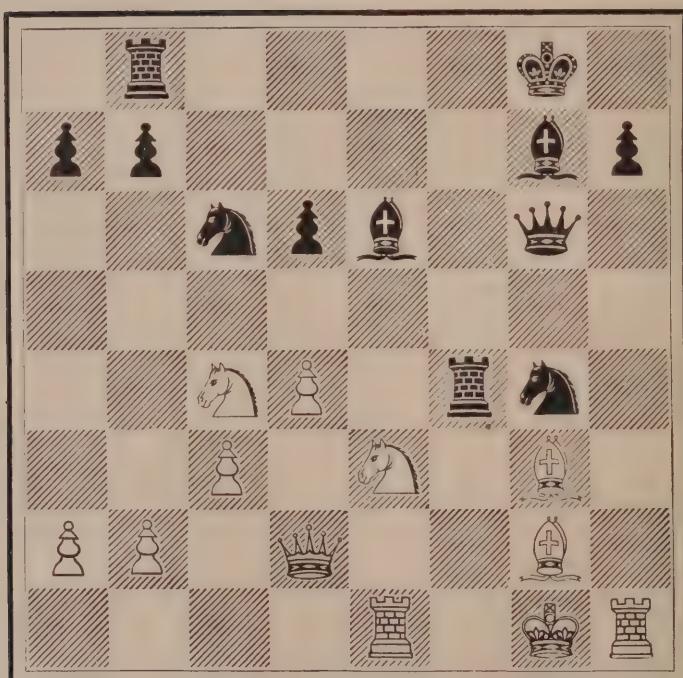
- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 21. P × P. | 21. Q — K 2. |
| 22. Kt — Q 5. | 22. Q × P. |
| 23. B — Kt 2. | 23. Q — K Kt 3. |
| 24. R — K 1. | 24. B — K 3. |
| 25. Kt (Q 5) — K 3. | 25. R × P. |
| 26. B — Kt 3. | 26. R × Q P. |
| 27. P × R. | 27. KB × P. |
| 28. R — K R 4. | 28. P — K R 4. |
| 29. R × Kt. | 29. Q × R. |
| 30. B — B 2. | 30. Q — K B 5. |

Position after White's 26th move.

FIG. 266.

YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

STEINITZ.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 31. Kt — Q 5. | 31. Q × B (ck). |
| 32. Q × Q. | 32. B × Q (ck). |
| 33. K × B. | 33. R — K B 1 (ck). |
| 34. K — Kt 3. | 34. Kt — Q 5. |
| 35. Kt × P. | 35. R — Q 1. |
| 36. Kt — K 4. | 36. K — Kt 2. |
| 37. Kt (K 4) — Q B 3. | 37. P — Q Kt 3. |
| 38. Kt — B 4. | 38. B — B 2. |
| 39. K — R 4. | 39. K — R 3. |
| 40. R — K 5. | 40. R — K Kt 1. |
| 41. B — Q 5. | 41. R — Kt 5 (ck). |

Drawn.

GAME 25.

Played at the Boston Chess Club, Sept. 19, 1886. Match Game.

This game illustrates the overthrow of an improperly constructed major right oblique by the minor left oblique refused and aligned, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the centre and improperly covered.

REMOVE BLACK'S K B P.

P. WARE.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. P — K B 4.
3. P — Q 4.
4. Kt — K B 3.
5. B — Q 3.
6. P — K 5.
7. P — Q B 3.
8. P — Q Kt 3.

BLACK.

1. Kt — K R 3.
2. Kt — B 2.
3. P — K 3.
4. B — K 2.
5. P — Q 4.
6. P — Q B 4.
7. Kt — Q B 3.
8. B — Q 2.

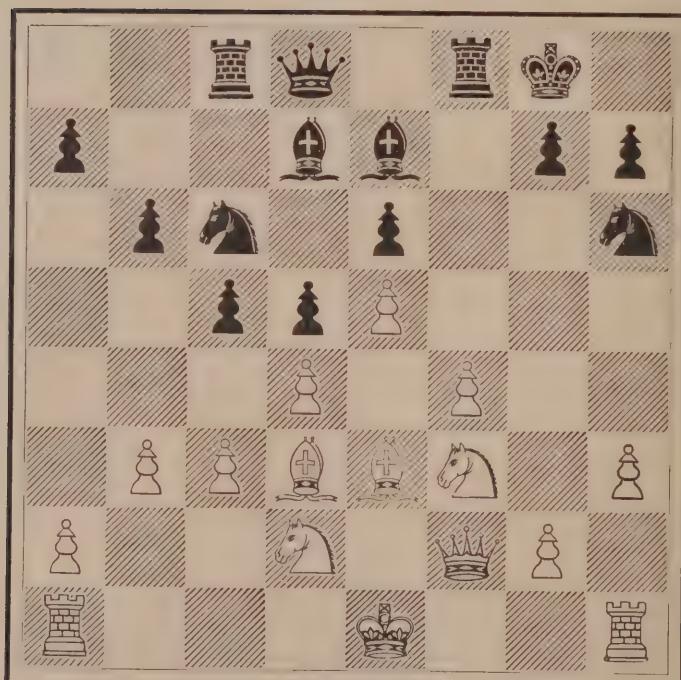
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 9. B — K 3. | 9. P — Q Kt 3. |
| 10. Q — B 2. | 10. R — Q B 1. |
| 11. Q — K B 2. | 11. Kt — K R 3. |
| 12. P — K R 3. | 12. Castles. |
| 13. Q Kt — Q 2. | 13. P × P. |
| 14. P × P. | 14. Kt — Q Kt 5. |
| 15. K — K 2. | 15. Kt × B. |
| 16. K × Kt. | 16. B — Q Kt 4 (ck). |
| 17. Kt — Q B 4. | 17. P × Kt (ck). |
| 18. K — Q 2. | 18. P × P. |

Position after White's 13th move.

FIG. 267.

YOUNG.

(Black.)



(White.)

WARE.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 19. P × P. | 19. Q — Q 4. |
| 20. K R — Q Kt 1. | 20. Q — K 5. |
| 21. K — Q 1. | 21. Kt — B 4. |
| 22. B — Q 2. | 22. Kt — Kt 6. |
| 23. Q — K 3. | 23. Q — B 7 (ck). |
| 24. K — K 1. | 24. Kt — B 8. |
| 25. Q — B 2. | 25. Kt × B. |
| 26. Kt × Kt. | 26. K R — Q 1. |
| 27. Q — K 3. | 27. R × Q P. |
| 28. R — Q B 1. | 28. B — K R 5 (ck). |
| 29. P — K Kt 3. | 29. B × P (ck). |

And White resigns.

GAME 26.

Played at the Boston Press Club, Jan. 26, 1893.

This game illustrates a line of mobilization by the right, combined with a complex line of manœuvre against an objective plane located on the right, not covered by a Kt at K B 3, and weakened by the false fianchetto of the K B and the premature formation of the minor left oblique refused.

RUY LOPEZ.

F. K. YOUNG.

WHITE.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — K B 3.
3. B — Kt 5.
4. P — Q 4.
5. Castles.
6. P — Q B 3.
7. Kt — K R 4.
8. P — K B 4.

H. N. PILLSBURY.

BLACK.

1. P — K 4.
2. Kt — Q B 3.
3. P — Q 3.
4. B — Q 2.
5. P — K B 3.
6. K Kt — K 2.
7. P — K Kt 3.
8. B — Kt 2.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 9. P — KB 5 | 9. P × P. |
| 10. P × P. | 10. Castles. |
| 11. Q — Kt 4. | 11. K — R 1. |
| 12. R — KB 3. | 12. R — K Kt 1. |
| 13. R — R 3. | 13. B — R 3. |
| 14. Q — R 5. | 14. B × B. |
| 15. Kt — Kt 6 (ck). | 15. K — Kt 2. |
| 16. Q × P. | |

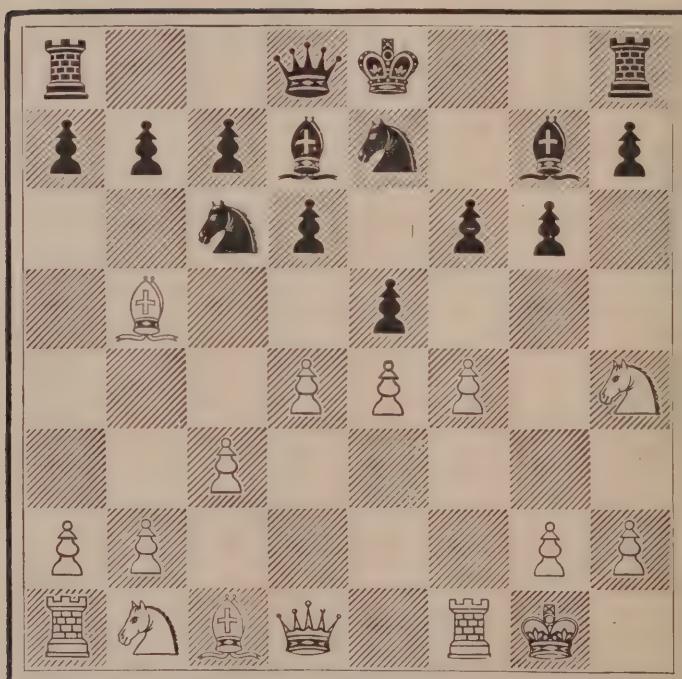
Checkmate.

Position after Black's 8th move.

FIG. 268.

PILLSBURY.

(Black.)



(White.)

YOUNG.

THE MODEL GAME.

THE MODEL GAME.

*Played in the Second Round of the First American Chess Congress,
at New York, 1857.*

FRENCH DEFENCE.

CHARLES PAUL MORPHY,
New Orleans, La.

JUDGE A. B. MEEK,
Mobile, Ala.

WHITE.

1. P — 4.

BLACK.

The best opening deployment for White, combined with the correct manœuvre, viz., to prevent P — Q 4 by Black. See "Grand Tactics," page 341.

1. P — K 3.

Inferior to 1 P — K 4, which last is best for Black. The second player is now committed to the strategic front by the left refused. A prime defect in this deployment lies in the fact that it permits White at once to establish the first supporting parallel.

2. P — Q 4.

The best deployment for White, combined with the correct manœuvre, viz., to form the first supporting parallel. White can now develop either by the right or by the left, which is the desideratum previous to the locating of the objective plane.

2. P — K Kt 3.

Entirely unscientific, being neither a deployment nor a manœuvre. The weakness thus created in Black's

right wing makes it perilous later to properly castle his king.

3. $B - Q3$.

White proceeds to establish the primary base Q P B 1 A as laid down in "Minor Tactics," pages 125–142, and page 139 (j), and so deploys as to retain the option of developing either by the right or by the left.

3. $B - Kt2$.

This also is entirely unscientific, being again neither a deployment nor a manœuvre.

4. $B - K3$.

See "Minor Tactics," page 139 (k).

4. $Kt - K2$.

The natural sequence in Black's position, which already is far inferior to that of White.

5. $Kt - K2$.

See "Minor Tactics," page 138 (h).

5. $P - QKt3$.

Black now commits himself irrevocably to the left oblique refused. This deployment is valid. See "Minor Tactics," page 162 (f).

6. $Kt - Q2$.

See "Minor Tactics," page 138 (i).

6. $B - QKt2$.

This also is a valid deployment. See "Minor Tactics," page 163 (k).

7. Castles.

By this move White initiates the line of development, and announces his purpose of attacking by the right oblique if Black castles K R, and by the crochet aligned

if Black castles Q R. It will be observed that the advanced Kt P's make it equally hazardous for Black to castle on either side.

7. P — Q 4.

Black permits White to establish the major front by the right.

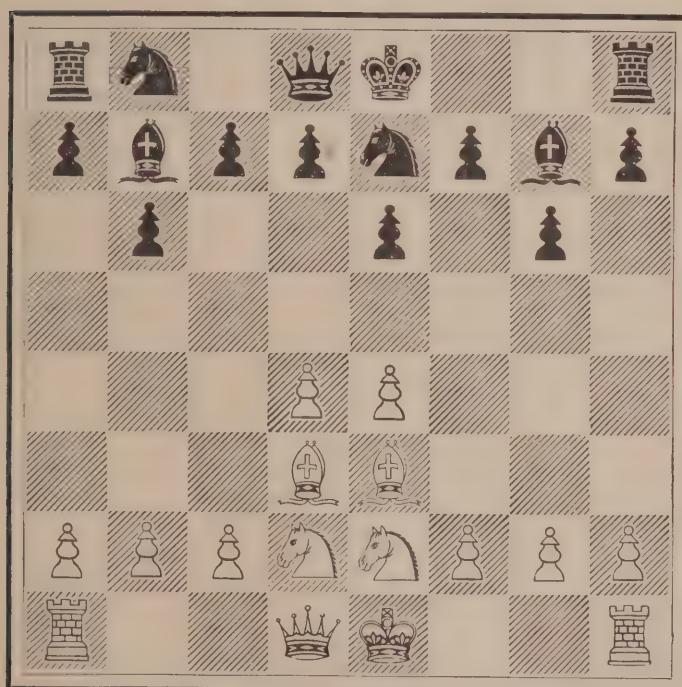
8. P — K 5.

And then, in open defiance to this theory, Black locates his prime strategic point at the extremity of the adverse strategic front.

Position after Black's 6th move.

FIG. 269.

(*Black.*)



(*White.*)

White to move.

8. Castles.

See "Grand Tactics," page 362.

9. P — KB 4.

White reinforces his major front with the K B P en potence, and thus combines the best deployment with the correct manœuvre, viz., to develop the strategic front.

9. P — KB 4.

White's superiority seems demonstrated by the fact that Black voluntarily creates a strategetic weakness in his position by making K 3 an uncovered point. See "Minor Tactics, page 130 (a).

10. P — KR 3.

White proposes to reinforce his major front en potence by the echelon, and to that end he first establishes the K R P en appui to support the advance of the K Kt P. See "Grand Tactics," page 372.

10. Q Kt — Q 2.

An unscientific move, which is necessitated by the general inferiority of Black's position. The Q Kt, of course, should be deployed at Q B 3, after the deployment of Q B P at Q B 4. See "Minor Tactics," page 160, and page 162 (c) and (i).

11. K — R 2.

The King is deployed to make room at K Kt 1 for the K R, and it is placed at R 2 in order to be secure from the attack of the adverse Q B, and to support the point d'appui.

11. P — QB 4.

This deployment is valid. See "Minor Tactics," pages 160, 164, 166.

12. P — Q B 3.

See "Minor Tactics," pages 106 and 133 (d); "Grand Tactics," page 286, Formulas 1 to 16.

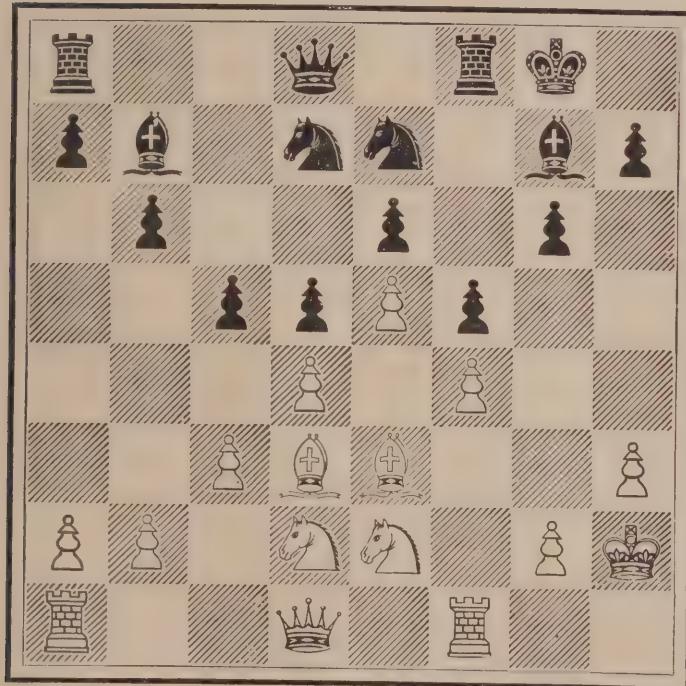
12. P — Q B 5.

See "Grand Tactics," page 225, Formulas 96 to 100. Black has now established the major left oblique refused. The defect in this strategic front lies in the fact that it has not the direction of the objective plane. See "Grand Tactics," page 159.

Position after White's 12th move.

FIG. 270.

(Black.)



(White.)

Black to move.

13. B — Q B 2.

13. P — Q R 3.

Entirely wrong. Black always with all speed should reinforce this front with the echelon by P — Q Kt 4 and P — Q R 4.

14. Q Kt — K B 3.

See "Minor Tactics," page 138 (i).

14. P — K R 3.

White menaces to avail of the strategetic weakness in Black's position by attacking the unsupported K P, and Black, in preventing this, creates another uncovered point at K Kt 3. As the result, his position is now fatally compromised.

15. P — K Kt 4.

15. K — R 2.

16. R — K Kt 1.

16. R — K Kt 1.

The reader will observe that every white piece deployed has been posted in exact accordance with this theory of chess play. It also will be observed that the faults in the Black position are occasioned by the posting of pieces not in accordance with this theory of chess play. To rectify Black's position, see Frontispiece.

17. Q — K 1.

Up to this point, every move by White has combined either the line of mobilization or the line of development with the line of manœuvre. Black, very improperly, has limited his efforts not only to the strategetic defensive, but even to the tactical defensive. Consequently White's constructive processes incident to the strategetic offensive not having been interrupted, the present game stands a perfect model of the art of combining deployments and developments by the right oblique with a simple line of manœuvre against an

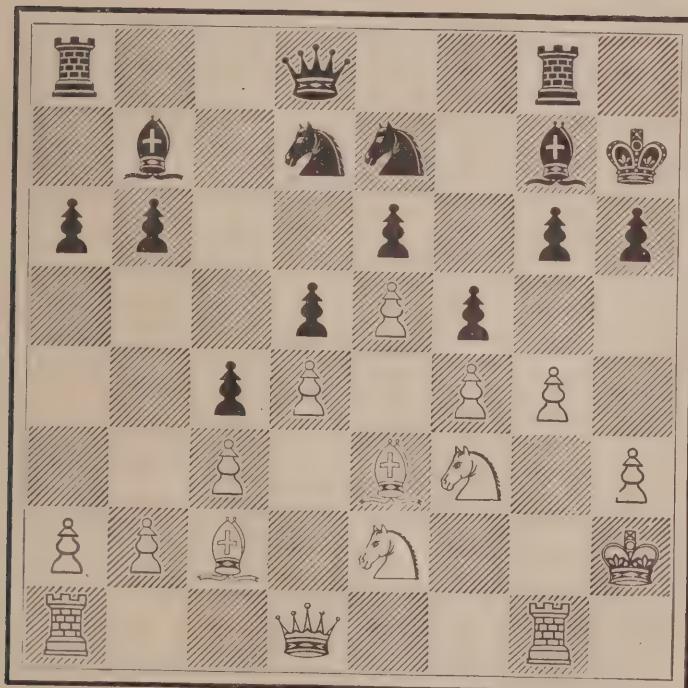
objective plane located on the refused wing of an adverse strategic front directed by the left oblique refused.

The Black front not being echeloned, the establishment of the minor crochet by White is unnecessary. The strategic weakness contained in the Black position makes it possible for White to mathematically demonstrate a decisive loss to Black either in position or in material, or in both. Therefore White, by the move in the text, initiates a strategic line of operations, *i. e.* he forecasts the capture of the adverse king.

Position after Black's 16th move.

FIG. 271.

(Black.)



(White.)

White to move.

This move by White is dictated by greater logistics, and is based upon a strategetic weakness in the position of the opponent. If this weakness did not exist, White would obey the dictates of lesser logistics, and deploy the Q at Q 2. See "Minor Tactics," page 142 (n), and "Grand Tactics," page 382, Formulas 108, 113 to 116.

17. Kt — Q B 3.

This leaves the weak K Kt P supported only by the K.

18. Kt — R 4.

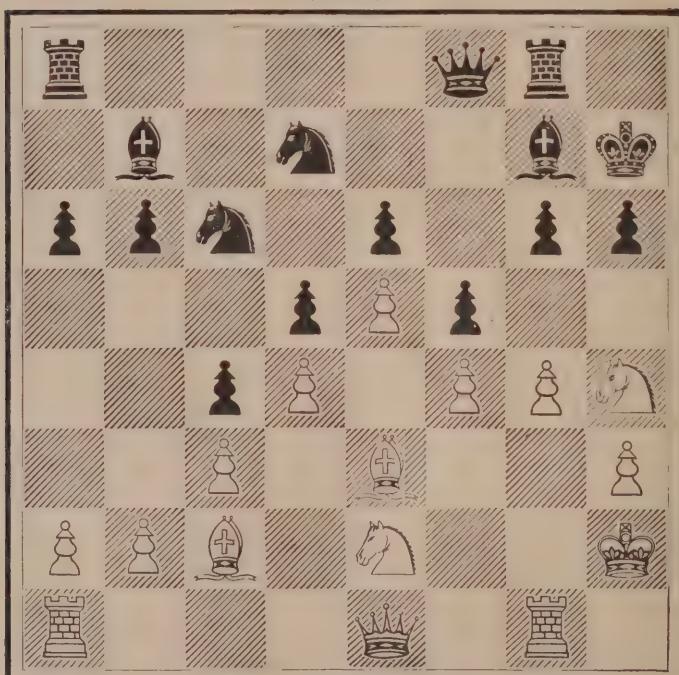
18. Q — K B 1.

This position would seem to show the superiority of the right oblique over the left oblique refused, *i. e.* of

Position after Black's 18th move.

FIG. 272.

(Black.)



(White.)

White to move.

the "open" game over the "close" game. The pieces on both sides are equal, and, with the exception of a single pawn, none are advanced beyond the kindred half of the board. Nevertheless Black is hopelessly beaten, and all for the simple reason that, whereas the bulk of the White force interposes between the bulk of the Black force and the white king, the bulk of the Black force does not so interpose between the bulk of the White force and the black king.

This is due to the fact that the White strategic front is established on the strategetic centre, and is extended in the direction of the objective plane, and that the Black strategic front is not established on the strategetic centre, nor extended in the direction of the objective plane.

Thus, in any circumstance it seems that the reason why one player wins and another loses may always, at least, logically be deduced; in the situation appended it will hardly be denied that this reason can be mathematically demonstrated.

19. Kt × Kt P.

Many will laud this as a "stroke of genius." As a matter of fact, it is a simple manifestation of the capacity to count beyond two, which is one of the things that distinguish mankind from monkeys and parrots. "Genius" consists in constructing such a situation that a line of operations not only is possible, but inevitable. Morphy and the greater chess masters, like the greater military captains, had no use for the supernatural. All their processes were worked out by simple arithmetic, and founded upon the proposition that two and two make four. The phrases "intuition" and "inspiration" are the refuge of the

fellow who neither can do it, comprehend it, nor explain it.

19. K × Kt.

The reader will observe that the game was won before a piece had been removed from the board. Whenever you see a player exchanging his men right and left, "in order to avoid complications," put him down as one whose conscience tells him he is at most but a second-class player, and who consequently is afraid of his opponent.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 20. P × P (dle ck). | 20. K — B 2. |
| 21. P × P (ck). | 21. K × P. |
| 22. P — B 5 (ck). | |

White now forms the major right oblique aligned en appui. See "Grand Tactics," page 167.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------|
| 22. K — K 2. | |
| 23. Q — K R 4 (ck). | 23. K — K 1. |
| 24. P — K B 6. | |

White now occupies the strategetic objective, and establishes the grand right oblique en appui. This is the logical culmination of the major and minor strategic fronts directed by the right, and it is held by this theory that the grand front, all else being equal, decides, *per se*, the victory.

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 24. B × P. | |
| 25. P × B. | 25. R × R. |
| 26. R × R. | 26. Kt × B P. |

The attention of the reader is called to White's primary base, and the ease with which the pieces that compose it, after having mutually defended each other and their own king throughout the game, are now precipitated in overwhelming force against the objective plane.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 27. B — Kt 6 (ck). | 27. K — Q 2. |
| 28. B — B 5 (ck). | 28. K — K 1. |
| 29. B × R P. | 29. Q — R 1. |
| 30. R — Kt 7. | 30. Kt — K Kt 1. |

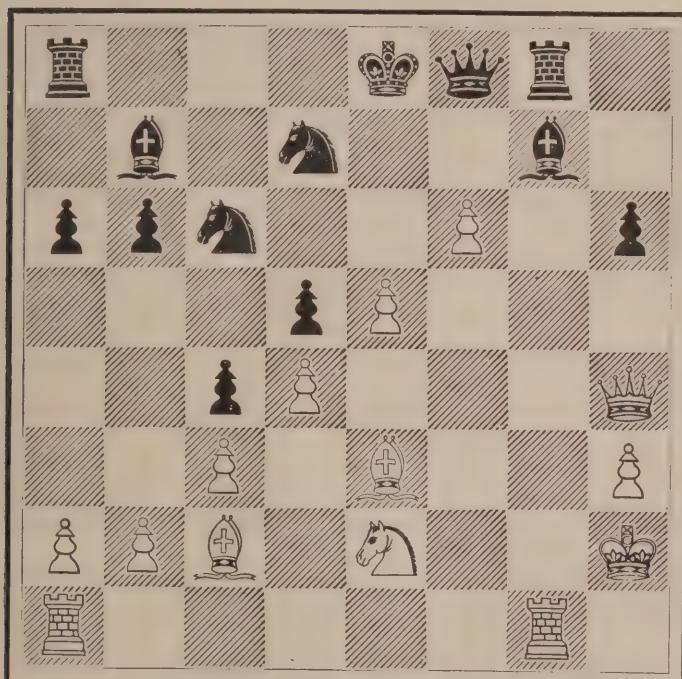
White now announced checkmate in three moves.
Its purest form is as follows:—

1. B — Kt 6 (ck), K — B 1;
2. R — KB 7 (dle ck), K — K 1;
3. R — Q B 7 (dis ck). Mate.

Position after White's 24th move.

FIG. 273.

(Black.)



(White.)

Black to move.

The ultimate objective plane of Black will be seen to have as its coefficient of mobility the numeral which expresses the net value of the adverse force which is directly employed in effecting checkmate. See "Grand Tactics," page 318.

THE MINOR TACTICS OF CHESS

*A Treatise on the Deployment of the Forces
.....in Obedience to Strategic Principle.....*

By

FRANKLIN K. YOUNG AND EDWIN C. HOWELL

16mo. Cloth. Illustrated. Price, \$1.00

THE student of chess will find in this book an altogether original treatment of the opening or "development" of the game. Avoiding the cumbersome and frequently misleading analysis of which chess manuals have hitherto been composed, the authors have elaborated the known principles of development, have discovered and enunciated others of manifestly great value, and have built upon this theoretical foundation a practical method, or series of methods, of deploying the chess pieces so that they shall individually and collectively exercise their normal functions in the most effective and consistent manner. A number of standard positions, of varying excellence, but all sound and strong, are given as models; and the player is advised to strive toward the attainment of the best of these positions which the play of his adversary will permit. The construction of "primary bases," as the standard positions are called, is discussed and explained in detail; and it is believed that even a beginner at chess will be enabled by study of this succinctly written book to open a game intelligently and with good prospects of success, without having to burden his memory at the outset with the manifold variations that are worked out in the ordinary treatises. The military idea, which is apparent in the title, enters to a considerable extent into the new theory, but is not made unreasonably prominent. The greater part of the volume is what may be termed "interesting reading;" the style is clear and forcible, and the system which it teaches is put together in a progressive, logical way that is quite convincing. The technique of the game is described, like everything else from preface to finis, in a novel, striking fashion; and the book is adapted equally to the use of beginners and the study of experts. It is hoped, indeed, that it may appeal to a class of readers who have thus far been frightened away from chess books by their intricate appearance, but who may be curious to learn in familiar language the elements of chess strategy as it exists in spirit, apart from the letter of analysis.

A remarkable book. — *London Illustrated News.*

By authors whose ability, it must be understood, is beyond question. — *London Literary World.*

This little manual, however, is a distinct contribution to chess literature, and we predict that its pages and principles will be studied with profit. — *The Churchman, New York.*

The reviewer played for many years with a friend from whom he usually received odds and a beating. After acquiring the new theory he (the reviewer) has played a series of games with the same friend (to whom this theory was unknown) without taking odds, and has not only won the majority of the games, but made a much better fight in those he lost than he had usually been able to make before becoming acquainted with the theory. — *London Spectator.*

Yours is the first successful attempt to treat the royal game in a truly scientific manner, and give it a decent nomenclature. In my opinion your little book inaugurates the beginning of a new epoch in chess literature. — WILLIAM P. KOCHENOUR, M.D.

SOLD BY ALL BOOKSELLERS

ROBERTS BROTHERS, Publishers

Boston, Mass., U.S.A.

Boston Public Library
Central Library, Copley Square

Division of
Reference and Research Services

The Date Due Card in the pocket indicates the date on or before which this book should be returned to the Library.

Please do not remove cards from this pocket.

